



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 07592094 6



643

2680

B.

Ex Libris: Walter Del Mar.

RGR  
Del 1. 3r

---







----- sea  
1841.





A  
THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL  
GRAMMAR  
OF  
THE SPANISH LANGUAGE,

ADAPTED TO ALL CLASSES OF LEARNERS; BUT MORE  
ESPECIALLY TO THOSE WHO ARE UNACQUAINTED WITH THE  
GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR.

IN A SERIES OF LECTURES,

With Exercises and Key.

SECOND EDITION.

BY EMANUEL DEL MAR,

AUTHOR OF A TREATISE ON ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION FOR THE USE OF SPANIARDS,  
A NEW GUIDE TO SPANISH AND ENGLISH CONVERSATION,  
&c. &c.

---

UTINAM DESIDERIUM MULTITUDINIS IMPLEAM.

---

LONDON:  
J. WACEY, 4, OLD BROAD STREET, ROYAL EXCHANGE,  
C. AND H. SENIOR, 49, PALL MALL,  
ACKERMANN AND CO., 96, STRAND,  
GIBRALTAR, J. BERTOLOSO.

1838.

---



## EXTRACTS

FROM

### THE OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

---

"A good Grammar is every thing to the student of languages; it abridges his labours by half, and when done ensures him that they are well done. In Mr. DEL MAR's book, the principles of the Spanish language, are clearly and correctly expounded in a series of lectures, each illustrated with appropriate examples and exercises. To the method observed in this arrangement we are bound to give considerable praise: it is lucid, judicious, and conclusive."—*Sunday Herald*.

"Numerous are the publications of this kind, we think that their increase is not to be regretted, as the attainment of any language must be rendered much more easy, by so many Grammars being produced, provided they are written by competent persons. The commendations on the one before us have been very great; and we think, that when the design of its author is known, they will not be considered as undeserving—and we trust the wish expressed in his title page, may, as we think it deservedly should, be fully accomplished. '*Utinam desiderium multitudinis impleam.*'"—*United Kingdom*.

"We are glad to find Mr. Del Mar has preferred the well grounding of the pupil to the display of the teacher. The Grammar is really in its essential features an improvement on those which have preceded it; and contains within itself exercises and keys, which fit it for the purposes of self-tuition."—*Atlas*.

"It is with pleasure that we take upon ourselves the task of noticing this work. We have carefully perused it, and have compared it with other grammars. The division of the subject into Lectures, strikes us as the best method that could have been adopted, and one which must indelibly fix the rudiments of the Spanish language in the memory of a careful learner; especially as each lecture is accompanied by a well selected and appropriate praxis. In Mr. Del Mar's book, we meet with none of that unnecessary twaddle in which many grammars abound; and few notes, those marks of hasty compilation, are found to distract the scholar's attention from the text; but every difficulty is explained in the most brief and clear manner, showing the Author to be a perfect master of his subject. The merits of this grammar, when its existence comes to be more widely known, will, we are sure, be duly appreciated, by all who are engaged in teaching this elegant and beautiful language. To those who are studying it without the assistance of a master, the key to the exercises which is annexed to the volume, will prove an invaluable aid. One thing with which we are particularly pleased is the clear manner in which the author explains the difference between the two tenses *iba* and *fué*, of the verb *ir*, to go; and of the verbs *ser* and *estar*, to be; two things which our experience has taught us are very difficult to beginners. To conclude, we must say, that the whole arrangement of the Grammar, so convenient for instruction, its small size and consequently low price, must in a short time make it a standard work in schools. We have only space to add, that were another recommendation required, it is to be found in the clear type and neat binding of this small volume."—*Brighton Guardian*.

"Amongst the living languages of Europe, the Spanish is perhaps one of the least difficult to be learned by Englishmen; not only from the extraordinary facility with which the pronunciation is acquired, but because the rules of its syntax, are, with few exceptions, fixed and simple; yet, till the publication of Mr. M'Henry's Grammar, there was not one which contained the whole of those rules, or in which the learner could find complete directions for acquiring that beautiful language with ease and facility. Mr. M'Henry's grammar was certainly a great improvement upon all that preceded it; and we can say of the present, that it is at least equal to it, and on some points the directions are more clear and simple."—*Athenæum*.

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
663910 A  
ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

R 1923 L

## CONTENTS.

---

Lec.	Par.	Page
I.	1. Grammar in general.....	1
II.	1. Orthography .....	2
III.	1. Prosody .....	3
	<i>Sound and Power of Spanish Letters</i> .....	3
	<i>A Table exhibiting the most difficult combinations of</i> <i>Vowels and Consonants in Spanish</i> .....	7
	2. Double Letters .....	7
	3. Diphthongs and Triphthongs .....	8
	4. Of Syllables.....	8
	5. The Accent .....	9
	13. Punctuation .....	10
IV.	1. Etymology and Syntax generally considered .....	11
	4. Definition of the Parts of Speech.....	11
V.	1. Etymology and Syntax of Articles .....	16
	3. Agreement of the Definite Article .....	17
	4. Employment of ditto .....	18
	5. When used in Spanish and not in English.....	18
	10. When used in English and not in Spanish.....	20
VI.	1. The Indefinite Article .....	23
	6. When used in English and not in Spanish.....	24
VII.	1. The Neuter Article .....	26
VIII.	1. Etymology and Syntax of Nouns.....	27
	3. Augmentative and Diminutive Nouns .....	28
	8. Number .....	29
	12. Gender.....	30
	<i>Lists of Exceptions in the Gender of Nouns</i> .....	31
IX.	1. Case .....	35
	16. Observations on the Employment of the Preposition <i>A'</i> in the Accusative Case .....	42
	<i>Declension of Nouns with the Article</i> .....	44

- 11 -

## CONTENTS.

Lec.	Par.	Page
X.	1. <i>Construction of Nouns</i> .....	45
XI.	1. <i>Etymology and Syntax of Adjectives</i> .....	46
	2. <i>Agreement of the Adjective</i> .....	46
XII.	1. <i>Situation of the Adjective</i> .....	52
XIII.	1. <i>The Degrees of Comparison</i> .....	55
XIV.	1. <i>Numerical Adjectives</i> , .....	61
	14. <i>Observations on Prepositions employed with Adjectives</i> ..	64
XV.	1. <i>Etymology and Syntax of Pronouns</i> .....	65
	2. <i>Personal Pronouns</i> .....	65
	3. <i>Declension of ditto</i> .....	66
	12. <i>Employment of ditto in the Nominative Case</i> .....	68
	18. Ditto           Ditto           Dative and Accusative ditto.	70
	23. Ditto           Ditto           Genitive and Ablative ditto..	72
XVI.	1. <i>Possessive Pronouns</i> .....	74
XVII.	1. <i>Demonstrative ditto</i> .....	79
	9. <i>The Article used instead of the Demonstrative Pronoun</i> .	81
XVIII.	1. <i>Relative Pronouns</i> .....	82
XIX.	1. <i>Interrogative ditto</i> .....	85
XX.	1. <i>Indeterminate ditto</i> .....	86
XXI.	1. <i>Etymology and Syntax of Verbs</i> .....	91
	14. <i>Modes</i> .....	94
	19. <i>Tenses</i> .....	96
	21. <i>Number and Person</i> .....	97
XXII.	1. <i>Use and Employment of the Tenses</i> .....	97
	9. <i>Employment of the Terminations RA, RIA, and SE of the Imperfect Subjunctive</i> .....	104
	11. <i>Of the Participles</i> .....	107
XXIII.	1. <i>Conjugation of Verbs</i> .....	111
	<i>Conjugation of HABER, To have</i> .....	112
	Ditto       TENER, To have .....	113
	Ditto       SER, To be .....	115
	Ditto       ESTAR, To be .....	116
	4. <i>Observations on SER and ESTAR</i> .....	118
XXIV.	1. <i>Conjugation of Regular Verbs</i> .....	120
	<i>First Conjugation, HABLAR, To speak</i> .....	120
	<i>Second ditto   TEMER, To fear</i> .....	122
	<i>Third ditto    SUFRIR, To suffer</i> .....	123
	<i>A Comparative View of the Terminations in Regular Verbs</i> .....	125
	5. <i>Conjugation of Reflective Verbs</i> .....	127
	6. Ditto       Passive ditto .....	129
	7. <i>Observations on the Passive Voice</i> .....	131

# CONTENTS.

vii

Lec.	Par.	Page
XXIV.	9. <i>Observations on the Accentuation of Verbs</i> .....	132
XXV.	1. <i>Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation</i> .....	133
	<i>Ditto</i> <i>Second ditto</i> .....	135
	<i>Ditto</i> <i>Third ditto</i> .....	142
	4. <i>Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs</i> .....	149
	7. <i>Defective Verbs</i> .....	151
	8. <i>Of Verbs used Negatively</i> .....	152
	9. <i>Ditto</i> <i>Interrogatively</i> .....	152
XXVI.	1. <i>Agreement of the Verb with its Nominative</i> .....	153
	5. <i>Government of Verbs</i> .....	154
	9. <i>Of Prepositions employed with Verbs</i> .....	155
	10. <i>Government of Verbs as relates to Modes and Tenses</i> ....	156
XXVII.	1. <i>Etymology and Syntax of Adverbs</i> .....	159
	4. <i>Of Adverbs ending in MENTE</i> .....	161
	10. <i>Situation of the Adverb</i> .....	163
	11. <i>Observations on certain Adverbs</i> .....	163
XXVIII.	1. <i>Etymology and Syntax of Prepositions</i> .....	165
	2. <i>Employment of ditto</i> .....	166
	18. <i>Government of ditto</i> .....	169
	27. <i>Place of ditto</i> .....	171
XXIX.	1. <i>Etymology and Syntax of Conjunctions</i> .....	172
	14. <i>Government of ditto</i> .....	175
XXX.	1. <i>Interjections</i> .....	176

## APPENDIX.

<i>An Alphabetical List of Verbs and other words that govern with Prepositions</i> .....	181
<i>Idioms in Certain Verbs</i> .....	206
<i>Titles used in Spanish</i> .....	210
<i>List of Abbreviations</i> .....	211
<i>A Key to the Exercises</i> .....	217





## PREFACE.


---

SOME apology may perhaps be deemed necessary for the introduction of a new Anglo-Spanish-Grammar, when there already exist so many guides to the study of the Spanish Tongue : but although some of them possess considerable merit, it seems to be a general complaint, that there is in all, a want of *method*, by which the general principles of Grammar, and the peculiar genius of the Spanish Language, may be easily developed to the student. It was principally this consideration, that induced the author of the present work, to the compilation of his Anglo-Spanish-Grammar, published in New York in 1826-7. The favourable reception given to that work, both in Europe and America, demands his warmest acknowledgments ; and it has therefore been his study, in preparing to present to the Public, this new Edition, to render it still more worthy of approbation. The author flatters himself, that the method pursued in it, is so simple, as to enable the teacher to impart,

and the learner to acquire, a comprehensive knowledge of Grammar in general, and of Spanish Grammar in particular, with more than ordinary facility.

The principles of the Spanish Language, are here laid down, in a series of LECTURES, each accompanied with examples, explanatory remarks, and exercises ; to which latter, a *Key* is added in the Appendix, for the convenience of those, who may not have access to a master. The whole arrangement of the work, has been entirely dictated to the author, by long experience in teaching ; and it is intended both for beginners, and for those who, being partly acquainted with the Language, may be desirous of obtaining an intimate knowledge of its peculiar genius and mechanism.

Having observed, that in all Anglo-Spanish-Grammars hitherto published, the common principles of Language, have not been minutely explained ; and being convinced of the want of a treatise that should embody them, with as much regard to conciseness as the nature of the work would admit, the author has attempted to remedy this deficiency ; and to accomplish which more fully, while compiling this work, he had before him such elementary treatises as he considered might assist him on so important a head.



In treating of pronunciation, the author has endeavoured, as far as perhaps can be accomplished by written precept, to supersede the necessity of oral instruction: he has therefore been very particular in describing minutely, the sounds and power of all the letters, both as they stand singly, and as they appear in their various combinations, in the formation of syllables.

In the declension of Nouns and Pronouns, the agreement of the Adjective, the conjugations of the various kinds of Verbs, and the employment of the modes and tenses, it is hoped the student will find less embarrassment, than in the generality of Spanish Grammars.

In this, as in the former edition of the author's Anglo-Spanish-Grammar, Etymology and Syntax are so blended, as that instead of being discussed as abstract branches, they will be found to render to each other, important assistance.

For the sake of uniformity, the system of the Spanish Royal Academy, has in many instances been adhered to; and with the same view, several terms have been adopted, the analogical propriety of which might be questioned. In several instances, however,

the author has deviated from the Grammar of the Spanish Academy, whenever he has considered that the pursuing a different course, would facilitate the apprehension of the subject discussed.

In conclusion, the author claims the attention of the public in general, to the fact, that the acquisition of the Spanish language is becoming daily of greater importance: putting aside the consideration of its being an accomplishment, and its interest in a literary point of view; the course of events seems to prognosticate, that it will be, at no very distant period, an absolutely essential branch of mercantile education.— And, should this attempt be found more conducive to the speedy acquirement of the Spanish Language, than works of this nature have generally been, the author will consider the time and labour which he has bestowed on it, sufficiently rewarded.

A

THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GRAMMAR

OF

THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.

---

LECTURE I.

OF GRAMMAR IN GENERAL.

*Paragraph 1.* GRAMMAR is that science which teaches the just manner of expressing our thoughts, either in speaking or in writing.—In speaking, by conveying our ideas by articulate sounds: in writing, by rendering those ideas visible, through the means of signs or characters, called letters.

Grammar is the only effectual means, by which we can acquire a perfect knowledge of language: nor can we attain a just idea of the proper use of words, without possessing a sound knowledge of grammar. By it, we guard against error and impropriety of expression, and are enabled to solve whatever doubts may occur in speaking or writing.

This definition explains the nature of grammar, as applied to all languages. Particular grammar, teaches the principles peculiar to any particular language, as the Spanish language; to obtain a correct knowledge of which, it is necessary to conform to the rules and customs adopted by the best writers of Spain, and approved of by the Spanish Academy.

2. Grammar is divided into four branches, namely, *Orthography*, *Prosody*, *Etymology* (or *Analogy*), and *Syntax*.

*Orthography* treats on the nature of letters, and on their combination, in order to form syllables and words:—*Prosody*,

teaches the true sound and just pronunciation of letters, syllables, and words, and points out where the emphasis or stress of voice should be laid: — *Etymology* treats on the distribution of the words of a language into their respective classes, pointing out their various modification and derivation: — And *Syntax* treats on the proper arrangement of words, in order to form correct sentences.

## LECTURE II.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. **LITTLE** can be said on this subject, as a branch of *Spanish* grammar. Orthography teaches what letters are to be employed in forming words; and when the learner becomes acquainted with the power of every letter in the Spanish Alphabet, which knowledge he may acquire in a few hours, he will not find much difficulty in spelling words with their proper letters.

#### THE ALPHABET.

In the comparative sounds exhibited in English, in the following Alphabet, the *a*, is to be sounded like *a* in *ark*; the *e*, like *e* in *ell*, and the *i*, like *i*, in *ill*. The accent points out where the stress of the voice is to be laid.

Pronounced as		Pronounced as	
A	<i>a.</i>	M	<i>émc.</i>
B	<i>bc.</i>	N	<i>énc.</i>
C	<i>the, in theft.</i>	Ñ	<i>ényc.</i>
CH	<i>che, in chess.</i>	O	<i>o, in oblige.</i>
D*	<i>the, in then.</i>	P	<i>pc.</i>
E	<i>e.</i>	Q	<i>coo, in cool.</i>
F	<i>éfc.</i>	R	<i>érre.</i>
G*	<i>hc, its sound is guttural.</i>	S	<i>ésse.</i>
H	<i>áche.</i>	T	<i>te.</i>
I	<i>i.</i>	U	<i>oo, in look.</i>
J*	<i>hóta, its sound is guttural.</i>	V	<i>ve.</i>
K	<i>ka.</i>	X	<i>ékis.</i>
L	<i>éle.</i>	Y	<i>i griéga.</i>
LL	<i>élye.</i>	Z	<i>théta.</i>

\* The sound of the letters marked with an asterisk, can only be strictly conveyed by the voice.

2. The letters of the Alphabet are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*: *a, e, i, o, u*, are vowels, and the others are consonants. The letter *y*, is in general a vowel when it follows, and a consonant when it precedes a vowel.

Every Spanish vowel has a peculiar and fixed sound, which does not vary, as in the English and other languages, on account of its situation in a syllable. Every Spanish vowel should be pronounced full, and distinctly.

*Note.* Authors of Spanish Grammars, in attempting to convey the sounds of Spanish vowels by means of English characters, have not been generally happy in selecting proper examples for the purpose. For instance, some compare the sound of the Spanish *e* with that of the English *a*; which latter, if closely investigated, will be found to have a double sound, very similar to that of the Spanish diphthong *ei*, which sounds like the English diphthong *ei* in *vein*. None of the Spanish vowels have a double sound, but all the English ones, except *e*, have, which circumstance renders them difficult in most instances, to be employed as comparative sounds of Spanish vowels.

Others have given *aw*, as an example for pronouncing the Spanish *a*;—*ee*, for the Spanish *i*, and *o* for the *o*: all which are incorrect; first, because the sound of *aw* is not at all equivalent to that of the Spanish *a*, which should be sounded, as before noticed, like *a* in *ark*, and not like *aw* in *law*:—secondly, that the sound of the English diphthong *ee*, is prolonged considerably more than that of the Spanish *i*;—and thirdly, that the English *o*, has a double sound, nearly resembling that of the Spanish diphthong *ou*. The object in quoting these examples, is not that of criticism, but to put the learner on his guard against imbibing a vicious pronunciation. Several other instances equally erroneous might be cited, and it is hoped that the liberal reader will view these remarks as emanating only from a desire of pointing out correctness, as such inaccuracies as those already mentioned, might lead a beginner into error, while he is aiming at instruction.

## LECTURE III.

### PROSODY.

1. Prosody is that part of grammar, that teaches the proper pronunciation of letters, syllables, and words, and points out the syllable on which the emphasis, or stress of voice, should be laid.

ON THE SOUND AND POWER OF SPANISH LETTERS, AS ADOPTED BY THE BEST MODERN SPANISH WRITERS.

A. This letter has already been said to sound like the English *a* in the word *ark*. It must be noticed that each of the Spanish vowels is pronounced sometimes long, and at others short. The vowel is long when the emphasis falls on it; and short, when otherwise.



- B. In every instance, sounds like the English B, except that it is softer : example, *báta, bébe, bivár, bóbo, buscar, abstenér, observár, bláncó.*

There is a habit that prevails, even with good Spanish speakers, in pronouncing the B and V alike ; which arises from the very slight difference that is perceptible between their sounds ; and for the same reason they are frequently confounded in writing. In pronouncing these letters, the Spaniards employ the lips in the same manner as the English, only the pressure with the former is somewhat lighter.

- C. Before *c* and *i*, is pronounced like *th* in *theft, thin* : Ex. *céna, cifra* ; and like *k*, when it precedes *a, o, u*, or a consonant : Ex. *cáma, cóla, cúbo, cláro, crítico*. It has likewise the sound of *k*, when it comes after a vowel in the same syllable : Ex. *accedér, técnico, noctúrno*.
- CH. This double consonant sounds like *ch* in the English word *chess*, as noticed in the alphabet : Ex. *chalán, léche, chico, hécho, chufár*. It is only used at the beginning of syllables. Formerly, in certain words of Hebrew and Greek origin, it had the sound of *k*, when the vowel following it was marked with the circumflex accent : Ex. *archángel, chérubin, química, chrónica* ; but this practice is obsolete, and these words are now written *arcángel, querubin, química, crónica*.
- D. This letter is very differently pronounced in Spanish to what it is in English, and for want of a proper definition of its sound, learners of the Spanish language seldom acquire a correct knowledge of it. The difference consists in the distinct manner in which the two nations employ the organs of speech in pronouncing this letter : —for instance, it is uttered in English by striking the tongue against the upper gums ; whereas the Spaniards in pronouncing the *d*, slightly touch the teeth with the tongue, as the English do in pronouncing the *th* in the word *they*, although the lisp in Spanish is not quite so strong ; Ex. *tódo, amádo* ; and this different manner in which the two nations pronounce the *d*, is the more striking, when it is found between two vowels, as in the foregoing examples. At the end of a word, nevertheless, it is almost mute, but preserves a little of the lisp : Ex. *bondád, amistád*. In the Imperative Mode however, it is sounded more distinctly : Ex. *andád, venid*.
- E. This vowel, as before remarked, sounds like the English *e*, in the word *ell* : Ex. *espelér, reverénde, léve*.
- F, Preserves invariably the same sound which it has in English : Ex. *Africa, fama, fóro, frío*.

Before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant, sounds as the English *g* before the same letters: Ex. *gála*, *góma*, *gásto*, *gráno*, *glándula*. It has also the same sound when it follows a vowel: Ex. *agnádo*, *ignóble*, *frágma*. Before *ue* and *ui*, the *u* not having the *diæresis*, it likewise preserves the same sound, and the *u* is silent: Ex. *guérta*, *guisár*. But should the *u* be marked with the *diæresis*, the *u* must be sounded, and the *g* is still pronounced the same: Ex. *agüéro*, *argüir*. It has a guttural sound before *e* and *i*, nearly resembling that of the English aspirated *h*: Ex. *gitro*, *gente*.

It is silent when seen before *n*, in words derived from the Greek: Ex. *gnomón*, *gnomónico*; but such words are now written *nomón*, *nomónico*.

Is now considered a silent letter in Spanish\*. Is invariably pronounced like the English *i* in *ill*: Ex. *irrisible*, *cilindro*, *invadir*.

Has always a guttural sound, like that of the guttural *g*, before described: Ex. *javón*, *jeremias*, *pajúa*, *jóven*, *júnta*.

This letter is only retained in a very few foreign names, and sounds as it does in English.

Invariably sounds as in English: Ex. *lavár*, *mal*, *álto*, *bláncó*.

L. This double consonant (which is only used at the beginning of syllables) has a liquid sound, like the *gl* in *seraglio*: Ex. *llóra*, *lláve*, *cabállo*.

Invariably preserves the same sound which it has in English: Ex. *múdo*, *amár*, *impórté*, *comprometér*.

Likewise preserves invariably the same sound which it has in English: Ex. *náno*, *pontón*, *núdo*, *envenená*.

This letter, with a waving line over it, called the *tilde*, has a liquid sound, like the English *x* followed by *y*. Its sound is precisely heard in the *gn* of the French word *seigneur*; or in the *gn* of the Italians in the word *signore*: Ex. *señór*, *niño*, *compañía*. It never ends a syllable.

As already remarked, sounds like the English *o* in *oblige*, Ex. *oponér*, *obstáculo*, *lóco*.

Invariably sounds as it does in English: Ex. *pápa*, *péna*, *ápto*, *aprobable*.

Its employment before *h*, which combination had in

---

\* However, before the diphthong *ue*, some give it a sound nearly resembling the English hard *g*; and also a slight aspiration when found between two vowels: Ex. *huevo*, *hueso*, *albahaca*, *ahorrear*.

Spanish, as it still has in English, the sound of *f*, is obsolete, the *f* being now used instead: Ex. *phalánge*, *philósopho*, now written *falánge*, *filósofo*.

It was likewise used silently before *n*, *s*, and *t*, as in the words *pneumático*, *pséudo*, *ptisána*, which are now written *neumático*, *séudo*, *tisána*.

- Q, Which is invariably followed by *u*, has the same sound as in English; except when it precedes *ue*, or *ui*, the *u* having no diæresis, then it is pronounced like *k*: Ex. *querér*, *quidár*. But should the *u* be marked with the diæresis, the *q* sounds as in English: Ex. *qüestión*, *qüidár*. The *q*, however, before *ua* and *uo* and also before *üe* and *üi*, is now changed into *c*; therefore words which were formerly written *quánto*, *quóta*, *qüestión*, *qüidár*, are now written *cuánto*, *cuóta*, *cüestión*, *cuidár*. This alteration in the orthography, causes no difference in the pronunciation. This letter is never found to terminate a word in Spanish.
- R, This letter is pronounced in Spanish always with a peculiar roughness, and more particularly so when doubled, in which case both are distinctly sounded: Ex. *rábía*, *enrédo*, *malróto*, *subrogár*, *barríl*, *cárro*.
- S, Has always a sound like the *s* in the English words *sing*, *us*: Ex. *sal*, *espálda*, *síto*.
- T, Sounds as in English, but rather softer: Ex. *aténto*, *téna*, *tumbu*.
- U, This letter is pronounced (as observed in the Alphabet) like *oo* in *look*: Ex. *usúra*, *usufrúcto*, *tribu*.
- V, Sounds as in English, but somewhat softer (vide B.) Ex. *vivir*, *váca*, *léve*, *pávo*.
- X, Before and after a vowel, has a guttural sound, like that of the Spanish *j*: Ex. *xabón*, *relór*, *cáxa*. But when the vowel that follows it is marked with the circumflex, or when it is immediately followed by a consonant, it has the sound of the English *x*: Ex. *éxito*, *exámen*, *exténso*, *exponér*. This letter however is falling into disuse, and few modern writers now employ it; instead of which, *j* is now used before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *g* before *e*, *i*: Ex. *jalápa*, *bájo*, *jugár*, *géfc*, *gimio*. Nevertheless it does not appear as yet to be sufficiently established, whether the *g*, or the *j*, should have the preference before *e* and *i*. Where the *x* formerly preceded a vowel with the circumflex, its place is now generally supplied by *cs*: Ex. *écsito* *ecsámen*; which were written *éxito*, *exámen*;—(with regard to the latter word however, there are some

that spell it *ejámen*.) And where it formerly preceded a consonant, it is now generally changed into *s*: Ex. *esclusivo, espensas*.

- Y,** Is sometimes a consonant, and other times a vowel. It is a consonant when it precedes a vowel, and a vowel when it follows a consonant, or when it stands by itself, as is the case only in the conjunction *y*, (and). As a vowel, it sounds like the Spanish *i*; as a consonant, its sound resembles that of the English *y* in the word *yellow*, but somewhat harder: Ex. *yélo, yáce, yo*.
- Z,** Sounds like *th* in the English words *thank, bath*; Ex. *zága, zorra, voz, feliz*. Where this letter was formerly used before *c* and *i*, a *c* is now generally preferred: Ex. *cenzálo, cítara*; formerly written *zenzálo, zíara*.

A TABLE, EXHIBITING THE MOST DIFFICULT COMBINATIONS  
OF VOWELS AND CONSONANTS IN SPANISH.

ca, co, cu .....	Here the <i>c</i> sounds like <i>k</i> .
ce, ci .....	And here like <i>th</i> .
ga, gue, gui, go, gu...	In these the <i>g</i> sounds like the English hard <i>g</i> , and the <i>u</i> is mute before <i>c</i> and <i>i</i> .
gua, güe, güi .....	Here also the <i>g</i> is hard, but the <i>u</i> is sounded.
ge, gi .....	In these, the <i>g</i> has the guttural sound.
ja, je, ji, jo, ju .....	The <i>j</i> has always the guttural sound.
lla, lle, lli, llo, llu .....	These sound as <i>liá, lié, &amp;c.</i>
ña, ñe, ñi, ño, ñu .....	And these as <i>niá, nié, &amp;c.</i>
qua, qüe, qüi, quo ....	Here the <i>u</i> is sounded.
que, qui .....	And in these the <i>u</i> is mute.
xa, xe, xi, xo, xu.....	Here the <i>x</i> has the guttural sound.
xá, xé, xí, xó, xû.....	In these it sounds like the English <i>x</i> .
za, ze, zi, zo, zu .....	The <i>z</i> has always the sound of <i>th</i> .

OF DOUBLE LETTERS.

2. No letter is doubled in Spanish, except the vowels *a, e, i, o*, and the consonants *c, n, r*: and when these are so employed, they are to be distinctly heard: Ex. *Saavédra, leér, piísimo, loór, accésó, ennoblecér, bárra*.

## OF DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

3. A *diphthong* is the union of *two vowels*, and a *triphthong* is the union of *three vowels* in a syllable.

Grammarians have subdivided diphthongs into *proper* and *improper*; calling that a *proper diphthong*, in which both vowels are distinctly sounded; and an *improper diphthong*, that in which one of the vowels is mute.

Strictly speaking, the Spanish admits of no *improper* diphthongs; for where the union of two vowels occurs in a syllable, each vowel is sufficiently heard to distinguish the sound of both; contrary to what the case is in the English and other languages, in which, in a combination of two, and sometimes of three vowels, it frequently happens that the sound of one only is heard.

## TABLE OF DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

In pronouncing the following diphthongs and triphthongs, the student will take care to give each vowel the sound which it has in the alphabet, and to lay the greatest stress on the vowel marked with the accent.

<i>di</i> ,	Ex. tomáis.	<i>ió</i> ,	Ex. Dios.
<i>du</i> ,	jáula.	<i>íu</i> ,	ciudad.
<i>dy</i> .	hay.	<i>oe</i> ,	héroc.
<i>ea</i> ,	línea.	<i>ói</i> ,	sois.
<i>ei</i> ,	tenéis.	<i>óy</i> ,	soy.
<i>eo</i> ,	virgíneo.	<i>ud</i> ,	suáve.
<i>eu</i> ,	déuda.	<i>ué</i> ,	huésped.
<i>éy</i> ,	ley.	<i>ui</i> ,	fuí.
<i>ía</i> ,	hácia.	<i>úy</i> ,	muy.
<i>ie</i> ,	bien.	<i>uó</i> ,	mútuó.
	<i>íai</i> ,	Ex. cambiáis.	
	<i>íei</i> ,	renunciéis.	
	<i>uí</i> ,	averiguáis.	
	<i>uei</i> ,	evacuéis.	
	<i>uéy</i> ,	buéy.	

Note. Some modern writers never end a diphthong or a triphthong in *y*, and therefore instead of writing *hay*, *ley*, *soy*, *buey*, they write *hai*, *lei*, *soi*, *buei*; but this practice is by no means general.

## OF SYLLABLES.

4. A syllable is a complete sound, forming either a word of itself, or a part of one. It is sometimes represented by a single vowel. No syllable can be formed, without there be

one or more vowels in it. A word of one syllable is called a *monosyllable*; of two, a *dissyllable*; of three, a *trisyllable*; of more than three, a *polysyllable*.

#### OF THE ACCENT.

5. The *acute* accent, thus ('), is chiefly employed with words, in which the stress of voice (as regards the syllable on which it should fall) deviates from the general rule.

Every Spanish word has *one* syllable in it *long*, and the remainder *short*; and, as a *general rule*, let it be observed, that words ending in a *consonant*, have the stress of voice on the *last* syllable, and those ending in a *vowel*, on the *last but one*; but as there are exceptions to this rule, every word deviating from it, is marked with the acute accent over the syllable requiring the stress.

EXAMPLES.—*Lección, macis, sugar, pedestal, deliberar, felicidad, colocacion, aclamacion, moralidad, recomendacion, imparcialidad, indemnificacion.*

*Mente, bueno, casa, tribu, mudanza, orgullo, sufrible, torrente, dependencia, indicativo, legitimado, conservatorio.*

*Dócil, cálido, café, música, épico, lirico, químico, incómodo, escéptico, espíritu, alegórico, hipópótamo.*

#### OF THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE ACUTE ACCENT.

6. *Monosyllables*, except the preposition *á*, (to or at), and the conjunctions *é*, (and); *ó, ú*, (or), are never written with the accent but when they have more than one signification, in which case the accent is employed to distinguish them; thus,

<i>él</i> , he.	<i>el</i> , the.
<i>mí</i> , me.	<i>mi</i> , my.
<i>sí</i> , oneself, yes.	<i>si</i> , if.
<i>sé</i> , be thou.	<i>se</i> , oneself.
<i>dé</i> , let him give, or he may give.	<i>de</i> , of, or from.

As verbs have a peculiar accentuation of their own, they are not included in these observations; but their *accentuation* will be treated on separately. See observations on the accentuation of verbs. Lec. xxiv, Par. 9.

7. Words of two syllables ending in two vowels, and having the stress of voice on the first syllable, are written without the accent, whether the said vowels form diphthongs or not: Ex.

DIPHTHONGS.  
*agua*, water.  
*tibia*, lukewarm.  
*serie*, series.

NOT DIPHTHONGS.  
*nao*, ship.  
*cria*, breed.  
*frio*, cold.

But should the stress fall on the last of the two vowels, that vowel must receive the accent; Ex. *benjui*, benzoin.

8. In words of three or more syllables, ending with any

two of the vowels *ea*, *ie*, *io*, *ua*, *uc*, *uo*, should these terminations form diphthongs, the words follow the general rule for the stress, and are written without the accent; but should these vowels not form diphthongs, they receive the accent on the last but one; Ex.

DIPHTHONGS.  
*prosodia*, prosody.  
*agravio*, offence.

NOT DIPHTHONGS.  
*alegría*, joy.  
*gansúa*, picklock.

9. In words of three or more syllables, ending in *ac*, *ao*, *au*, *ea*, *eo*, *oe*, or *oo*, should these terminations form diphthongs, the words are written with the accent on the syllable requiring the stress, but no accent is employed when they are not diphthongs; Ex.

DIPHTHONGS.  
*línea*, line.  
*héroe*, hero.

NOT DIPHTHONGS.  
*recreo*, recreation.  
*pelea*, a fight.

10. Words ending in *y*, preceded immediately by a vowel, have always the stress on the last syllable, and receive no accent; Ex. *convoy*, *virey*, *convoy*, *viceroy*.

11. Surnames ending in *z* have the stress of voice on the penultima, but receive no accent; Ex. *Lopez*, *Fernandez*.

12. Observe that the accent or stress of voice is preserved on the same syllable of words that deviate from the general rule, when the adverbial termination *mente*, is joined to them: as, *bárbaramente*, from *bárbaro*; *intrépidamente*, from *intrépido*; but with words that follow the general rule, the stress falls on the first syllable of the termination *mente*; as, *grandemente*, from *grande*; *singularmente*, from *singular*. All superlatives ending in *ísimo* receive the accent on the first syllable of this termination; Ex. *bellísimo*, *fertilísimo*, *amabilísimo*.

Note.—Words in the plural number, retain the accent or stress of voice on the same syllable as those in the singular, except *carácter*, the plural of which is *carácterés*.

## PUNCTUATION.

13. A note of Interrogation, thus (?) is employed in Spanish both at the beginning and at the end of an interrogative word or sentence. The one at the beginning, however, is inverted, thus (¿), and its use is to warn the reader that what follows is an interrogative. Some writers nevertheless, omit the first one, when the word or sentence shows itself at first sight to be interrogative. The same observa-

tions are applicable likewise to the note of Admiration, thus (!) which is also used inverted, thus (¡) to warn the reader.

The other signs used in punctuation, are of the same import in Spanish as they are in English.

## LECTURE IV.

### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX GENERALLY CONSIDERED.

1. **ETYMOLOGY** (from the Greek words *ετυμος*, *true*, and *λογος*, *word*) means a true or real account of words. It is that part of grammar which teaches the origin of words, shows how they are derived from one another, and explains their various modifications. Thus the words *speakeeth*, *speaking*, *spoken*, are all derived from *speak*; *virtuously* is derived from *virtuous*, which latter is derived from *virtue*.

2. Words are either *primitive* or *derivative*. Primitive words are those which are not derived from any other word in the same language: thus, *nature*, *man*, are primitive words; but derivative words are those which do take their origin from other words in the same language; thus, *natural*, *manly*, are derivatives of *nature*, *man*.

3. The words of a language are generally comprehended and arranged under *nine* classes, or branches, called *parts of speech*; namely, *Articles*, *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*. Therefore every word in a language must belong to one or the other of these classes.

#### DEFINITION OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

4. *Articles* are little words, which of themselves have no meaning; but are placed before nouns to point them out. The Articles in the English language are *a* or *an*, and *the*.

The word *Article* is derived from the Latin word *articulus*, which means a *small part or member*; Articles being considered as a *part* or *member* of the Nouns to which they are prefixed; Ex. *a man*, *an apple*, *the lady*, *the gardens*:—*a* or *an* is called the *Indefinite*, and *the*, the *Definite Article*; because a Noun preceded by the *Indefinite Article* expresses *any one* thing of the kind denoted by the Noun in an *indefinite* manner; but preceded by the *Definite Article*, it describes a *particular* thing



of the kind denoted by it : for instance, in saying *a man brought me a book*, it is not specified what particular *man* or *book* is referred to : but in saying *THE man brought me THE book*, it is immediately perceived that the speaker alludes to some particular *man* and *book*, of which the hearer had some prior knowledge.

5. *Nouns* express the name of any thing in being, whether animate or inanimate, material or ideal : any thing that can be *felt, seen, heard, or conceived in the mind*, is a *Noun* ; as *John, house, city, horse, music, wind, wisdom, love, hatred*. Any word, in short, is a *Noun*, that makes sense of itself.

The word *Noun* is derived from the Latin word *nomen*, which means a *name*, consequently a *Noun* is the *name* of any thing that exists, whether real or imaginary.

Some grammarians have called this sort of words *Substantives*, as they are applied to every thing that has *substance*. But the word *Substantive* does not appear adequately applied to all sorts of words comprised under the head of *Nouns* ; since there are many that have no real substance ; for instance, *pleasure, joy, grief, memory, time, virtue*, none of which have any substance in their nature, and yet are called *Substantives*.

There are various species of *Nouns*, which will be noticed in the *Etymology and Syntax* of this part of speech.

6. *Adjectives* are words that express some *quality, character, property, or appearance* of a *Noun* ; as, *a good man, a strong horse, the hard iron, the dark clouds*. Here the *Adjective good* expresses the *character* of the *Noun man* ; *strong*, the *quality* of the *horse* ; *hard*, the *property* of the *iron* ; and *dark*, the *appearance* of the *clouds*.

The word *Adjective* is most probably derived from the Latin word *adjicio*, which means *to add to*, in allusion to the adjective being joined to *Nouns*, to express something belonging to them, that characterises or qualifies them.

7. *Pronouns* are words used in the place of *Nouns*, to avoid their too frequent repetition. Without the use of this part of speech, discourse would be rendered tiresome. For instance, in the sentence, *Henry says he saw Amelia, and presented to her a letter*, which, however, she would not read, but she returned it to him ; were it not for the *Pronouns he, her, which, she, she, it, him*, we should be compelled, in order to render the sentence intelligible, to repeat all the *Nouns*, the place of which these *Pronouns* supply, and say, *Henry says Henry saw Amelia, and presented to Amelia a letter, the letter however Amelia would not read, but Amelia returned the letter to Henry*.

The word *Pronoun*, is a compound of the Latin words *pro* *nomen*, which mean, *for a noun*; and we see in the foregoing example, that all the Pronouns there, stand for, or in the place of, as many Nouns. There are several classes of Pronouns, the nature and use of which, will be explained in the etymology and syntax connected with this part of speech.

8. *Verbs* are words that denote *action* or *being*: they express all the different movements of the body or mind, and the various states of being, of living and inanimate objects; for instance, *to write, to walk, to break, to strike*, are Verbs, and denote actions of the body: *to think, to love, to grieve, to hate*, are Verbs that denote some movement of the mind: *to be, to sit, to sleep, to stand*, are likewise Verbs; *to be* denotes existence in its most general sense, and *to sit, to sleep, to stand*, describe the different states or manners of being or existence, in which objects may be found.

The word *Verb*, is derived from the Latin word *verbum*, which means a *word*. A Verb may very properly be styled the principal word in a sentence; for without a Verb expressed or understood, no sentence can be formed. There is no term that can comprise within itself, the full meaning of this most essential part of speech: *action* and *being* are the words which appear to express more precisely, the peculiar nature of Verbs. There are several species of Verbs, which will be separately treated on, in the etymology and syntax of Verbs.

9. *Adverbs* are words that are employed with *Verbs, Adjectives*, and sometimes with *Adverbs* themselves. Their office when employed with reference to *Verbs*, is to express the manner of their *action* or *existence*; as, *He writes well*, in which the Adverb *well*, expresses the manner of writing; and in, *She is ill*, the Adverb *ill* denotes the *manner* or *state* of *existence* expressed by the Verb *is*. When used with reference to *Adjectives*, they express the *degree* of their *quality*; as, *An extremely good man*; in which example, the Adverb *extremely*, describes the degree of *quality* denoted in the Adjective *good*. When joined to other *Adverbs*, they explain the extent of their signification; as, *He speaks very correctly*: Here the Adverb *very*, explains to what extent the meaning of the Adverb *correctly* may be taken.

The word *Adverb* is derived from the Latin words *ad verbum*, which signify *joined to a Verb*. But as we see in the foregoing examples, that Adverbs are joined to other parts of speech, the signification of the term *Adverb*, does not convey an adequate description of its use. Adverbs are words that

express some *accidental circumstance* connected with *Adjectives, Verbs, and Adverbs*. If we say, *I wrote a letter to him*, we speak very indeterminately as regards the *time* and *manner* of writing; but in saying, *I wrote a letter to him yesterday, in haste*, the Adverb *yesterday* explains the *time*, and the adverbial expression in *haste*, describes the *manner* of writing. Again, in the sentence, *A truly good man*, the Adverb *truly*, adds a certain degree of meaning to the Adjective *good*, which the latter could not convey by itself: and in the sentence, *You go too often*, the Adverb *too*, adds greater energy to the meaning of the Adverb *often*. There are various classes of Adverbs, which will be noticed in the etymology and syntax of this part of speech.

10. *Prepositions* express the *relation* or *bearings* which Nouns and Pronouns have with regard to one another; or they point out the *situation* or *position* in which Nouns or Pronouns exist with respect to each other; Ex. *The beauty of the poem. John purchased the book for William. She trusts in him*. In these examples the prepositions *of, for, and in*, serve first, to conduct the words *poem, William, and him* (which they govern), to the *case* in which they are to be placed: (see the definition on *case* in Lecture 9). And secondly, they point out the relation which these words have with the Noun or Pronoun, which is the nominative case: thus, *of*, in the first example, denotes the *possession* which the *poem* has of *beauty*; *for*, in the second, describes the *benefit* which results to *William*, from the service of *John*; and in the third, *in*, points out the person in whom *She* trusts. The manner of employing Prepositions, differs materially in the two languages: their employment will be treated on at large, in the etymology and syntax connected with this part of speech.

The word *Preposition*, is derived from the Latin words *præpositus*, which signify *placed before*: But this appellation, like many others, does not well apply to the nature of Prepositions, because other parts of speech besides Prepositions are *placed before* Nouns and other words.

11. *Conjunctions*. This class of words, derives its name from the Latin word *conjunctio*, which means to *join together* because conjunctions serve to connect words, or parts of a sentence together: as, *He and she will go, though I may stay*. Here we see that the conjunction *and*, connects the pronouns *he* and *she* together; while the conjunction *though*, unites the two members of the sentence. There are different kinds of

Conjunctions, as will be noticed in their etymology and syntax.

12. *Interjections* are so called from the Latin word *inter-jicio*, which means to *throw in* or *between*. They are a kind of ejaculations, used to denote some emotion of the mind, and properly speaking, should not be called words, nor considered as forming any part of speech, since they form no part of what is properly called language, and they have merely been noticed here, as a matter of form.

13. The foregoing definitions of the several parts of speech, are here given preparatory to the treatment of them in their etymology and syntax, where their proper employment will be fully explained. Meanwhile, the pupil should exercise himself in analyzing sentences, to endeavour to ascertain to what part of speech every word belongs. It is necessary to warn the student, that it sometimes occurs, that the same word may appear to belong to more than one part of speech, as for instance in this example, *You demand my book, but I cannot comply with your demand*: Where the first *demand* is a *Verb*, and the second a *Noun*, and yet they are both spelled and pronounced alike. Again, *that*, is sometimes a *Pronoun*, and at others a *Conjunction*. In the sentence *Give me that book, that is a Demonstrative Pronoun*, and in *The book that you are reading*, it is a *Relative Pronoun*; but it is a *Conjunction* in, *I said that he might go*. It happens thus also, with many words in Spanish; but though written alike, they are not in reality the same word, when they belong to different parts of speech. Therefore to ascertain the part of speech to which a word belongs, we must have recourse to the meaning of that word.

14. SYNTAX (from the Greek *συNTAXIS*, which signifies *with method*), teaches the method of constructing sentences according to the rules of grammar. *Etymology*, as we have already seen, teaches the origin and derivation of words; but by *Syntax*, we are taught the placing of words in their proper situation, that the sentences may be correct, clear, and incapable of being misconstrued: for instance, in the sentence *It is a part of the rule which I do not comprehend*, it is doubtful whether it be the *rule*, or the *part* of the rule, which is not comprehended: But if the sentence were written thus, *It is a part which I do not comprehend of the rule*, no such doubt could arise, for it would then be immediately perceived that the *part* was referred to.

17. In the formation of sentences, two things are to be considered, namely, *Concord*, and *Government*. *Concord*, points out the manner in which words are to agree with one

another: for instance, *Estos son buenos libros*, These are good books: Here we see that in Spanish, the Demonstrative Pronoun *estos*, agrees with the Noun *libros*, both being in the masculine gender and plural number: *son* is a Verb, and agrees in person and number with the same Noun *libros*; and *buenos* is an Adjective that agrees with the Noun in gender and number.

In Spanish the *Article*, the *Noun*, the *Adjective*, the *Pronoun*, and the *Verb* are declinable parts of speech; that is, they admit of variation in their spelling, to agree with one another when they meet in a sentence. The manner in which they vary, will be pointed out in the etymology and syntax of each part of speech. The other parts of speech in Spanish, namely the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*, are indeclinable.

In English the only declinable parts of speech, are the *Noun*, the *Pronoun*, and the *Verb*.

*Government* is the power which one part of speech has over another, in directing what *case*, *mood*, or *sense* the *regimen* or word governed, is to be placed. This is a very important part of Grammar, since any violation of it, would render speech very defective and confused. The student, it is presumed, will be able to comprehend its importance, when he arrives at the government of the different parts of speech. The parts of speech that have the power of governing, are, the *Noun*, the *Verb*, the *Preposition*, and the *Conjunction*. *Nouns* govern *Nouns* and *Verbs*: *Verbs* govern *Verbs*, *Nouns* and *Adverbs*: *Prepositions* govern *Nouns*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs* and *Adverbs*: and *Conjunctions* govern *Verbs*.

## LECTURE V.

### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

1. The learner is referred to Lec. 4. Par. 4. for the definition of Articles. This and the two succeeding lectures, will be devoted to the use and employment of this part of speech.

2. There are in English (as before stated) the *Definite Article* *the*, and the *Indefinite Article* *a* or *an*; In Spanish however we have to consider, the *Definite*, the *Indefinite*, and the *Neuter* Articles.

## AGREEMENT OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

3. The *Definite Article* agrees in Spanish with the Noun to which it is prefixed, in gender and number, for which purpose it changes its form in four different manners; Ex.

Masculine.	Singular.	El hombre,	The man.
	Plural.	Los hombres,	The men.
Feminine.	Singular.	La muger,	The woman.
	Plural.	Las mugeres,	The women.

## EXERCISE ON THE AGREEMENT OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE\*.

The boy, the girl, the hatter, and the seamstress.  
muchacho, *m.* muchacha, *f.* sombrerero, *m.* y costurera, *f.*

The sun, the moon, the stars, and the planets. The knife,  
sol, *m.* luna, *f.* estrellas, *f. p.* planetas, *m. p.* cuchillo, *m.*

the fork, the beef, the salt, the plates, and the wine-glasses.  
tenedor, *m.* carne, *f.* sal, *f.* platos, *m. p.* copillas, *f. p.*

*Note 1.* The Article *el*, drops the *e*, when preceded by the Preposition *de*, (*of or from*) or *a*, (*to or at*): thus instead of *de el* and *a el*, we must say *del* and *al*: Ex.

Del hombre,	Of the man.
Del libro,	Of the book.
Al hombre,	To the man.
Al libro,	To the book.

*Note 2.* A Noun singular of the feminine gender, beginning with *a* or *ha*, and having the stress on the first syllable, requires the masculine, instead of the feminine Article: thus instead of *la ama*, *la haba*, we must say *el ama* (the mistress), *el haba* (the bean); which Nouns *ama* and *haba*, are of the feminine gender. This infringement on the laws of grammar, is intended to avoid the unpleasant broad sound, which the concurrence of the two same vowels would produce, when the accent is on the first syllable of the Noun; for which reason this rule does not apply to feminine Nouns beginning with *a* or *ha*, having the accent on any other syllable but the first; therefore we say *la alcova*, (the alcove), *la alcaparra*, (the caper), *la hacienda* (the estate), *la habilidad*, (the ability): nor does it apply to

---

\* It is intended that the pupil should write out the Spanish part only of this, and all the succeeding exercises, supplying the words that are left out. Previously to which however, he will observe, that the words inclosed in brackets, correspond with the translation above or beneath them, and consequently, require no alteration. He will observe also that *m.* stands for masculine, *f.* for feminine, and *p.* for plural. Words having a caret (^) under them, are to be omitted in the translation. A horizontal line (—) denotes a similarity of spelling to the word above it, observing however that the letter *s*, is never doubled in Spanish, and that *t* before *i* in English words ending in *tion*, is changed into *c* in Spanish. The numerical figures, indicate the order in which the Spanish words are to be arranged.

feminine Nouns when they are in the plural number, since then, the intervening *s*, prevents the clashing of the two vowels : as *las amas*, the mistresses ; *las habas*, the beans.

## EXERCISE ON NOTES 1 AND 2.

The atrocity of the crime.      The violence of the wind.      From the  
atrocidad, *f.*      crimen, *m.*      violencia, *f.*      viento, *m.*

house to the garden.      From the garden to the house.  
casa, *f.*      jardín, *m.*

[They arrived] at the inn.      The bird sang.      Those are  
llegaron      meson, *m.*      ave, *f.* cantó.      aquellas son

the birds.      The water is cold.      The waters of the rivers.  
aves, *f. p.*      agua, *f.* está fría.      aguas, *f. p.*      ríos, *m. p.*

The eagle is a bird of prey.      The cunningness of the deed.  
águila, *f.* es ave rapina.      astucia, *f.*      hazaña, *f.*

## EMPLOYMENT OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

4. The Definite Article is employed in both languages before Nouns taken in a *particular* or *definite* sense : Ex.

*El poder de la ley,*      *The power of the law.*  
*La velocidad de los caballos,*      *The swiftness of the horses.*

## WHEN THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS USED IN SPANISH AND NOT IN ENGLISH.

5. The Definite Article is used in Spanish before all Nouns taken in a *general* and *unlimited* sense : that is, Nouns in which the whole of the kind or species denoted by them, is included : Ex.

*El orgullo y la vanidad son los efectos*      *Pride and vanity are the effects*  
*de la ignorancia,*      *of ignorance.*

In this example *pride, vanity* and *ignorance* are spoken of in an *unlimited* manner, and in the full extent of their signification.

6. Before the geographical divisions of the earth, and the names of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. : Ex.

*La Europa encierra gran variedad*      *Europe embraces a great variety*  
*de climas,*      *of climate.*

*La Inglaterra es una nacion marí-*      *England is a maritime nation.*  
*tima,*

*La Cataluña es provincia de*      *Catalonia is a province of Spain.*  
*España,*

**Exception 1st.** The Definite Article is generally omitted in Spanish, before the names of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. when they are preceded by a preposition : Ex.

Fui á Inglaterra,  
Viene de Francia,

I went to England.  
He comes from France.

Still however when these countries, &c. are personified, the Article is retained : Ex.

Los procederes de la Rusia, con  
respecto á la Polonia,

The proceedings of Russia, with  
regard to Poland.

**Exception 2nd.** Kingdoms, provinces, &c. bearing the same name as their capital cities, do not admit the Article : Ex.

Argel y Túnis son puertos de mar,

Algiers and Tunis are sea-port  
towns.

Nueva York es un estado floreciente  
de América,

New York is a flourishing state  
in America.

**7.** Nouns denoting the title, dignity, profession, &c. of an individual, require the Definite Article in Spanish, when in the third person : Ex.

El Rey Guillelmo,

King William.

El Doctor N.

Doctor N.

El Coronel A.

Colonel A.

El Señor y la Señora B.

Mr. and Mrs. B.

**8.** When several Nouns follow each other in a sentence, the Article is generally repeated before each, particularly when they differ in gender; and if a Preposition precede the Article, the Preposition is likewise generally repeated : Ex.

Todos los hombres, las mugeres  
y los niños de la aldea, salieron  
á recibirla,

All the men, women and children  
of the village, came out to receive  
him.

La ignorancia es madre de la  
preocupacion, del engaño, y del  
error,

Ignorance is the mother of pre-  
judice, deceit and error.

Those Nouns which are used in the aggregate, are excepted from this rule : Ex.

Judios, Cristianos, Mahometanos,  
todos fueron incluidos en el nú-  
mero,

Jews, Christians, Mahometans, all  
were included in the number.

**9.** The days of the week, and the hour of the day, take the Definite Article in Spanish : Ex.

Vendré á ver á Vmd. el Domingo  
á la una, ó á las dos,

I shall come and see you on Sun-  
day, at one or two o'clock.

No vaya Vmd. hasta el Lunes á  
las seis y media, ó el Mártes á  
las tres menos cuarto,

Do not go until Monday at half  
past six o'clock, or Tuesday at a  
quarter before three.



WHEN THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS USED IN ENGLISH AND NOT IN SPANISH.

10. The Definite Article is not used in Spanish before Numerical Adjectives, following the names of kings, potentates, &c. : Ex.

Leopoldo Primero, Rey de los Belgas,	Leopold the First, King of the Belgians.
Leon Décimo, Pontífice de Roma,	Leo the Tenth, a Pontiff of Rome.

11. It is omitted when we speak of the *titles* of books, chapters, &c. : Ex.

La obra que compré, se intitula "Historia de España,"	The book which I bought, is entitled "The History of Spain."
Capítulo once; verso segundo,	Chapter the eleventh; verse the second.

But if we allude to the subject of the work or any particular part of it, we should generally employ the Article : Ex.

La Historia de España, trata tambien de su Literatura,	The History of Spain treats also on its Literature.
En el capítulo primero, encontramos, &c.	In the first chapter, we find, &c.

12. The Article is omitted, except before the first Noun, when several Nouns are used in apposition, that is, when several Nouns follow each other, all alluding to the same thing : Ex.

Vienen de la ciudad de Paris, capital de la Francia, y residencia de su corte,	They come from the city of Paris, the capital of France, and residence of the court.
--	--

In this example we see, that the *city of Paris*, the *capital of France*, and the *residence of the court*, are all one and the same place.

13. When Nouns are used in a *partitive* sense, they take no Article : Ex.

Deme Vmd. papel,	Give me ( <i>some</i> ) paper.
Quiere Vmd. dinero?	Do you want ( <i>any</i> ) money?
Denos Vmd. vino,	Give us ( <i>some</i> ) wine.

In these examples we see that something in the sense of *some*, or *any*, is understood, which in both languages may be either expressed or not; for which reason the foregoing examples in Spanish may also be expressed thus :

Deme Vmd. un poco de papel,	Give me <i>some</i> or a little paper.
Quiere Vmd. algun dinero?	Do you want <i>any</i> money?
Denos Vmd. un poco de vino,	Give us <i>some</i> or a little wine.

*Un poco de*, is equivalent to *a little*, or *a small portion* or *quantity of*. *Algun*, means *some* or *any* : *Algun* is derived from the Indeterminate Pronoun *Alguno*, which changes its last vowel into *a* for the feminine gender ; and an *s* is added to it to form the plural number : but when it precedes a Noun masculine singular, it drops the *o* : Ex.

¿ Necesita Vmd. dinero alguno ?	Do you require <i>any</i> money ?
Compreme Vm. algun libro, algunos poemas, alguna novela, algunas fábulas,	Buy me <i>some</i> book, <i>some</i> poems, <i>some</i> novels, <i>some</i> fables.

*Any* interrogatively used, is frequently suppressed in Spanish : Ex.

¿ Necesita Vmd. dinero ?	Do you require <i>any</i> money ?
¿ Quiere Vmd. pan ?	Do you wish <i>any</i> bread ?

(For *Alguno*, used as an Indeterminate Pronoun, see Lec. 24, Par. 3 & 4.)

Instead of *algunos* and *algunas*, we may also use *unos* or *unas*, in the sense of *some* or *a few* : Ex.

Compreme Vmd. unos libros, unas novelas,	Buy me <i>some</i> or <i>a few</i> books, <i>some</i> novels.
--	---

In every other case the Definite Article is generally used alike, in both languages.

#### EXERCISE ON THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The beauty of the poem.	The delicacy of the style.
hermosura, f. poema, m.	delicadeza, f. estilo, m.
[As soon as I received] information,	that the soldiers had
luego que recibí noticia, f.	que soldados, m. p. habian
occupied the fort and town,	my zeal for the service
ocupado fuerte, m. villa, f.	mi celo por servicio, m.
[would not allow me] any longer to remain in the capital.	Among
no me permitia mas tiempo a quedarme en ——— f.	entre
the advantages which our arms obtained, in the glorious action,	
ventajas, f. p. que nuestras armas lograron	gloriosa ———, f.
one of the most interesting was, that of having completely	
una mas interesantes, f. p. fué la	haber completamente
destroyed the intent of the oppressors.	Care is often the
destruido intento, m. opresores, m. p. cuidado, m.	es amenudo
attendant on greatness.	Man is a slave to his passions.
compañero, m. de grandeza, f. hombre, m. es a esclavo	sus pasiones.
Spring, Summer, Autumn and Winter are the four	
primavera f. verano, m. otoño, m. invierno, m. son	cuatro
seasons of the year.	Cowardice and meanness, are qualities
estaciones, f. p. año, m. cobardía, f. bajeza, f.	son cualidades

of a man destitute of honor. Impartial (2) criticism (1) [should not  
sin a — imparcial crítica, f. no debe

offend.] on the contrary, [we ought to feel honored by it.] General N.  
ofender á contrario debíamos honrarnos con ella.

[was happily engaged] in maintaining tranquillity and repressing  
se ocupaba con feliz éxito mantener tranquilidad, f. [en reprimir]  
seditions. The happiness of a man of feeling is to relieve the  
sediciones, f. p. felicidad, f. un sentimiento es á aliviar

wants of the poor. The love of glory animates the  
necesidades, f. p. pobres, m. p. amor, m. gloria, f. [ánima á]

brave. France, Spain, Italy and Germany are  
valerosos, m. p. Francia, f. España, f. Italia, f. Germania, f. son

countries on the continent of Europe. Russia is a vast Empire.  
países de continente, m. Europa, f. — f. es un vasto Imperio.

Europe, Asia, Africa and America are the four quarters of the  
— f. — f. — f. son cuatro partes, f. p.

world. Rome and Venice were ancient (2) republics (1). I intend to  
mundo. Venecia fueron antiguas repúblicas á intento á

proceed from Holland to France, and from France to England.  
proceder Holanda Inglaterra.

Mrs. A. lives in that street. Mrs. B. has already (2) spoken (1)  
vive aquella calle. ha ya hablado

to Mrs. C. I am a substitute of Doctor Sangrado. Gil Blas, said  
yo soy á substituto —, m. — — dijo

Captain Rolando. Innocence, virtue and honor should be appre-  
capitan, m. —. inocencia, f. virtud, f. debían ser apre-

ciated. Men, women, and children, all were [taken prisoners.]  
ciados. hombres, mugeres niños todos fueron apresados.

Never be a slave to avarice and vice. [We shall leave London]  
jamás seas á esclavo avaricia, f. vicio, m. saldremos de Londres

on Wednesday at half past four, and arrive at our destination on  
á Miércoles llegaremos nuestro destino á

Friday, at one or two [o'clock]. Louis Philip the first, was proclaimed  
Viernes ó á Luis Felipe primero, fué proclamado

King of the French in the year 1830. Leo the ninth, was the  
Franceses, m. p. año, m. nono fué

first Pope that maintained an army in his dominions. Here is a  
primer Papa que mantuvo un ejército sus dominios. aquí está un

book entitled "The civil (2) wars (1) of Granada." The second  
libro intitulado civiles guerras — segundo

paragraph says, thus. Hercules the son of Jupiter. Here is the paper  
párrafo dice así. — hijo — papel, m.

which I have bought. This is the key of the garden. The  
que á he comprado. esta es llave, f. jardín, m.

Pyrenees divide France from Spain. The Tagus empties itself  
Pirineos, m. p. dividen Tajo, m. desagua á

into the Atlantic. The Jupiter of Phidias. Leopold Grand Duke of  
en Atlántico, m. Fidas. gran duque

## LECTURE VI.] ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF ARTICLES. 23

Tuscany. Nicholas Emperor of Russia. Quarrels frequently  
 Toscana. Nicolas emperador disputas, *f. p.* [muchas veces]  
 produce fatal (2) consequences (1). Take some of the wine that  
 atraen fatales consecuencias, *f. p.* [tome vmd.] vino, *m. que*  
 [I sent you.] They are some of the apples from my orchard. I have  
 le mandé. A son manzanas, *f. p.* mi huerto. A he  
 received some letters. I want some paper and some pens.  
 recibido cartas, *f. p.* A necesito papel, *m.* plumas, *f. p.*  
 I have some documents to answer. Have you (2) received (1)  
 A tengo documentos, *m. p.* que contestar. ha vmd. recibido  
 any wine? Yes, I have received some. Riches often  
 sí A he riquezas, *f. p.* amenudo  
 [gain us] credit, power, friends, and respect.  
 nos grangear crédito, poder, amigos, respeto.

## LECTURE VI.

### THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. THE English Indefinite Article *a* or *an*, is translated in Spanish *un* before a Noun masculine, and *una* before a Noun feminine; Ex.

<i>Un libro, un caballo, un agente,</i>	<i>A book, a horse, an agent, a bell,</i>
<i>una campana, una casa, una</i>	<i>a house, a woman, an apple.</i>
<i>muger, una manzana,</i>	

2. In either language the Indefinite Article can only be applied to nouns of the singular number: and although it may be seen employed with the words *dozen, gross, &c.*, still the quantity denoted by these words is comprehended in *one* body.

3. The English Indefinite Article employed before Nouns of weight, measure, or number, in speaking of their value or rate, is translated by the *Definite* Article; Ex.

Two dollars <i>a</i> yard,	Dos pesos <i>la</i> vara.
Six pence <i>a</i> pound,	Seis peniques <i>la</i> libra.
Three shillings <i>a</i> hundred,	Tres chelines <i>el</i> ciento.

4. When the Indefinite Article is used in English in speaking with relation to distance, it is translated *por*, which means *by*; Ex.

At the rate of ten reals *a* league, A razon de diez reales *por* legua.

Sometimes *por* is used instead of the Definite Article, in speaking of value or rate ; Ex.

Se vendió á tres duros <i>por</i> vara,	It was sold at three dollars <i>per</i> yard.
Me costó á dos duros <i>por</i> libra,	It cost me at two dollars <i>per</i> pound.

5. When *a* or *an* is employed in English as a Numerical Adjective, and means particularly *one*, it is translated into Spanish also by the Numerical Adjective, (from which, in fact, the Spanish Indefinite Article is taken) : Ex.

I bought <i>a</i> pound of raisins,	Compré <i>una</i> libra de pasas.
He sold me <i>an</i> ounce of platina,	Me vendió <i>una</i> onza de platina.
Give me <i>a</i> couple of dozen,	Deme vmd. <i>un</i> par de docenas.

WHEN THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE IS USED IN ENGLISH BUT NOT IN SPANISH.

6. The Indefinite Article is omitted in Spanish, before Nouns expressive of the *rank*, *profession*, or *country* of a person, when these nouns are preceded by any part of the verb to be, as referring to them ; Ex.

He is <i>an</i> ambassador,	El es embajador.
I am <i>an</i> Englishman,	Yo soy Inglés.
He was <i>a</i> duke,	El era duque.
Are you <i>a</i> physician ?	¿ Es vmd. médico ?

It is also omitted in Spanish, before Nouns of rank, profession or country, when they serve to characterize, or to distinguish in some particular manner, the person or thing represented by the Noun coming before ; Ex.

Lope de Vega, <i>a</i> poet of Spain,	Lope de Vega, poeta de España, <i>or</i> poeta Español.
Socrates, <i>a</i> famous Grecian philosopher,	Sócrates, famoso filósofo Griego.
Vitruvius, <i>a</i> Roman, and <i>a</i> distinguished architect,	Vitruvio, Romano, y distinguido arquitecto.

7. The Indefinite Article is omitted in Spanish before Nouns used in apposition ; Ex.

Cádiz, <i>a</i> town in Andalusia,	Cádiz, ciudad de Andalucía.
Catalonia, <i>a</i> province of Spain,	Cataluña, provincia de España.

8. Also when it is used in English between an Adjective and a Noun ; Ex.

Such <i>a</i> person,	Tal persona.
So beautiful <i>a</i> woman,	Muger tan bella, <i>or</i> tan bella muger.

9. After the word *what*, used before a noun in exclamation or surprise; Ex.

What a noise!	¡ Que ruido!
What a fine view!	¡ Que bella vista!

10. Before the numbers *a thousand*, or *a hundred*; it is retained however before *a million*, though not before *a million and a half*; Ex.

A thousand dollars,	Mil pesos.
A hundred pounds,	Cien libras.
A million of reals,	Un millon de reales.
A million and a half,	Millon y medio.

11. It is omitted before the words *half*, or *one and a half*; and also between the word *half* and a noun; Ex.

Two yards and a half,	Dos varas y media.
One ounce and a half,	Onza y media.
Half a pound,	Media libra.

12. It is omitted in the title of a book; Ex.

A Spanish dictionary,	Diccionario Español.
An English Grammar,	Gramática Inglesa.

In all other cases the Indefinite Article is generally employed alike in both languages.

#### EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

Fortune	is a capricious (2) deity (1).	A guilty (2) conscience (1)
fortuna, f.	es caprichosa deidad, f.	criminal conciencia, f.
is a perpetual (2) torment (1).	I bought a book, a sand box, and an	
es perpétuo tormento, m.	^ compré salvadera, f.	
ink stand.	How much a yard?	Two dollars a pound.
tintero, m.	^ como seis	Six dollars
a hundred.	We travelled at the rate of ten leagues a day.	The
	^ caminamos ^ razon diez leguas día.	
vessel	sails two leagues an hour.	Give me a dozen, at two guineas
buque, m. and	[deme vmd.] docena, f. [de 4.]	—
a dozen.	Give me nine pounds, at a shilling a pound.	He is a
	nueve	El es
book-binder, and his brother a book-seller.	I am a German, and he	
encuadernador su hermano librero.	Yo soy Aleman	
is an Irishman.	He acted like a traitor.	Parnassus, a mountain
Irlandés.	^ obró como traidor.	Parnaso monte
of Phocis, is famous for being the residence of the Muses.	Captain V.,	
Focida es famoso por ser residencia, f.	Musas, f. p. Capitan, m.	
an officer in the Dutch (2) service (1) said that he had seen	Count D. a	
oficial en Holandés servicio, m. dijo que ^ habia visto [al Conde]		

French (2) general (1). Francés _____, m.	He obtained so complete a victory. A logró tan completa victoria.	She A
has so fine a house, and so beautiful a garden. tiene bella	hermoso jardín.	What an excellent que bellísimo
person! sugeto.	What a fine horse! hermoso caballo.	Buy me a thousand pens. [Compreme vmd.] plumas.
[I will give you] a hundred dollars. le daré á vmd.	This palace cost a million of este palacio costó	
dollars, and that a million and a half. aquel	Give me two dollars and a medio.	
half. aquí hai	Here is an ounce and a half of gold, and half an ounce of silver. onza media oro	plata.
A treatise on philosophy. tratado de filosofía.	A history of the world. historia mundo, m.	Here is a lady señora
and a gentleman. caballero.	[I was talking] to an acquaintance. hablaba con conocido.	

## LECTURE VII.

### THE NEUTER ARTICLE.

1. We have now to consider the neuter Article *lo*. This little word is employed, first, before Nouns formed from Adjectives. Observe that all Spanish Adjectives may be converted into Nouns by simply prefixing the neuter Article *lo* to them; Ex.

<i>Lo</i> bueno, <i>lo</i> malo.	<i>That which is good, that which is bad.</i>
<i>Lo</i> verdadero es preferible á <i>lo</i> fingido,	<i>That which is real is preferable to what is feigned.</i>
No saben <i>lo</i> difícil que es,	They do not know how difficult it is.

And secondly, the neuter Article *lo*, is frequently employed before the words *que*, *cual*; Ex.

Escuché todo <i>lo que</i> dijo, por <i>lo</i> cual supe, que, &c.	I listened to all <i>what</i> , or <i>that which</i> he said, by <i>which</i> I knew that, &c.
--	--

Now it is necessary to observe in this sentence, that the words *todo lo que* *dijo*, are used in so vague a sense, that we cannot attach either the *masculine* or *feminine* gender to the matter to which they allude; therefore the neuter Article *lo*, has been called in to refer to it. The same observation applies to the second member of the sentence.

The student must be careful in not confounding the neuter Article *lo*, with the neuter Pronoun *lo*, noticed in Lec. 16, Par. 8.

## EXERCISE ON THE NEUTER ARTICLE.

[You are not aware] how beautiful it is. The work treats on the  
 Vmd. ignora hermoso que es. obra, f. trata sobre  
 sublime and beautiful. [Let us prefer] that which is solid, to that  
 prefiramos sólido  
 which is vain. [Let him abide] by what is just. What is most  
 vano. que se limite á justo. mas  
 desired, is (2) not (1) always the most easy to obtain. [I know all;]  
 apetecible, es no siempre fácil de conseguir. todo lo sé  
 by which I infer that, &c. What I know is not what you think.  
 por A infero que, &c. yo sé vmd. piensa.  
 All that glitters is not gold  
 todo reluce oro.

## LECTURE VIII.

## ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

1. For the definition of this part of speech, the student is referred to Lec. 4, Par. 5; he has now to observe, that,

*Nouns* are either *common* or *proper*. The term *common* is appropriated to that class of Nouns which embraces in it many objects of the same kind, as *man, star, province, river, &c.* There are many *men, stars, provinces, rivers, &c.*, but these names are applied to them in *common*, and are therefore distinguished by the appellation of *common Nouns*. But *proper Nouns* are those names which are appropriated to persons and places, and to those things of which there exists but one of the kind, as *William, Elizabeth, London, Madrid, God, Heaven*. There are of course many men named *William*, and many women named *Elizabeth*, yet these names are not *common* to all men and women.

2. Some Nouns are called *collective*, which grammarians have subdivided into *general* and *partitive*; classing under the head of *general*, all those Nouns that represent a distinctive mass or body of objects; as a *nation, an army*; and applying the term *partitive* to such as do not represent any determined mass or body; as a *quantity, a multitude*. With the former, the Verb, in both languages, is generally made to agree in the *singular* number; Ex.

Toda la nacion fué contra ello,  
 El ejército fué derrotado,

The whole nation was against it.  
 The army was defeated.



But with the latter, the Verb is generally made to *æ* in the plural number ; Ex.

Un gran número de soldados fueron hechos prisioneros,	A great number of soldiers were made prisoners.
Una infinidad de aves han muerto,	An infinity of birds have died.

#### OF AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE NOUNS.

3. These derivatives, denote a larger or smaller thing of the kind, than that which is expressed by their primitives. They are formed in Spanish, by the addition of various terminations to the Noun in its primitive state, generally dropping the final vowel if it have one.

4. Nouns *augmentative* of the masculine gender, are formed by the addition of the letters *on*, *ose*, or *azo* ; those of the feminine gender, by *ona* or *asa*. These terminations are equivalent in their meaning to the English words *big*, *large*, *stout*, *tall*, and such like ; Ex.

PRIMITIVES.	DERIVATIVES.	PRIMITIVES.	DERIVATIVES.
Hombre, hombron, or hombrazo,		A man,	a tall or large man.
Muger, mugerona,		A woman,	a masculine woman.
Sombrero, sombrenote,		A hat,	a large or big hat.

5. It will not be improper to mention here, that the termination *azo* is sometimes used also, to express the injury that a weapon is capable of inflicting ; Ex.

La mató de un pistoletazo,	He shot her with a pistol.
Me tiró en tierra de un garrotazo,	He knocked me down with a blow of a stick.

6. Nouns *diminutive* are formed by the addition of the terminations *in*, *illo*, *ito*, *ico*, *etc*, *uelo*, or *ujo*, to the masculine : the feminine are formed by adding *a* to the termination *in*, and by changing the final vowel of the others into *a* ; observing, however, that diminutives ending in *ito* and *ico* denote not only *smallness*, but a kind of endearing expression ; and those that end in *illo*, *uelo*, or *ujo*, generally denote *contempt* ; Ex.

PRIMITIVES.	DERIVATIVES.	PRIMITIVES.	DERIVATIVES.
Hombre, hombrequito, hombrechillo,		A man,	a nice little man, a pitiful little fellow.
Casa, casita, casilla,		A house,	a pretty little house, a mean little house.

This rule, however, is not always strictly uniform ; practice only can make the pupil familiar with the peculiar meaning of these terminations.

7. Observe that augmentative and diminutive Nouns are of the gender of their primitives ; but those ending in *azo*, used to express the injury inflicted by a weapon, follow the rule of their termination with regard to their gender. See Par. 13 of this lecture.

## OF NUMBER.

8. Nouns are varied in their form, so as to express one or many. Nouns have two numbers, namely, the *singular* to denote *one* of the kind, as *a man, a house* ; and the *plural*, to express more than one ; as, *men, houses*. The plural of Spanish Nouns is formed as follows.

9. When the Spanish Noun ends in a vowel, on which the stress of the voice does *not* fall, its plural is formed by the addition of an *s* to the Noun in the singular number ; Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Estrella,	estrellas,	Star,	stars.
Ave,	aves,	Bird,	birds.
Geógrafo,	geógrafos,	Geographer,	geographers.

10. When the Noun ends in an accented vowel, or in *y*, its plural is formed by the addition of *es* to the Noun in the singular number. The same takes place with Nouns that end in a consonant, unless that consonant be a *z*, in which case the plural is formed by changing the *z* into *ces* ; Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Jabalí,	jabalíes,	Wild boar,	wild boars.
Ley,	leyes,	Law,	laws.
Barril,	barriles,	Barrel,	barrels.
Luz,	luces,	Light,	lights.

\* \* Observe that in the exercises in future, all Spanish Nouns will be put in the singular number, whatever may be the number of the corresponding Nouns in English. The student will therefore have to consider the number of the English Noun previous to his translating it, and to be governed by the foregoing rules, for the formation of the Noun in the plural number when required.

## EXERCISE ON THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL NUMBER OF NOUNS.

The beauty	of the birds,	and the melody of their voices.	The
hermosura, <i>f</i> .		melodia, <i>f</i> .	sus voz.
woods	in those countries	are very thick.	The flocks in the
bosque, <i>m</i> .	en aquellos pais	son muy espesos.	rebaño, <i>m</i> .
meadows.	The niceties	of the languages.	The gilly-flowers
prado, <i>m</i> .	delicadeza, <i>f</i> .	lengua, <i>f</i> .	alelí, <i>m</i> .
and roses	grew in abundance.	Men and women	should be faithful
rosa, <i>f</i> .	crecian abundancia.		deben ser fieles

## ETIMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

each other.      those ministers framed it  
 aquellos ministros, m. formaron b  
 The scholars received the books  
 los estudiantes recibieron libro,  
 Those garrets are very ro  
 aquellos cuartos, m. son esp  
 very beautiful.  
 muy hermosa.

11. There are some Nouns which in t  
 always a plural signification, and consequ  
 to derive comparative with them, be in the  
 such are rivers, provisions: rios, v  
 provisiones, and several others.

There are others which notwithstanding  
 have not a plural signification, and  
 to derive the singular number: such as  
 children, a half-year, and some

## OF NOUNS.

12. Nouns are the names of a Noun, i  
 makes the distinction of sex: and  
 to derive the Singular number.  
 The English is  
 and the other gender thus de  
 that distinction of sex and classin  
 of gender.

13. Nouns are distinguished the g  
 to their signification, to al  
 gender in their respective sex  
 singular and plural, of t  
 the individuals: which they d  
 distinction in order to accoun  
 of a noun which is necessarily  
 gender. This is the Noun and  
 of the singular and plural which

man	hombre
woman	mujer
king	rey
queen	reina
son	hijo
daughter	hija
brother	hermano
sister	hermana

These are the names of the Nouns, and  
 the words which are used to  
 to derive the singular number.

are also two other species of Nouns, the one called *epicane*, which is applied to Nouns that express both genders by the same word; as, *El pato*, The duck or the drake; *La rata*, The he or she rat: neither does the Article prefixed to these Nouns vary, to distinguish their gender: therefore, in order to point out their gender, it is necessary to add some word to them, descriptive of their sex; as, *El pato macho*, *El pato hembra*; *La rata macho*, *La rata hembra*; *macho* signifying *male*, and *hembra* *female*.

The other species of Nouns is called *common*, from their being common to both genders, and the Article prefixed to them points out the distinction of their gender; as, *El tigre*, The tiger; *La tigre*, The tigress; *Un jóven*, A young man; *Una jóven*, A young woman.

## LIST OF EXCEPTIONS IN THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

## Masculine Nouns ending in A.

Adema,	prop.	guardavela,	main-top tackle.
albacea,	executor.	guardaropa,	wardrobe.
almea,	storax.	idioma,	idiom.
anagrama,	anagram.	jesuita,	jesuit.
apeurisma,	aneurism.	largomira,	telescope.
antípoda,	antipode.	lema,	lemma.
aporisma,	ecchymosis.	maná,	manna.
apoteigma,	spothegn.	mapa,	map.
accioma,	axiom.	metaplasma,	metaplas.
carisma,	divine gift.	minimista,	student.
clima,	clinate.	paradigma,	paradigm.
cometa,	comet.	paradoja,	paradox.
crisma,	chrism.	paragua,	umbrella.
dia,	day.	pentagrama,	musical stave.
diafragma,	midriff.	planeta,	planet.
diagrama,	diagram.	pleonasma,	pleonasm.
dilema,	dilemma.	poema,	poem.
diploma,	diploma.	prisma,	prism.
dogma,	dogma.	problema,	problem.
drama,	drama.	progimnasma,	essay.
edema,	cedema.	sintoma,	symptom.
enigma,	enigma.	sistema,	system.
entimema,	enthymeme.	sofá,	sopha.
epigrama,	epigram.	sofisma,	sophism.
esperma,	sperm.	tema,	theme.
Etna,	Etna.	teorema,	theorem.
guardacosta,	custom-house	viva,	huzza.
	boat.		

## Masculine Nouns ending in D.

Adalid,	a chief, a leader.	cesped,	turf.
alamud,	door bar.	huesped,	guest.
almud,	a measure.	laud,	lute.
archiláud,	a species of lute.	sud,	south.
ardid,	stratagem.	talmud,	talmud.
ataud,	coffin.		

## Masculine Nouns ending in ION.

Avion,	a kind of swallow.	morion,	murrain.
embrion,	embryo.	aluvion,	alluvion.
gorrion,	sparrow.	chirion,	a kind of cart.
guion,	standard.	antuvion,	a sudden shock.
sarampion,	measles.		

## Feminine Nouns ending in E.

Anade,	duck.	ingle,	groin.
alache,	shad.	intemperie,	intemperateness.
alsine,	chickweed.	lande,	a kind of acorn.
ave,	fowl, bird.	laudre,	glandular swelling.
azumbre,	a measure.		
barbarie,	barbarity.	laringe,	larynx.
base,	basis.	laude,	praise, an epitaph.
calvicie,	baldness.	leche,	milk.
calle,	street.	legumbre,	pulse.
capelardente,	funeral pile.	lente,	lens.
cariátide,	caryatides.	liebre,	hare.
carne,	flesh.	liendre,	nit.
catástrofe,	catastrophe.	lite,	litigation.
certidumbre,	certainty.	llave,	key.
churre,	grease.	lumbre,	fire.
clase,	class.	mansedumbre,	meekness.
clave,	key.	menguante,	ebb-tide.
clemátide,	climber (a plant).	mente,	the mind.
cohorte,	cohort.	mole,	mass.
compages,	joint.	molcie,	effeminacy.
corambre,	hides.	muchedumbre,	multitude.
corriente,	stream.	muerte,	death.
corte,	court.	mugre,	dirt.
costumbre,	custom.	nave,	ship.
crasie,	fatness.	nieve,	snow.
creciente,	flood-tide.	noche,	night.
cumbre,	summit.	nube,	cloud.
dulcedumbre,	sweetness.	paralage,	parallax.
elatine,	waterwort.	paraselene,	mock-moon.
epipáctide,	bastard hellebore.	parte,	a part.
esferóide,	spheroid.	patente,	patent.
especie,	species.	plélide,	wild purslain.
estirpe,	race, or origin.	pesadumbre,	grief.
falange,	phalanx.	peste,	the plague.
fase,	phases.	pirámide,	pyramid.
fé,	faith.	pigide,	pix.
fièvre,	fever.	palmicie,	plain.
frente,	front.	plebe,	rabble.
fuate,	fountain.	podre,	pus.
gente,	people.	podredumbre,	rottenness.
hambre,	hunger.	progenie,	progeny.
helice,	helix.	prole,	issue.
hemionite,	the plant hemionite.	quiete,	quietus.
		salumbre,	oxide of salt.
herrumbre,	rust of iron.	salve,	the Salve Regina.
hipocistide,	the plant hypocistas.	sangre,	blood.
		sede,	a see.
hojaldre,	a kind of pancake.	serie,	series.
incertidumbre,	uncertainty.	servidumbre,	servitude.
ladole,	temper.	serpiente,	serpent.

,	quicksand.	torre,	tower.
e,	chance.	trabe,	a beam.
rficie,	superficies.	tripode,	tripod.
,,	afternoon.	troge,	granary.
e,	a kind of stone.	ubre,	udder.
ambre,	roof.	urdiembre,	warp.
erie,	temperature.	varice,	varix.
,	a line sometimes	velambre,	nuptial rites.
	placed over the	vislumbre,	glimmering.
	Spanish n, thus		
	z.		

**Feminine Nouns ending in I or Y.**

esi,	diocese.	metrópoli,	metropolis.
adei,	the herb gratiola.	palmacristi,	palmachristi.
or grey,	flock.	paráfrasi,	paraphrase.
	law.		

**Feminine Nouns ending in L.**

miel,	hydromel.	hiel,	gall.
	lime.	miel,	honey.
al,	capital.	piel,	skin.
il,	prison.	sal,	salt.
	cabbage.	señal,	signal.
etal,	decretal.	vocal,	vowel.

**Feminine Nouns ending in N.**

mazon,	stowage.	plomazon,	a gilder's cushion.
schazon,	fallowing time.	razon,	reason.
zon,	the second	sarten,	frying-pan.
	ploughing.	sazon,	season.
izon,	cargo.	segazon,	reaping time.
zon,	row of nails.	sien,	temple (part of
or crin.	mane.		the head).
zon,	uneasiness.	sinrazon,	injustice.
en,	image.	trabazon,	splicing.
baton,	hyperbaton.		

**Feminine Nouns ending in O.**

o,	hand.	nao,	ship.
----	-------	------	-------

**Feminine Nouns ending in R.**

ar,	bezoar.	segur,	axe.
	flower.	zoster,	shingles.
,	labour.		

**Feminine Nouns ending in S.**

fris,	bean trefoil.	diaperésis,	diapedesis.
eristasis,	antiperistasis.	diatrásis,	diathrasis.
osis,	apothecosis.	diésis,	diesis.
	bile.	enfitéusis,	emphyteusis.
facis,	isinglass.	epiglótis,	epiglottis.
,	crisis.	etites,	etites.

galiópsis,	dead-nettle.	raquitis,	rickets.
hipóstasis,	hypostasis.	res,	head of cattle.
hipótesis,	hypothesis.	salsifras,	saxifrage.
lis,	flower de-lys.	sindéresis,	remorse.
macis,	mace.	sinéresis,	synæresis.
metamórfosis,	metamorphosis.	sintáctis,	syntax.
metemísicosis,	metemyschosis.	tésis,	thesis.
parálacis,	parallax.	tísis,	phthisis.
parálisis,	palsy.	tos,	cough.
parénesis,	paranesis.		

## Feminine Nouns ending in Z.

Cerviz,	cervix.	niñez,	childhood.
cocatriz,	cocatrice.	nuez,	nut.
codorniz,	quail.	paz,	peace.
coz,	kick.	perdiz,	partridge.
cruz,	cross.	pez,	pitch.
faz,	visage.	pomez,	pumice.
haz,	bundle.	raiz,	root.
hez,	drags.	sobrehaz,	surface.
hoz,	sickle, defile.	sobrepelliz,	surplice.
luz,	light.	tez,	complexion.
matriz,	matrix.	vez,	time.
nariz,	nose.	voz,	voice.

And all those Nouns ending in *ez*, denoting qualities in the abstract: as, *brillantez*, brilliancy; *escasez*, scarcity, and many others.

There are also a few Nouns, of which the Gender is not generally fixed, as some authors consider them masculine, and others feminine. The following is a list of them:—

Albalá,	certificate, cocket.	hipérbole,	hyperbole.
anatema,	anathema.	mart,	sea.
arte*,	art.	nema,	seal of a letter.
azucar,	sugar.	neuma,	a significant gesture.
calor,	heat.	órden,	order.
canal,	canal.	pringue,	grease.
cisma,	schism.	puente,	bridge.
cútis,	skin.	reuma,	rheum.
dote,	dowry.	tribu,	tribe.
hermafrodita,	hermaphrodite.		

## EXERCISE ON THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

\*.\* *The Gender of the Spanish Nouns will not be pointed out in the Exercises in future; as it is presumed the foregoing Rules will enable the Student to distinguish them.*

Self love and pride are the offspring of ignorance. Innocence,  
 amor propio orgullo son hijos ignorancia. inocencia,  
 honor, and the love of virtue are estimable (2) qualities (1). The  
 ——— amor virtud estimables prenda

\* *Arts, is always feminine when used in the plural number.*

† The compounds of *mar*, are universally feminine: as, *bajamar*, low water; *pleamar*, high water.

LECTURE IX.] ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF NOUNS. 35

summits of those mountains are very pleasant. Her conversation is  
 cima aquellos monte muy agradables. su \_\_\_\_\_ es  
 very agreeable. Good cultivation contributes to the fertility of the soil.  
 amena. buen cultivo contribuye fertilidad tierra.  
 They follow the same system. The situation of the country. The  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 siguen mismo pais.  
 treatise appears to have been written by an historian. She is a servant  
 tratado parece \_\_\_\_\_ haber sido escrito por historiador. ella es criada  
 of the dutchess. Amplification or climax, is a figure of speech  
 duquesa. \_\_\_\_\_ [6 sea] graduacion figura retórica  
 which gradually heightens the circumstances of an object.  
 que [va subiendo de grado en grado] circunstancia objeto.  
 He was decorated with the cross of honor. The symptoms of the  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 fué condecorado con  
 disease. It is the custom of the times.  
 enfermedad. \_\_\_\_\_ es tiempo.

## LECTURE IX.

### ON CASE.

1. We have now come to that variation of Nouns, called *case*. It is one of the most difficult parts of Grammar to comprehend fully : it is one of the utmost import, and consequently demands the greatest attention. Much has been said by many Grammarians, respecting this important subject, but few have brought it home to the comprehension of the learner. Some indeed, have dispensed with it altogether, alleging that no such thing as case exists, in the greater number of modern Languages ; and have thus avoided to treat on a most essential part of Grammar.

The motive which has led some Grammarians to deny the existence of case, has doubtless originated in the different cases being denoted in Latin by the inflections which a Noun exhibits in its various terminations ; and as Nouns in most of the modern Languages, are not subject to these inflections, some have supposed them to have no case. But cases do not originate in consequence of the inflections in Nouns :— it is the inflections, that point out the case, or state of the Noun : it is the state or relation of a Noun, that causes it to be in any particular case : and these causal states, or rela-



tions are denoted in modern Languages, by the assistance of Prepositions, with the same precision, as Nouns in Latin are, by inflections : For instance,

Nominative.	Dominus,	El Señor,	The Lord.
Genitive or Possessive.	Domini,	Del Señor,	Of the Lord.
Dative.	Domino,	Al Señor,	To the Lord.
Accusative or Objective.	Dominum,	Al Señor,	The Lord.
Ablative.	Domino,	Por el Señor,	By the Lord.

Here are the cases exhibited in three Languages. In Latin, no Article nor Preposition is required to point out the case of the Noun; the termination alone of the Noun, is adequate to this purpose; but in Spanish and English, Prepositions and Articles are employed for this end; and their office in these Languages, is precisely the same as that of the terminations in Latin.

In the sentence, *The man saw me*,—the *man* is in a very different case or state, to what he is, in the sentence, *I saw the man*. In the first example, the *man* is in the case of governing the Verb *to see*; he is the *agent* of that Verb; but in the second, the *man* is the *object* upon whom the action falls, of the Verb *to see*. In the first instance, the *man acts*; in the second he is *acted upon*:—his state is different, his case is different. Can it then be doubted that cases must exist in every Language, and that it is of little importance whether they are denoted by particles placed before the Nouns, or by inflections in their terminations?

2. The object now, is to explain the nature and use of the cases. The names by which they are designated are of Latin origin. There are *five* cases to be considered, namely, the *Nominative*, the *Genitive*, the *Dative*, the *Accusative*, and the *Ablative*. In addition to these, we see in all Latin Grammars, another case, called the *Vocative*, and which has likewise been introduced by many, into the Grammars of modern Languages. Ex. *Domine*, in Latin; *O Señor*, in Spanish; and *O Lord* in English. By *vocative*, we are to understand *invoking* or *addressing*. But this case, however indispensable it may be in Latin, appears entirely useless in those Languages, in which the Nouns have not the inflections of Latin Nouns: since a Noun in the *vocative* case, is evidently the *Nominative* in a different attitude, for when we say *O Lord*, we make use of an *ellipsis*, by leaving out the words which are wanting to make the expression complete: thus, *O thou who art the Lord*:—And here we see that the Noun *Lord*, is in the *Nominative* case, coming *after* the verb *art*, and *who* (the Relative Pronoun) is the *Nominative*, before the Verb.

3. The word *case*, is derived from the Latin Noun *casus*, the literal signification of which is *fall*: and as Latin Nouns have six cases, all except the nominative are represented as *falling* or *declining* from the nominative: hence telling the cases, is called *declining* a Noun; and therefore the word *case*, as applied to Grammar, means the relation which a Noun bears in a sentence to another Noun, or Verb or Preposition. The cases as before observed, are denoted in Latin by the termination of the Noun. In English one case, namely, the *possessive*, is formed by the addition of an *s* with the apostrophe: as *the Lord's*. In Spanish, the Noun never undergoes any variation to denote case.

4. A Noun or Pronoun, is in the *nominative case*, when it names a person or thing in a state of *being* or *doing* something, at any period; as *Henry is good*; *He wrote*; *The ship will sail*: in which instances, *Henry*, *He* and the *ship*, are each in the *nominative case*. The Noun *Henry* denotes a person in a state of *being*, as *being good*: The Pronoun *He*, denotes a person that has performed something; and the Noun *ship* describes an inanimate object about to do something. Therefore the person or thing that *is* or that *acts*, is in the *nominative case*; and as *being* and *action* are expressed by *Verbs*, the nominative is said to *govern* the Verb, or to be the *subject* or *agent* of the Verb.

The following are some Nouns and Pronouns in the *nominative case*.

*Thomas is good,*  
*He writes well,*  
*The trees grow,*  
*She said so,*

*Tomas es bueno.*  
*El escribe bien.*  
*Los árboles crecen.*  
*Ella lo dijo.*

These Nouns *Thomas*, *trees*, and the Pronouns *He* and *She* are all in the *nominative case*, because they are either in a state of *being*, or *acting*, and in both instances they govern the Verb.

5. A Noun or Pronoun is in the *genitive* or *possessive case*, when it describes any person or thing in possession of any other person or thing; or when it describes any person or thing to which another Noun relates; as *The laws of the country*; *His sword*; *Her husband*; *Maria's fan*; In these examples, *Country*, *His*, *Her*, and *Maria*, are in the *genitive case*, they being the possessors of the persons or things described as being possessed by them, or the persons or things related to.

But with the latter, the Verb is generally made to agree in the plural number ; Ex.

Un gran número de soldados fueron hechos prisioneros,	A great number of soldiers were made prisoners.
Una infinidad de aves han muerto,	An infinity of birds have died.

#### OF AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE NOUNS.

3. These derivatives, denote a larger or smaller thing of the kind, than that which is expressed by their primitives. They are formed in Spanish, by the addition of various terminations to the Noun in its primitive state, generally dropping the final vowel if it have one.

4. Nouns *augmentative* of the masculine gender, are formed by the addition of the letters *on*, *ote*, or *azo* ; those of the feminine gender, by *ona* or *aza*. These terminations are equivalent in their meaning to the English words *big*, *large*, *stout*, *tall*, and such like ; Ex.

PRIMITIVES.	DERIVATIVES.	PRIMITIVES.	DERIVATIVES.
Hombre,	hombro <u>n</u> , or hombr <u>azo</u> ,	A man,	a tall or large man.
Muger,	mugero <u>na</u> ,	A woman,	a masculine woman.
Sombrero,	sombrero <u>ote</u> ,	A hat,	a large or big hat.

5. It will not be improper to mention here, that the termination *azo* is sometimes used also, to express the injury that a weapon is capable of inflicting ; Ex.

La mató de un pistoletazo,	He shot her with a pistol.
Me tiró en tierra de un garrotazo,	He knocked me down with a blow of a stick.

6. Nouns *diminutive* are formed by the addition of the terminations *in*, *illo*, *ito*, *ico*, *etc*, *uelo*, or *uejo*, to the masculine : the feminine are formed by adding *a* to the termination *in*, and by changing the final vowel of the others into *a* ; observing, however, that diminutives ending in *ito* and *ico* denote not only *smallness*, but a kind of endearing expression ; and those that end in *illo*, *uelo*, or *uejo*, generally denote *contempt* ; Ex.

PRIMITIVES.	DERIVATIVES.	PRIMITIVES.	DERIVATIVES.
Hombre,	hombreci <u>to</u> , hombreci <u>llo</u> ,	A man,	a nice little man, a pitiful little fellow.
Casa,	casita, casilla,	A house,	a pretty little house, a mean little house.

This rule, however, is not always strictly uniform ; practice only can make the pupil familiar with the peculiar meaning of these terminations.

7. Observe that augmentative and diminutive Nouns are of the gender of their primitives ; but those ending in *azo*, used to express the injury inflicted by a weapon, follow the rule of their termination with regard to their gender. See Par. 13 of this lecture.

## OF NUMBER.

8. Nouns are varied in their form, so as to express one or many. Nouns have two numbers, namely, the *singular* to denote *one* of the kind, as *a man, a house* ; and the *plural*, to express more than one ; as, *men, houses*. The plural of Spanish Nouns is formed as follows.

9. When the Spanish Noun ends in a vowel, on which the stress of the voice does *not* fall, its plural is formed by the addition of an *s* to the Noun in the singular number ; Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Estrella,	estrellas,	Star,	stars.
Ave,	aves,	Bird,	birds.
Geógrafo,	geógrafos,	Geographer,	geographers.

10. When the Noun ends in an accented vowel, or in *y*, its plural is formed by the addition of *es* to the Noun in the singular number. The same takes place with Nouns that end in a consonant, unless that consonant be a *z*, in which case the plural is formed by changing the *z* into *ces* ; Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Jabalí,	jabalíes,	Wild boar,	wild boars.
Ley,	leyes,	Law,	laws.
Barril,	barriles,	Barrel,	barrels.
Luz,	luces,	Light,	lights.

\*.\* Observe that in the exercises in future, all Spanish Nouns will be put in the singular number, whatever may be the number of the corresponding Nouns in English. The student will therefore have to consider the number of the English Noun previous to his translating it, and to be governed by the foregoing rules, for the formation of the Noun in the plural number when required.

## EXERCISE ON THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL NUMBER OF NOUNS.

The beauty of the birds, and the melody of their voices.		The
hermosura, f.	melodia, f.	sus voz.
woods in those countries are very thick.	The flocks in the	
bosque, m. en aquellos pais son muy espesos.	rebaño, m.	
meadows. The niceties of the languages.	The gilly-flowers	
prado, m. delicadeza, f. lengua, f.	aleli, m.	
and roses grew in abundance.	Men and women should be faithful	
rosa, f. crecian abundancia.	deben ser fieles	

[to each other.] unos con otros.	Those ministers framed good laws for aquellos ministro, m. formaron buenas ley, f. para
their countries. sus pueblo.	The scholars received the books and pens from discipulos recibieron libro, m. pluma
their masters. sus maestro, m.	Those garrets are very roomy. The zaquizamí, m. son espaciosos.
flowers of those gardens flor, f.	are beautiful. jardin, m. hermosas.

11. There are some Nouns which in their nature have always a plural signification, and consequently require that the Article employed with them, be in the plural number : such are *viveres*, provisions ; *visperas*, vespers ; *alicates*, pincers, and several others.

There are others, which, notwithstanding their plural termination, have not a plural signification, and therefore require the article in the singular number ; such are *corta-plumas*, a penknife ; *saca-botas*, a boot-jack, and some others.

#### OF GENDER.

12. Gender is that property of a Noun, which in all Languages, marks the distinction of sex ; and as there are but two sexes in nature, the Spaniards (among others,) agreeably to this view, have adopted but two genders ; namely, the *masculine* and the *feminine* :—The English in addition to these two, have added the neuter gender, thus designating animate objects by their respective sex, and classing inanimate ones in the *neuter* gender.

13. It is very easy to distinguish the gender of Spanish Nouns : first, by their signification, as all animate objects, are of the gender of their respective sex ; and the rank, professions, employments, and so forth, of persons, are of the gender of the individuals to which they belong. Secondly, by the termination ; the rule to ascertain the gender by which, being so easy, would be preferable to be adopted as a general standard : This rule is, Nouns ending in *a*, *d*, or *ion*, are of the feminine gender : those which end in any other letter are masculine ; Ex.

FEMININE.	MASCULINE.
Inocencia, innocence.	Honor, honour.
Virtud, virtue.	Sombrero, hat.
Relacion, relation.	Monte, mountain.

There are, however, some exceptions to this latter rule, consisting mostly of words of foreign derivation, of which a list will be here given. Observe, however, first, that there

also two other species of Nouns, the one called *epicane*, which is applied to Nouns that express both genders by the same word; as, *El pato*, The duck or the drake; *La rata*, The rat or she rat: neither does the Article prefixed to these Nouns, to distinguish their gender: therefore, in order to point out their gender, it is necessary to add some word to them, indicative of their sex; as, *El pato macho*, *El pato hembra*; *La rata macho*, *La rata hembra*; *macho* signifying *male*, and *hembra* female.

The other species of Nouns is called *common*, from their being common to both genders, and the Article prefixed to it points out the distinction of their gender; as, *El tigre*, tiger; *La tigre*, The tigress; *Un jóven*, A young man; *Una nina*, A young woman.

# LIST OF EXCEPTIONS IN THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

## Masculine Nouns ending in A.

na,	prop.	guardavela,	main-top tackle.
sea,	executor.	guardaropa,	wardrobe.
a,	storax.	idioma,	idiom.
rama,	anagram.	jesuita,	jesuit.
risma,	aneurism.	largomira,	telescope.
oda,	antipode.	lema,	lemma.
sma,	ecchymosis.	maná,	manna.
agma,	apothegm.	mapa,	map.
ma,	axiom.	metaplasma,	metaplasm.
ma,	divine gift.	minimista,	student.
l,	climate.	paradigma,	paradigm.
ta,	comet.	paradoja,	paradox.
ia,	chrism.	paragua,	umbrella.
	day.	pentagrama,	musical stave.
agma,	midriff.	planeta,	planet.
ama,	diagram.	pleonasma,	pleonasm.
ia,	dilemma.	poema,	poem.
ma,	diploma.	prisma,	prism.
ia,	dogma.	problema,	problem.
a,	drama.	progimnasma,	essay.
a,	cedema.	síntoma,	symptom.
ia,	enigma.	sistema,	system.
tema,	enthymeme.	sofá,	sopha.
ama,	epigram.	sofisma,	sophism.
ma,	sperm.	tema,	theme.
	Étna.	teorema,	theorem.
lacosta,	custom-house	viva,	huzza.
	boat.		

## Masculine Nouns ending in D.

id,	a chief, a leader.	cesped,	turf.
ad,	door bar.	huesped,	guest.
d,	a measure.	laud,	lute.
láud,	a species of lute.	sud,	south.
	stratagem.	talmud,	talmud.
,	coffin.		

## Masculine Nouns ending in ION.

Avion,	a kind of swallow.	morrian,	murrain.
embrion,	embryo.	aluvion,	alluvion.
gorrion,	sparrow.	chirion,	a kind of cart.
guion,	standard.	antuvion,	a sudden shock.
sarampion,	measles.		

## Feminine Nouns ending in E.

Anade,	duck.	ingle,	groin.
alache,	shad.	intemperie,	intemperateness.
alsine,	chickweed.	lande,	a kind of acorn.
ave,	fowl, bird.	laudre,	glandular swelling.
azumbre,	a measure.		
barbarie,	barbarity.	laringe,	larynx.
base,	basis.	laude,	praise, an epitaph.
calvicie,	baldness.	leche,	milk.
calle,	street.	legumbre,	pulse.
capelardente,	funeral pile.	lente,	lens.
cariátide,	caryatides.	liebre,	hare.
carne,	flesh.	liendre,	nit.
catástrofe,	catastrophe.	lite,	litigation.
certidumbre,	certainty.	llave,	key.
churre,	grease.	lumbre,	fire.
clase,	class.	mansedumbre,	meekness.
clave,	key.	menguante,	ebb-tide.
clemátide,	climber (a plant).	mente,	the mind.
cohorte,	cohort.	mole,	mass.
compages,	joint.	molice,	effeminacy.
corambre,	hides.	muchedumbre,	multitude.
corriente,	stream.	muerte,	death.
corte,	court.	mgre,	dirt.
costumbre,	custom.	nave,	ship.
crasie,	fatness.	nieve,	snow.
creciente,	flood-tide.	noche,	night.
cumbre,	summit.	nube,	cloud.
dulcedumbre,	sweetness.	paralage,	parallax.
elatine,	waterwort.	paraselene,	mock-moon.
epipáctide,	bastard hellebore.	parte,	a part.
esferóide,	spheroid.	patente,	patent.
especie,	species.	plélide,	wild purslain.
estirpe,	race, or origin.	pesadumbre,	grief.
falange,	phalanx.	peste,	the plague.
fase,	phases.	pirámide,	pyramid.
fé,	faith.	pigide,	pix.
fièvre,	fever.	palmicie,	plain.
frente,	front.	plebe,	rabble.
fuate,	fountain.	podre,	pus.
gente,	people.	podredumbre,	rottenness.
hambre,	hunger.	progenie,	progeny.
helice,	helix.	prole,	issue.
hemionite,	the plant hemionite.	quiete,	quietus.
		salumbre,	oxide of salt.
herrumbre,	rust of iron.	salve,	the Salve Regina.
hipocistide,	the plant hypocistas.	sangre,	blood.
hojaldre,	a kind of pancake.	sede,	a see.
incertidumbre,	uncertainty.	serie,	series.
indole,	temper.	servidumbre,	servitude.
		serpiente,	serpent.

e,	quicksand.	torre,	tower.
ficie,	chance.	trabe,	a beam.
ficie,	superficies.	trípode,	tripod.
ficie,	afternoon.	troge,	granary.
e,	a kind of stone.	ubre,	udder.
umbre,	roof.	urdiembre,	warp.
erie,	temperature.	varice,	varix.
	a line sometimes	velambre,	nuptial rites.
	placed over the	vislumbre,	glimmering.
	Spanish n, thus		
	a.		

**Feminine Nouns ending in I or Y.**

isi,	diocese.	metrópoli,	metropolis.
adi,	the herb gratiola.	palmacristi,	palmachristi.
or grey,	flock.	paráfrasi,	paraphrase.
	law.		

**Feminine Nouns ending in L.**

miel,	hydromel.	hiel,	gall.
	lime.	miel,	honey.
al,	capital.	piel,	skin.
l,	prison.	sal,	salt.
	cabbage.	señal,	signal.
tal,	decretal.	vocal,	vowel.

**Feminine Nouns ending in N.**

nazon,	stowage.	plomazon,	a gilder's cushion.
chazon,	fallowing time.	razon,	reason.
on,	the second	sarten,	frying-pan.
	ploughing.	sazon,	season.
ron,	cargo.	segazon,	reaping time.
ton,	row of nails.	sien,	temple (part of
crin.	mane.		the head).
on,	uneasiness.	sinrazon,	injustice.
n,	image.	trabazon,	splicing.
aton,	hyperbaton.		

**Feminine Nouns ending in O.**

,	hand.	nao,	ship.
---	-------	------	-------

**Feminine Nouns ending in R.**

r,	bezoar.	segur,	axe.
	flower.	zoster,	shingles.
	labour.		

**Feminine Nouns ending in S.**

ris,	bean trefoil.	diaperésis,	diapedesis.
rietasís,	antiperistasis.	diatrásis,	diathrasis.
sis,	apotheosis.	diésis,	diesis.
	bile.	enfitéusis,	emphyteusis.
scis,	isinglass.	epiglótis,	epiglottis.
	crisis.	etítes,	etites.



galiópsis,	dead-nettle.	raquitis,	rickets.
hipóstasis,	hypostasis.	res,	head of cattle.
hipótesis,	hypothesis.	salsifras,	saxifrage.
lis,	flower-de-lys.	sindéreis,	remorse.
macis,	mace.	sinéreis,	synæresis.
metamórfosis,	metamorphosis.	siutácsis,	syntax.
meteméscosis,	metempsychosis.	tésis,	thesis.
paralácsis,	parallax.	tísis,	phthisis.
parálisis,	palsy.	tos,	cough.
parénesis,	paranesis.		

## Feminine Nouns ending in Z.

Cerviz,	cervix.	niñez,	childhood.
cocatriz,	cocatrice.	nuez,	nut.
codorniz,	quail.	paz,	peace.
coz,	kick.	perdiz,	partridge.
cruz,	cross.	pez,	pitch.
faz,	visage.	pomez,	pumice.
haz,	bundle.	raiz,	root.
hez,	drags.	sobrehaz,	surface.
hoz,	sickle, defile.	sobrepelliz,	surplice.
luz,	light.	tez,	complexion.
matriz,	matrix.	vez,	time.
nariz,	nose.	voz,	voice.

And all those Nouns ending in *ez*, denoting qualities in the abstract : as, *brillantez*, brilliancy ; *escasez*, scarcity, and many others.

There are also a few Nouns, of which the Gender is not generally fixed, as some authors consider them masculine, and others feminine. The following is a list of them :—

Albalá,	certificate, cocket.	hipérbole,	hyperbole.
anatema,	anathema.	marí,	sea.
arte*,	art.	nema,	seal of a letter.
azucar,	sugar.	neuma,	a significant gesture.
calor,	heat.	órden,	order.
canal,	canal.	pringue,	grease.
cisma,	schism.	puente,	bridge.
cútis,	skin.	reuma,	rheum.
dote,	dowry.	tribu,	tribe.
hermafrodita,	hermaphrodite.		

## EXERCISE ON THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

\*.\* *The Gender of the Spanish Nouns will not be pointed out in the Exercises in future ; as it is presumed the foregoing Rules will enable the Student to distinguish them.*

Self love and pride are the offspring of ignorance. Innocence,  
 amor propio orgullo son hijos ignorancia. inocencia,  
 honor, and the love of virtue are estimable (2) qualities (1). The  
 ——— amor virtud estimables prenda

\* *Arte*, is always feminine when used in the plural number.

† The compounds of *mar*, are universally feminine : as, *bajamar*, low water ; *pleamar*, high water.

LECTURE IX.] ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF NOUNS. 35

summits of those mountains are very pleasant. Her conversation is  
 cima aquellos monte muy agradables. su \_\_\_\_\_ es  
 very agreeable. Good cultivation contributes to the fertility of the soil.  
 amena. buen cultivo contribuye fertilidad tierra.  
 They follow the same system. The situation of the country. The  
 \_\_\_\_\_ siguen mismo \_\_\_\_\_ pais.  
 treatise appears to have been written by an historian. She is a servant  
 tratado parece \_\_\_\_\_ haber sido escrito por historiador. ella es criada  
 of the dutchess. Amplification or climax, is a figure of speech  
 duquesa. \_\_\_\_\_ [ó sea] graduacion figura retórica  
 which gradually heightens the circumstances of an object.  
 que [va subiendo de grado en grado] circunstancia objeto.  
 He was decorated with the cross of honor. The symptoms of the  
 \_\_\_\_\_ fué condecorado con \_\_\_\_\_  
 disease. It is the custom of the times.  
 enfermedad. \_\_\_\_\_ es tiempo.

## LECTURE IX.

### ON CASE.

1. We have now come to that variation of Nouns, called *case*. It is one of the most difficult parts of Grammar to comprehend fully: it is one of the utmost import, and consequently demands the greatest attention. Much has been said by many Grammarians, respecting this important subject, but few have brought it home to the comprehension of the learner. Some indeed, have dispensed with it altogether, alleging that no such thing as case exists, in the greater number of modern Languages; and have thus avoided to treat on a most essential part of Grammar.

The motive which has led some Grammarians to deny the existence of case, has doubtless originated in the different cases being denoted in Latin by the inflections which a Noun exhibits in its various terminations; and as Nouns in most of the modern Languages, are not subject to these inflections, some have supposed them to have no case. But cases do not originate in consequence of the inflections in Nouns:—it is the inflections, that point out the case, or state of the Noun: it is the state or relation of a Noun, that causes it to be in any particular case: and these causal states, or rela-

tions are denoted in modern Languages, by the assistance of Prepositions, with the same precision, as Nouns in Latin are, by inflections : For instance,

Nominative.	Dominus,	El Señor,	The Lord.
Genitive or Possessive.	Domini,	Del Señor,	Of the Lord.
Dative.	Domino,	Al Señor,	To the Lord.
Accusative or Objective.	Dominum,	Al Señor,	The Lord.
Ablative.	Domino,	Por el Señor,	By the Lord.

Here are the cases exhibited in three Languages. In Latin, no Article nor Preposition is required to point out the case of the Noun; the termination alone of the Noun, is adequate to this purpose; but in Spanish and English, Prepositions and Articles are employed for this end; and their office in these Languages, is precisely the same as that of the terminations in Latin.

In the sentence, *The man saw me*,—the *man* is in a very different case or state, to what he is, in the sentence, *I saw the man*. In the first example, the *man* is in the case of governing the Verb *to see*; he is the *agent* of that Verb; but in the second, the *man* is the *object* upon whom the action falls, of the Verb *to see*. In the first instance, the *man acts*; in the second he is *acted upon*:—his state is different, his case is different. Can it then be doubted that cases must exist in every Language, and that it is of little importance whether they are denoted by particles placed before the Nouns, or by inflections in their terminations?

2. The object now, is to explain the nature and use of the cases. The names by which they are designated are of Latin origin. There are *five* cases to be considered, namely, the *Nominative*, the *Genitive*, the *Dative*, the *Accusative*, and the *Ablative*. In addition to these, we see in all Latin Grammars, another case, called the *Vocative*, and which has likewise been introduced by many, into the Grammars of modern Languages. Ex. *Domine*, in Latin; *O Señor*, in Spanish; and *O Lord* in English. By *vocative*, we are to understand *invoking* or *addressing*. But this case, however indispensable it may be in Latin, appears entirely useless in those Languages, in which the Nouns have not the inflections of Latin Nouns: since a Noun in the *vocative* case, is evidently the *Nominative* in a different attitude, for when we say *O Lord*, we make use of an *ellipsis*, by leaving out the words which are wanting to make the expression complete: thus, *O thou who art the Lord*:—And here we see that the Noun *Lord*, is in the *Nominative* case, coming *after* the verb *art*, and *who* (the Relative Pronoun) is the *Nominative*, before the Verb.

3. The word *case*, is derived from the Latin Noun *casus*, the literal signification of which is *fall*: and as Latin Nouns have six cases, all except the nominative are represented as *falling* or *declining* from the nominative: hence telling the cases, is called declining a Noun; and therefore the word case, as applied to Grammar, means the relation which a Noun bears in a sentence to another Noun, or Verb or Preposition. The cases as before observed, are denoted in Latin by the termination of the Noun. In English one case, namely, the *possessive*, is formed by the addition of an *s* with the apostrophe: as *the Lord's*. In Spanish, the Noun never undergoes any variation to denote case.

4. A Noun or Pronoun, is in the *nominative case*, when it names a person or thing in a state of *being* or *doing* something, at any period; as *Henry is good*; *He wrote*; *The ship will sail*: in which instances, *Henry*, *He* and the *ship*, are each in the *nominative case*. The Noun *Henry* denotes a person in a *state of being*, as *being good*: The Pronoun *He*, denotes a person that has performed something; and the Noun *ship* describes an inanimate object about to do something. Therefore the person or thing that *is* or that *acts*, is in the *nominative case*; and as *being* and *action* are expressed by *Verbs*, the nominative is said to *govern* the Verb, or to be the *subject* or *agent* of the Verb.

The following are some Nouns and Pronouns in the *nominative case*.

*Thomas* is good,  
*He* writes well,  
*The trees* grow,  
*She* said so,

*Tomas* es bueno.  
*El* escribe bien.  
*Los árboles* crecen.  
*Ella* lo dijo.

These Nouns *Thomas*, *trees*, and the Pronouns *He* and *She* are all in the *nominative case*, because they are either in a state of *being*, or *acting*, and in both instances they govern the Verb.

5. A Noun or Pronoun is in the *genitive* or *possessive case*, when it describes any person or thing in possession of any other person or thing; or when it describes any person or thing to which another Noun relates; as *The laws of the country*; *His sword*; *Her husband*; *Maria's fan*; In these examples, *Country*, *His*, *Her*, and *Maria*, are in the *genitive case*, they being the possessors of the persons or things described as being possessed by them, or the persons or things related to.

The following are some Nouns and Pronouns in the genitive or possessive case.

<i>Anthony's speech,</i>	<i>El discurso de Antonio.</i>
<i>The reign of Augustus,</i>	<i>El reinado de Augusto.</i>
<i>His papers,</i>	<i>Sus papeles.</i>
<i>Their goodness,</i>	<i>Su bondad.</i>

6. It has been remarked before, that the possessive case of Nouns in English, is sometimes denoted by an *s*, with the apostrophe, added to the Noun denoting the possessor. In Spanish however a Noun in this case is always preceded by the Preposition *de*. There are sentences also in English, where the sign *'s* is employed as a substitute for the Noun, which it represents; as *He lives at the General's, I come from the Doctor's*; where we see that the *'s* occupies the place of residence or house. In Spanish, however, no such suppression is allowed; instead of which, the order of the construction is reversed; Ex. *Vive en casa del General; Vengo de casa del Doctor*; which literally mean, *He lives at the house of the General; I come from the house of the Doctor*.

7. As it has just been stated that the genitive case in Spanish is always preceded by the Preposition *de*, it is necessary to warn the student that this Preposition sometimes governs the *ablative* case also. It governs the *genitive* case, when the Noun which it precedes, denotes the possessor of any thing, or when the Preposition is dependent on another Noun that precedes it, expressed or understood: Ex.

<i>El palacio del Rey,</i>	The palace of the King, or the King's palace.
<i>Un defensor de la justicia,</i>	A defender of justice.

In the first example, *palacio*, being possessed by the Noun *Rey*, the latter is in the genitive case: and in the second, the Noun *justicia*, is also in the genitive case, being governed by the Preposition *de*, which is dependent on the antecedent Noun *defensor*.

But, if the Noun preceded by the Preposition *de*, should not denote the possessor of any thing, or if the Preposition does not relate to an antecedent Noun, the Noun preceded by the Preposition is in the *ablative* case: Ex.

<i>Vengo de España,</i>	<i>I come from Spain.</i>
<i>Lo saqué de mi cartera,</i>	<i>I drew it out of my pocket-book.</i>

Here the Nouns *España*, and *cartera*, are not dependent on any antecedent Nouns; nor are they the possessors of any thing; they are therefore not in the *genitive*, but in the *ablative* case. (See the *ablative* case, Par. 13.)

8. Those persons or things to which any thing is *given*, *directed*, or *communicated*, are in the *dative* case; as *I gave the book to Horace*, *He wrote me a letter*.

Nouns in this case are preceded either by the Preposition *á* or *para*, to or for. Pronouns in the dative case, are sometimes, but not always, preceded by a Preposition. (See the Declension of Pronouns, Lec. 16, Par. 3.)

9. Observe that a Noun in the dative case, is not the *immediate* object of the Verb (that is, the action of the Verb does not fall immediately upon it); it is the *indirect* object: the thing given, directed, or communicated, is the *immediate* object of the Verb, and is in the *accusative* or *objective* case, as will be noticed presently. Verbs are therefore said to govern *directly* or *indirectly*.

The following are some Nouns and Pronouns in the dative case.

I wrote to the Mayor,	Escribí al Corregidor.
I bought it for John,	Lo compré para Juan.
I carried the letter to him,	Llevele la carta.
She gave them the news,	Ella les dió la noticia.

10. Although Nouns, and Pronouns in the dative case, are preceded by the Prepositions *á* and *para*, it must be observed that these Prepositions do not always govern the dative case. They only govern this case, when the Noun or Pronoun, which they govern, receives the benefit or injury of the action of the Verb, which precedes the Preposition: Ex.

Entregué la carta al hombre,	I delivered the letter to the man.
Lo hice para él,	I did it for him.

In which examples the Noun *hombre*, and the Pronoun *él*, receive the benefit or the injury of the action of the antecedent Verbs. In all other instances these Prepositions govern the *accusative* or *objective* case, as we shall now see.

11. A Noun or Pronoun is in the *accusative* or *objective* case, when it represents the person or thing affected by some action done; or when it denotes the person or thing on which the energy of the action expressed by the Verb, falls; or in other words, it represents the *object* of the Verb: as *Albert saw Henry*, *You cut the paper*. In the first example, *Henry* is the object *seen*; the energy of the Verb *to see*, falls on him. In the second, *paper* is the object of the Verb *to cut*, the energy of the Verb falls upon it, the paper is affected by the action of the Verb *to cut*. All Nouns or Pronouns in this case are the *direct* or *immediate* object of the Verb, as before noticed.

The following are some Nouns and Pronouns in this case.

He loves <i>Mary</i> ,	<i>Ama á Maria.</i>
They fell the <i>tree</i> ,	<i>Derribaron al árbol.</i>
Julia bought it,	<i>Juliana lo compró.</i>
He esteems <i>her</i> ,	<i>El la aprecia.</i>

12. The Prepositions which govern the accusative case, are the following, namely, *á*, *ante*, *contra*, *entre*, *hacia*, *hasta*, *para*, *segun*, *tras* : Ex.

<i>Ella aborrece á Claudio,</i>	<i>She detests Claudius.</i>
<i>Ante el Juez,</i>	<i>Before the Judge.</i>
<i>Dió contra la peña,</i>	<i>He struck against the rock.</i>
<i>Entre los árboles,</i>	<i>Between or among the trees.</i>
<i>Van hacia Valencia,</i>	<i>They go towards Valencia.</i>
<i>Llegaron hasta Paris,</i>	<i>They arrived as far as Paris.</i>
<i>Salió para Madrid,</i>	<i>He set out for Madrid.</i>
<i>Segun la ley,</i>	<i>According to the Law.</i>
<i>No habrá mas tras esto,</i>	<i>There will be no more after this.</i>

The Preposition *por*, also governs the accusative case, when preceded by Verbs that denote *movement* : Ex.

<i>Voy á viajar por España,</i>	<i>I am going to travel through Spain.</i>
<i>Pasó por mi ventana,</i>	<i>He passed by my window.</i>

Here the Verbs *viajar* and *pasó*, denote *movement*, and therefore cause *España* and *ventana*, to be in the accusative case :—But when *por*, is preceded by a Verb that does not denote movement, it governs the *ablative* case : Ex.

<i>He hablado por Vmd.,</i>	<i>I have spoken for you.</i>
<i>Lo hizo por yerro,</i>	<i>He did it through mistake.</i>

The Preposition *sobre*, likewise governs the accusative case, when it denotes *superiority* : Ex.

<i>La caridad es sobre todas las virtudes,</i>	<i>Charity is above all virtues.</i>
--	--------------------------------------

But when it denotes *place*, it governs the *ablative* : Ex.

<i>Está sobre la mesa,</i>	<i>It is upon the table.</i>
----------------------------	------------------------------

(See also observations on the employment of the Preposition *á* in the accusative or objective case, Paragraph 16.)

13. The *ablative* case derives its signification from the Latin word *ablativus*, which means *a taking away* : The Noun or Pronoun in this case, is said to represent a person or thing in the state of having something *separated*, *divided*, or *taken from it*; as *They took it from her*; *He was released from his difficulties*. Here the Pronoun *her*, and the Noun *difficulties*, are in the *ablative* case; each having something

separated or taken from it. Notwithstanding this however, there are many Nouns and Pronouns, which have nothing separated or taken from them, and are nevertheless in the *ablative* case. In fact, this case, besides separation and the like, denotes *instrumentality*, and the *means by which*, or the *manner how*, a thing is done; as *The book was sent by the servant*. Here the servant was *instrumental* in carrying the book: the servant is therefore in the *ablative* case. Again, *He was killed by an arrow*. Here the *arrow* is in the *ablative* case, because it is the Noun denoting the *means* by which the act of *killing* was effected.

14. Besides the Preposition *de*, mentioned in Paragraph 7, and *por* and *sobre*, noticed in Paragraph 12, the following are also employed in the *ablative* case, namely, *con*, *desde*, *en*, *sin*; *Ex*.

Viene *con* Abelardo,  
Vengo á pié *desde* Sevilla,  
Ellos van *en* coche,  
Estoy *sin* dinero,

She comes *with* Abelard.  
I come *from* Seville on foot.  
They go *in* a coach.  
I am *without* money.

The following are some Nouns and Pronouns in the *ablative* case.

He separated the mother *from* the daughter,

He secreted himself *from* the justice,

It is *upon* the table,

Do not come *without* her,

Go *with* him,

He lives *in* St. Petersburg,

Apartó á la madre *de* la hija.

Se ocultó *de* la justicia.

Está *sobre* la mesa.

No venga vmd. *sin* ella.

Vaya vmd. *con* él.

Vive *en* San Petersburgo.

15. The following are a few examples in both Languages, by which the student may exercise himself in ascertaining the different cases of Nouns and Pronouns, as they may occur. In the first three sentences the cases are denoted by their respective initials; while, in the rest, they are left to be pointed out by the learner.

He (n.) extracted it (acc.) from an official document, (ab.) which was addressed to the General (d.) of the army. (g.)

No one (n.) can accuse those men (acc.) of having been faithless.

There cannot exist any well regulated society, (n.) without an impartial administration (ab.) of justice. (g.)

El (n.) lo (acc.) sacó de un documento (ab.) oficial, que se dirigió al General (d.) del ejército (g.)

Nadie (n.) podrá acusar á aquellos hombres (acc.) de haber sido infieles.

No puede existir sociedad (n.) bien ordenada, sin una imparcial administración (ab.) de justicia. (g.)



(It is necessary to observe that Verbs do not always govern the same case in both Languages, and also that the nominative is frequently suppressed in Spanish, where it is not in English.)

I demanded of the man what he had taken from me.

The General immediately agreed to the armistice, in order to avoid the incalculable evils, which the inhabitants of that town would suffer.

In whatever manner a body acts upon us, we are only aware of its action, by the change which it produces on our frame.

It is not possible to explain minutely all the physical causes of the memory.

Pedí al hombre lo que me había quitado.

Convino desde luego el General en el armisticio, para evitar los incalculables males que debían sufrir los habitantes de aquella ciudad.

De cualquiera manera que un cuerpo obre sobre nosotros, no conocemos esta operación, sino por la mutación que produce en nuestra máquina.

No es posible explicar por menor, todas las causas físicas de la memoria.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE PREPOSITION *á*, IN THE ACCUSATIVE OR OBJECTIVE CASE.

16. The Grammar of the Spanish Academy has given it as a rule, that active transitive Verbs govern a Noun or Pronoun in the accusative case, with the Preposition *á*, if it represent a person; and without the Preposition, if the regimen does not represent a person; and the greater part of writers of Spanish Grammars have copied this rule: but the universal application of it would very frequently cause sentences to be obscure in their signification. The adoption of the Preposition *á* in the accusative case, should not be confined to personal or personified Nouns, and it is sometimes dispensed with even before these. Its use is to point out the immediate object of the Verb, when it is not sufficiently denoted without the assistance of the Preposition; a circumstance that very often occurs in Spanish, where there is so great a variety of syntactical inversion, as will be observed by the following example, which may be expressed in six different ways, without altering its sense in the least; Ex.

Cain mató á Abel,  
Cain á Abel mató,  
A' Abel mató Cain,  
A' Abel Cain mató,  
Mató Cain á Abel,  
Mató á Abel Cain,

} Cain killed Abel.

It is evident in this example, that we could not discover *Abel* to be the object of the Verb, were it not for the Preposition *á*. So far the rule of the Academy stands good, as regards the necessity of employing this Preposition before personal Nouns in the accusative case : but the following example will show the necessity of employing it in some instances, before Nouns in the accusative case, that do *not* represent personal beings ; Ex.

El árbol abrigó á la casa.

The tree sheltered the house.

Here *casa*, is the object of the Verb *abrigó*, which the Preposition *á* points out to be such. Let us invert the syntactical order of the phrase, thus, *Á la casa abrigó el árbol*, and *casa*, being governed by the Preposition *á*, still appears the object of the Verb. We will now dispense with the Preposition *á*, and see how the sentence stands ; for instance, *La casa abrigó el árbol* ; and here we see that if it have any meaning at all, it is diametrically opposite to that of the sentence in its original form.

Wherefore it appears, that the Preposition *á* should not be dispensed with before Nouns in the accusative case, whether they be personal or not, when both the nominative and accusative cases are of the same number, as in the foregoing example ; but it is not absolutely required when they differ in *number* as then the Verb itself will be sufficient to point out the nominative, by its agreement with it. In cases where the nominative and accusative Nouns are of different *persons*, we may likewise dispense with the Preposition.

There are some instances in which a sentence may contain two Nouns of the same number, one of which being governed in English by a Verb, becomes the *direct* object, and consequently in the *accusative* case : the other being governed by the Preposition *to*, becomes the *indirect* object, and therefore in the *dative* case ; as, *We sent the captain to the merchant* ; where it is seen that the *captain* is the *immediate* object of the Verb *sent*, and therefore in the accusative case ; and the *merchant* being the person to whom the captain was sent, is in the *dative* case. Now, as it frequently happens that the dative as well as the accusative cases are governed in Spanish by the Preposition *á* ; if in translating the above sentence into Spanish, we employ the Preposition in both cases, it would produce ambiguity, and we should not know whether the person sent was the captain or the merchant : to avoid which ambiguity, we should dispense with the Preposition in the *accusative* case, and employ it only in the *dative*, in in-

stances of this nature ; Ex. *Enviamos el capitan al mercader*, and not *enviamos al capitan al mercader*.

There seems, however, to be a tendency to the general adoption of the Preposition *á*, before personal Nouns in the accusative case, although not to the entire exclusion of it, before Nouns that do not refer to persons. Upon the whole, therefore, it will be advisable to adopt it in the accusative case, except in such instances where the object of the Verb is sufficiently conspicuous without the use of it ; and to employ it where ambiguity might be the result of its exclusion : this method would be the easiest to practise, and would harmonize with the idiom of the Spanish Language.

### DECLENSION OF NOUNS WITH THE ARTICLE.

#### Masculine Nouns referring to persons.

##### *Singular.*

NOM. El hombre,	The man.
GEN. del hombre,	of the man.
DAT. á or para el hombre,	to or for the man.
ACC. el or al hombre,	the man.
ABL. por, de, en, sin, con, sobre, el hombre,	by, from, in, without, with, upon, the man.

##### *Plural.*

NOM. Los hombres,	The men.
GEN. de los hombres,	of the men.
DAT. á or para los hombres,	to or for the men.
ACC. los or á los hombres,	the men.
ABL. por &c. los hombres,	by &c. the men.

#### Feminine Nouns referring to persons.

##### *Singular.*

NOM. La muger,	The woman,
GEN. de la muger,	of the woman.
DAT. á or para la muger,	to or for the woman.
ACC. la or á la muger,	the woman.
ABL. por &c. la muger,	by &c. the woman.

##### *Plural.*

NOM. Las mugeres,	The women.
GEN. de las mugeres,	of the women.
DAT. á or para las mugeres,	to or for the women.
ACC. las or á las mugeres,	the women.
ABL. por &c. las mugeres,	by &c. the women.

### Masculine Nouns referring to things.

#### *Singular.*

El libro,  
 el libro,  
 or para el libro,  
 or al libro,  
 or &c. el libro,

The book.  
 of the book.  
 to or for the book.  
 the book.  
 by &c. the book.

#### *Plural.*

Los libros,  
 los libros,  
 or para los libros,  
 or á los libros,  
 or &c. los libros,

The books.  
 of the books.  
 to or for the books.  
 the books.  
 by &c. the books.

### Feminine Nouns referring to things.

#### *Singular.*

La carta,  
 la carta,  
 or para la carta,  
 or á la carta,  
 or, &c. la carta,

The letter.  
 of the letter.  
 to or for the letter.  
 the letter.  
 by &c. the letter.

#### *Plural.*

Las cartas,  
 las cartas,  
 or para las cartas,  
 or á las cartas,  
 or &c. las cartas,

The letters.  
 of the letters.  
 to or for the letters.  
 the letters.  
 by &c. the letters.

## LECTURE X.

### ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF NOUNS.

WHEN in English two Nouns follow each other, the first as it were as an Adjective to the second, specifying its purpose, occupation, or the like, their order is reversed translation, and the second Noun is placed in the genitive preceded by the preposition *de* ; Ex.

Door-lock,  
 Tea-spoon,  
 Mahogany table,  
 Gold watches,

Cerradura de puerta.  
 Cuchar de té.  
 Mesa de caoba.  
 Reloges de oro.

2. The same inversion of order is likewise observed, in translating the English possessive case with *s*, and the apostrophe, (whether the Noun possessed be expressed or not, see Lec. 9, Par. 6,) and the same also is to be observed when several possessive cases of this nature follow each other in English, translating all the Nouns in a retrograding order; Ex.

The sun's rays,  
Go to the bookseller's,  
John's father's horse,  
My uncle's wife's sister,

Los rayos del sol.  
Ve á casa del librero.  
El caballo del padre de Juan.  
La hermana de la esposa de mi tio.

#### EXERCISE ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF NOUNS.

I bought a watch chain. A compré	The bed curtains were of India cama cortina eran
muslin. The front of the edifice was adorned with marble muselina. frontera edificio estaba adornada de mármol	
columns: in the interior were seen several bronze statues. I columna se veían varias bronce estatua.	
prefer buck skin gloves. Show me the straw hats, and prefiero ante cuero guante. [muestrame vmd.] paja sombrero	
the silk ribbons. My brother's house is situated near to the seda cinta. mi hermano está situada cerca de	
Governor's garden. He is at the shoemaker's. I saw (2) Gobernador A está en zapatero. Yo vi	
them (1) at the tailor's. I speak of the Duke's brother's conduct. los sastre. A hablo Duque conducta.	
Anacreon flourished after Homer's death, and after the defeat floreció [después de] Homero muerte derrota	
of Croesus the King of Lydia. Darius's son Xerxes, ascended the Creso Rey Lidia. Dario hijo Serxes ascendió al	
throne of Persia after his father's death. trono su	

### LECTURE XI.

#### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

1. For the definition of Adjectives, the student is referred to Lec. 4, Par. 6, after reperusing which, he will attend to the

#### AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE.

2. Adjectives and Participles used as Adjectives, agree in Spanish, in *number* and *gender*, with the Nouns to which they

refer. Adjectives in English never vary their form on account of gender or number : for instance, *A tall man, A tall woman, Tall men, Tall women*. Where we see that the Adjective *tall*, remains in its unchanged original form ; but in Spanish it would have to appear in *four* different forms in the translation of the foregoing Examples ; as,

Un hombre <i>alto</i> ,	A tall man.
Una muger <i>alta</i> ,	A tall woman.
Hombres <i>altos</i> ,	Tall men.
Mugeres <i>altas</i> ,	Tall women.

3. The object now is to point out to the student, in what manner Adjectives are made to agree with Nouns : previously, however, to entering on which, it is necessary to premise, that the whole of the rules on the treatment of Adjectives, apply equally to Participles adjectively used. See the definition of Participles, and all that is connected with them, in Lec. 22, Par. 11 to 30.

#### AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE IN NUMBER.

4. When an Adjective refers to two or more Nouns in the singular number, and follows them, it must be put in the plural number, but if it precede the Nouns, it is used in the singular. (Observe that the plural termination of Adjectives is formed precisely the same as the plural of Nouns ; ) Ex.

Su aplauso y elogio <i>merecidos</i> ,	} His merited applause and praise.
Su <i>merecido</i> aplauso y elogio,	

Nevertheless should there be a Verb employed with the Adjective that precedes the Nouns, then the Adjective is put in the same number as the Verb ; Ex.

<i>Son hermosos</i> su palacio y jardin,	} His palace and garden are beautiful.
<i>Es hermoso</i> su palacio y su jardin,	

5. When two or more Adjectives refer to *one* Noun in the singular number, each Adjective must be in the singular ; Ex.

Un ministro sabio y prudente,	A wise and prudent minister.
Un proyecto grande, provechoso,	A great, profitable, and desirable
y recomendable,	project.
La conciencia es un juez prudente y fiel,	Conscience is a prudent and faithful monitor.

#### AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE IN GENDER.

6. Adjectives agree in gender with the Nouns to which they refer, as will be seen by the following rules ; previously however, to the pupil's becoming acquainted with them, it is

necessary that he should know how to distinguish the gender of Adjectives. This will first be explained to him.

7. Adjectives that terminate in *an*, *on*, or *o*, are of the *masculine* gender: The feminine is formed by adding *a* to those ending in *an* or *on*; and by changing the final *o* into *a*, of those ending in *o*: All Adjectives terminating in any other letter, are common to both genders: Ex.

El muchacho <i>haragan</i> ,	The lazy boy.
La muchacha <i>haragana</i> ,	The lazy girl.
El hombre <i>jugueton</i> ,	The playful man.
La muger <i>juguetona</i> ,	The playful woman.
El guerrero <i>famoso</i> ,	The famous warrior.
La accion <i>famosa</i> ,	The famous action.
El padre <i>feliz</i> ,	The happy father.
La hija <i>feliz</i> ,	The happy daughter.
El muchacho <i>amable</i> ,	The amiable boy.
La muchacha <i>amable</i> ,	The amiable girl.

8. To Adjectives derived from the names of kingdoms, countries, &c., an *a* is generally added to form their feminine termination: Ex.

Inglés, <i>m</i> .	Inglesa, <i>f</i> .	English.
Español, <i>m</i> .	Española, <i>f</i> .	Spanish.

*Note.*—When this kind of Adjectives is employed in English with reference to articles of commerce, the productions of a country, and such like, the Noun expressive of the name of the country that produces those articles, or in which they were manufactured, is generally used in Spanish instead of the Adjective: Ex.

English cloth, <i>Paño de Inglaterra</i> ,	which mean literally, Cloth of England.
Spanish wine, <i>Vino de España</i> ,	Wine of Spain.
French silk, <i>Seda de Francia</i> ,	Silk of France.

The same construction is likewise generally observed, in Spanish, in referring to persons of whom we rather intend to describe the country from which they come, or in whose government they are employed, than the place of their nativity: Ex.

The Austrian Ambassador,	El Embajador de Austria.
The Spanish Consul,	El Cónsul de España.

This however must not be taken as an absolute rule, for such sentences may also be translated as follows.

Paño Inglés.
El Cónsul Español, &c.

9. We have now to consider the *Agreement* of Adjectives in *gender* with the Nouns to which they refer:—And first;

When *one* Adjective refers to two or more Nouns in the *singular* number and of *different* genders, it is used in the masculine gender if it *follow* the Nouns; but agrees in gender with the first Noun if it *precede* the Nouns: Ex.

El ejército y la armada derrotados,	The army and navy defeated.
La armada y el ejército derrotados,	The navy and army defeated.
He leído su hermoso episodio y novela,	I have read his beautiful episode and novel.
He leído su hermosa novela y episodio,	I have read his beautiful novel and episode.

13. When *one* Adjective refers to two or more Nouns in the *plural* number, it should agree in gender with the *nearest* Noun to it: Ex.

Las hermosas montañas y valles,	The beautiful mountains and valleys.
Los hermosos valles y montañas,	The beautiful valleys and mountains.
Los castillos y baterías bombardeadas,	The bombarded castles and batteries.
Las baterías y castillos bombardeados,	The bombarded batteries and castles.

11. We should endeavour to avoid qualifying two Nouns, that differ both in gender and number, with an Adjective that admits of both the masculine and feminine termination:— for instance, though we may see examples of the following nature,

Los vinos y la fruta eran exquisitos,	The wines and fruit were exquisite.
Las frutas y el vino eran exquisitos,	The fruits and wine were exquisite.

Yet, there is something in them that offends the ear. In such cases, it would be much better to employ an Adjective of the common gender; as

Los vinos y la fruta eran excelentes,	The wines and fruit were excellent.
Las frutas y el vino eran excelentes,	The fruits and wine were excellent.

Or, either to employ a corresponding Adjective for each Noun: Ex.

Los vinos eran exquisitos y la fruta deliciosa,	The wines were exquisite and the fruit delicious.
Las frutas eran deliciosas y el vino exquisito,	The fruits were delicious and the wine exquisite.

12. An Adjective referring to the *title* of an individual, agrees in gender with the person, to whom the title belongs: Ex.

Su Alteza está malo,	His Highness is ill.
Son muy bondadosos sus señorías,	Their Lordships are very kind.



Here we see that the Adjectives *malo* and *bondadoso* do not agree with the Nouns *Alteza* and *Señorías*, which are of the *feminine* gender; but they agree with the persons to whom these titles are given, who are *males*; were they *females*, the Adjective would be required in the *feminine* gender: Ex.

Su Alteza está mala,	Her Highness is ill.
Son muy bondadosas sus Señorías,	Their Ladyships are very kind.

13. When the Adjectives *postrero*, *bueno* and *malo* precede a Noun masculine, in the singular number, they drop the final *o*: Ex.

Un buen hombre,	A good man.
Un mal hombre,	A bad man.
El postrer día,	The last day.

*Note.*—See also the numerical Adjectives *uno*, *primero*, *tercero*, and *ciento*, Lec. 14, Par. 3 to 6.

14. *Santo*, Saint, when employed in the singular number, before proper names of persons and places, drops the last syllable: Ex.

San Pablo, San Juan,	St. Paul, St. John.
San Petersburgo,	St. Petersburg.

With the names *Domingo* and *Tomás*, Dominic and Thomas, the Adjective *santo* may be used either with, or without the final syllable.

15. *Grande*, great or large, used before Nouns in the singular number, beginning with a consonant, sometimes drops the final syllable, when in referring to Nouns it is not intended to convey an idea of *size* or *quantity*, so much as one of *greatness* or *excellence*; but it frequently retains the final syllable, when it is wished to convey an idea of *size* and the like; and also when the substantive that follows it begins with a vowel or *h*: Ex.

Un gran caballo,	A noble horse.
Una gran casa,	A magnificent house.
Un grande elogio,	A great praise.
Grande hazaña,	A great deed.

This rule, however, is not a *general* one.

#### EXERCISE ON THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN NUMBER AND GENDER.

Disinterestedness and honor deserve to be praised.	Her virtue and her
desinterés — merecen ser alabado.	virtud

beauty are universally admired.	Modesty, affability and kindness
hermosura son universalmente admirado.	modestia, afabilidad bondad

are estimable. [Let us reflect] on the sad consequences that are  
son ———. reflexionemos en triste consecuencia que son  
inseparable from protracted (2) wars (1). His fears were vain. The  
dilatado guerra temor fueron vano.

streets and squares of the city are spacious, and the public (2)  
calle, plaza ciudad espacioso, público

buildings (1) magnificent. It is a convincing (2) and palpable (3)  
edificio magnífico. ^ es convincente

proof (1). He is a brave (2) and faithful (3) man (1). She is very  
prueba es bizarro fiel ^ muy

lazy. They live in a fine house [on the banks] of a rich (2)  
holgazan. ^ viven en bella á orillas caudaloso

river, (1) near a small village. They possess considerable moral (2)  
rio [cerca de] pequeño aldea. ^ poseen mucho

strength (1) and heroic virtue; ardent (2) imaginations (1) and noble (2)  
fuerza heróica ardiente ———

hearts (1). It is a happy (2) idea (1). He is a happy (2) man (1). A  
corazon ^ feliz ——— ^

sagacious (2) boy (1). A sagacious girl. A French (2) frigate (1) and  
sagaz muchacho fragata

a Spanish (2) schooner (1) have arrived from the Danish (2) colonies (1).  
goleta han llegado Dinamarqués colonia.

That is a Spanish (2) cloak (1). Those ladies are Portuguese. Spanish  
aquella capa aquellas señora son Portugueses.

wool is considered the best. I have purchased some French goods. The  
lana se considera mejor. ^ he comprado género.

Russian Plenipotentiary, and the English Ambassador, were seen with  
Plenipotenciario, se vieron con

the French Emissary. Honor and virtue are solid. Fame and valour are  
Emissario. son sólido. fama valor

celebrated. He has a beautiful house and garden. His usual  
celebrado. ^ tiene jardin. su acostumbrado

haughtiness and pride. Such discussions and reasonings are frivolous.  
altivez, orgullo. tal ——— razonamiento son frívolo.

I do not give ear to tales and stories so ill founded. His Holiness  
yo ^ no presto oído cuento historia tan mal fundado. su Santidad

and their Worshipers were escorted to their palaces. Their Lordships were  
sus Dignidad fueron escoltado palacio. Señoría

presented at the time that her Majesty the Queen was attended by  
presentado tiempo que su Majestad Reina estaba acompañada de

their Ladyships the Marchionesses of ——. The conscience of a good man  
Señoría Marquesa conciencia bueno

is ever free, but [that of a bad man] [is a prey to continual  
esta siempre libre, mas la del malo esta en un continuo

remorse]. He preached from the epistles of St. Paul. They came  
remordimiento. ^ predicaba epístola ^ vinieron

lately from the islands of St. Dominic and St. Thomas. A great  
 últimamente isla  
 project ! That is a great man. [I have no] great appetite. A great  
 proyecto ese es no tengo apetito.  
 victory.  
 victoria.

## LECTURE XII.

### SITUATION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

1. Adjectives in Spanish in most instances *generally follow* the Nouns to which they refer: Ex.

El objeto principal,	The principal object.
El ejército Inglés,	The English army.
Una vida ociosa,	An idle life.
Ideas despreocupadas,	Unprejudiced ideas.

2. To the foregoing rule, however, the following instances are exceptions, as in them, the Adjective *usually precedes* the Noun to which it has reference.

1st. Numerical Adjectives: Ex.

Veinte hombres,	Twenty men.
La primera cosa,	The first thing.

In referring to royalty and other dignities, however, the numerical Adjective *follows* the noun: Ex.

Guillermo Cuarto,	William the Fourth.
Gregorio Primero,	Gregory the First.

2d. The Adjectives *todo, mucho, poco, cierto*, All, much, few, certain, likewise *precedes* the noun: Ex.

Todo el mundo,	All the world.
Mucho dinero,	Much money.
Pocos hombres,	Few men.
Ciertos individuos,	Certain individuals.

*Cierto*, nevertheless, in the sense of *sure*, generally follows the Noun: Ex.

Es cosa cierta,	It is a certain thing.
Son noticias ciertas,	They are certain news.

3d. Adjectives that denote the natural or inherent properties of Nouns, generally precede them : Ex.

Los hermosos colores del iris,  
El duro hierro,

The beautiful colours of the rainbow.  
The hard iron.

4th. Adjectives used as epithets, precede the Noun : Ex.

El soberbio Lucifer,  
El paciente Job,

The proud Lucifer.  
The patient Job.

5th. Adjectives that terminate in *ísimo*, generally precede the Noun : Ex.

Son hermosísimas obras,  
¡ Que bellísimo día !

They are most beautiful works.  
What a very fine day !

3. The foregoing rules on the situation of Adjectives, are not to be considered as *positive* rules ; the situation of the Adjective depends much on taste ; as writers for the sake of energy, harmony and variety, situate the Adjective variously with respect to the Noun which it qualifies. As a general rule, it might be said that Adjectives in Spanish commonly *follow* the noun, except when for particular emphasis or elegance they are placed before it : For instance in the following example, *Cadalso*, in describing the local situation of Spain, says, *Esta feliz situación la hizo objeto de la codicia de los Fenicios y otros pueblos*, This happy situation rendered her an object of avarice to the Phœnicians and other nations : In which sentence, without doubt, he placed the Adjective *feliz* before the Noun *situación*, because it was his principal intention to express the *superiority* of the local situation of Spain. Again, *Luis de Garcian*, in his apostrophe to Death, says, “ ¡ O muerte, muerte ! O IMPLACABLE enemiga del género humano ! &c. Oh death, death ! Oh implacable enemy to mankind ! &c. : In which he placed the Adjective *implacable*, before the Noun *muerte*, because it was his principal object to give energy to the meaning of the Adjective :— had he said *enemigo implacable*, the sentence would have lost much of its force. Thus *Fejoo* also, in describing an ambitious man, says, “ *Tiene el alma y el cuerpo en continuo movimiento*,” &c. His soul and body are in a continual movement, &c. In which sentence, it was his principal intention to display the circumstance of the man’s perpetual restlessness.

In these examples, it is seen, that although the rules relative to the situation of the Adjective with regard to the Noun, may appear at first sight arbitrary, they are nevertheless

founded on reason; and that the natural construction of the language may be altered, not only with regard to Adjectives and Nouns, but as respects other parts of speech, in order to add elegance and energy to a sentence.

### EXERCISE ON THE SITUATION OF ADJECTIVES.

The sight of a fine landscape is an inexhaustible source of delightful  
vista bello paisaje es inagotable manantial delicioso  
sensations. [There are] seven days in a week and fifty-two weeks in a  
hay dia semana

year. The regiment was composed of twelve companies of fifty men  
año. regimiento se componia compañía

each. They captured all the ships and sunk all the  
[cada una.] ^ apresaron navio [hecharon á pique]

gun boats. He made many friends, but contracted many debts.  
cañonera lancha. ^ hizo amigo, pero contrajo deuda.

Many are the disappointments in the life of man. Few men are happy.  
son contratiempo vida

His virtues are few. A certain friend of mine gave (2) me (1) certain  
sus amigo ^ mio dio —

instructions respecting a certain person. It is a certain thing. The  
— [acerca de] persona. ^ es cosa

fierce lion devoured the tame sheep. On that step of hard  
fiero leon [devoró á] manso oveja. sobre aquel escalon duro

marble, she rested her weary limbs. The cold snow withered the  
mármol ^ reposó sus fatigado miembro. frio nieve, f. marchitó

delicate flowers. My dear father, where are my dear sisters? The  
delicado flor, f. querido donde estan mis hermana

wise Solomon. The worthy Titus. The ambitious Alexander. What  
sabio — benemérito Tito. ambicioso Alejandro.

[a very fine] idea! Various spots in North America discover  
bellísimo — vario punto de septentrional descubren

evident signs of remote epochs, and prove the existence of a great  
evidente indicio remoto época, manifiestan ecsistencia

and powerful people, whose history [is doubtless lost] for ever.  
poderoso poblacion, cuya historia sin duda se perdió para siempre.

Immense heights, unfrequented by the modern Indians, covered with  
Inmenso elevacion no frecuentado por moderno Indio, cubierto de

human bones, unknown arms, remains of walled cities, and numerous  
humano hueso, desconocido arma, resto circundado ciudad numerosas

inscriptions in unknown languages; all announce the indisputable existence  
— desconocido idioma, m. anuncia — ecsistencia

of a people different to those which European navigators found in  
pueblo diferente aquellos que Europeo navegante encontraron

those countries.  
pais.

## LECTURE XIII.

## ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

1. As Adjectives express some quality or property of the Noun, this quality or property, when compared to that of other Nouns, may be *equal*, *superior*, or *inferior* to it: for instance, *Your cloth is fine, mine is finer, but his is the finest of the three*. In this example are distinguished three different degrees in the quality of the cloth: these are by Grammarians called *degrees of comparison*, and are generally distinguished by the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

2. The *positive* expresses a quality without any particular reference or comparison, as in the foregoing example, *Your cloth is fine*; but when we say *mine is finer*, there is a comparison drawn between the two; and in the conclusion of the sentence, *his is the finest of the three*, the quality of the cloth is placed in the highest degree of fineness.

3. In the *comparative*, there are three states to be observed, namely, that of *equality*, that of *superiority*, and that of *inferiority*; for in comparing objects together, we consider them to be *equal*, *superior*, or *inferior* to each other; these different states are distinguished by the terms *comparative of equality*, *comparative of superiority*, and *comparative of inferiority*.

4. The *superlative* expresses the quality in the *highest* or *lowest* degree: it is of two kinds, the one *relative*, the other *absolute*. The superlative *relative* expresses the quality of a thing with reference to the quality of some other object; as, *This is the largest house of the three, That is the worst house of them all*. And here we see that the superlative *largest*, alludes to the *largest* house in relation to the three houses mentioned; and the superlative *worst* refers to the *worst* house, as regards the whole of them. But the superlative *absolute* expresses the quality of an object without reference to, or comparison with any other object in question; as, *He is a very tall man, She is a very short woman*.

x

## HOW TO FORM THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

5. The comparative of *equality* is formed in Spanish by placing the word *tan* (so or as) before, and *como* (as) after

the Adjective. English comparatives of equality are formed by placing the word *as* before and after the Adjective, and are translated by this rule ; Ex.

El es *tan* rico *como* su hermano,  
Soy *tan* alto *como* él,

He is *as* rich *as* his brother.  
I am *as* tall *as* he.

In a negative sense *so as* are employed in English, and no other alteration is required in Spanish, but the placing of the negative particle before the Verb ; Ex.'

He is *not so* rich *as* his brother,

El *no es tan* rico *como* su hermano.

6. The comparative of *superiority* is formed in Spanish by placing the word *mas* (more) before the Adjective, and *que* (than) after it. English comparatives of superiority either end in *er*, or are preceded by *more*, and followed by *than*, and are translated by this rule ; Ex.

El es *mas* rico *que* su hermano,  
Estos terrenos son *mas* estensos  
*que* aquellos,

He is *richer than* his brother.  
These grounds are *more* extensive  
*than* those.

In a negative sense the addition of the negative particle only is required in both languages, as is also the case in all the following comparisons ; Ex.

He is *not richer than* his brother,

El *no es mas* rico *que* su hermano.

7. When in comparing the dimensions of two objects, the difference thereof is indicated in English by of the preposition *by*, the sentence takes a different turn in Spanish ; Ex.

This hall is longer than that *by*  
six feet,

Esta sala es seis pies *mas* larga *que*  
aquella.

Which means literally, *This hall is six feet longer than that.*

8. The comparative of *inferiority* is formed in Spanish by placing the word *ménos* (less) before the Adjective, and *que* (than) after it. English comparatives of inferiority are preceded by *less*, and followed by *than*, and are translated by this rule ; Ex.

Este muchacho es *ménos* prudente *que* aquel,

This boy is *less* prudent *than* that.

Aquella casa es *ménos* elegante *que* la de vmd.

That house is *less* elegant than yours.

#### HOW TO FORM THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

9. The superlative *relative* is formed in Spanish by prefixing the Definite Article to the Adjective in the comparative

degree. English superlatives relative ending in *st*, or preceded by *most*, are translated by this rule ; Ex.

Era la mas hermosa muger que habia en la concurrencia,	She was the <i>handsomest</i> woman in the assembly.
Es la mas bella de todas,	She is the most beautiful of all.

10. The superlative *absolute*, is formed by prefixing the word *muy* (very or most) to the Adjective in the positive degree; or by adding *ísimo* to the Adjective in the positive degree, ending in a consonant: those which end in a vowel drop the vowel before they admit the *ísimo*. English superlatives absolute are preceded by *very* or *most*, and are translated by this rule : Ex.,

Es muy hermosa muger,	She is a <i>very</i> beautiful, or a <i>most</i> beautiful woman.
Es obra utilísima,	It is a <i>very</i> useful, or a <i>most</i> useful work.
Es bellísima idea,	It is a <i>very</i> fine, or a <i>most</i> beautiful idea.

11. Some Spanish Adjectives, in order to preserve their primitive sound, undergo a slight alteration in their orthography before they admit the termination *ísimo*; thus Adjectives ending in

ble, change these letters into bil, as from amable, amabilísimo.		
co,	qu,	chico, chiquísimo.
go,	gu,	amargo, amarguísimo.
z,	c,	feliz, felicísimo.

# LIST OF IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES IN SPANISH.

## POSITIVES. COMPARATIVES. SUPERLATIVES.

Bueno,	mejor,	óptimo,	Good,	better,	best.
Malo,	peor,	peísimo,	Bad,	worse,	worst.
Grande,	mayor,	máximo,	{	Great,	greater, greatest, or
				large,	larger, largest.
Pequeño,	menor,	mínimo,	{	Small,	smaller, smallest, or
				little,	less, least.
Bajo,	inferior,	ínfimo,	Low,	lower,	lowest.
Alto,	superior,	supremo,	High,	higher,	highest.

Of this list, the positives and comparatives may be also formed into superlatives; the positives, by prefixing the Adverb *muy* to them, or by the addition of the termination *ísimo*, according to the directions already given (observing, how-



ever, that *bueno* has *bonísimo* for its superlative); and the comparatives by the prefixing of the definite Article; Ex.

Muy bueno or bonísimo,	Very good.
Muy malo or malísimo,	Very bad.
El mejor, el peor,	The best, the worst.

The positives in the foregoing list may likewise be formed into comparatives by prefixing the Adverb *mas* to them; Ex.

Mas bueno,	mas malo,	Better, worse.
Mas grande,	mas pequeño,	Larger or greater, smaller or littler.

12. Before concluding this Lecture on the degrees of comparison, it must not be omitted to notice, that comparison takes place with relation to *Nouns*, *Verbs*, and *Adverbs*, as well as with *Adjectives*; and this being a point that should not be slightly passed over, the comparison in relation to each of the aforesaid parts of speech, will be treated on separately.

13. The comparative of *equality* in relation to *Nouns*, is formed in Spanish by placing *tanto* (as much) before, and *como* (as) after the Noun; Ex.

Posee <i>tanto</i> talento <i>como</i> su hermano,	He possesses <i>as much</i> talent <i>as</i> his brother.
--	---

14. In relation to *Verbs*, it is formed by placing *tanto cuanto*, or *tanto como* (as much as) after the Verb; Ex.

Le he pagado <i>tanto cuanto</i> or <i>tanto como</i> le debía,	I have paid him <i>as much as</i> I owed him.
---	---

15. In relation to *Adverbs*, it is formed by placing *tan* (as) before, and *como* (as) after the Adverb; Ex.

Escribe <i>tan bien como</i> habla,	He writes <i>as well as</i> he speaks.
-------------------------------------	--

16. *So much* and *so many*, *as much* and *as many*, are each translated *tanto*, which must agree in gender and number, with the Noun to which it is prefixed; Ex.

I do not require <i>so much</i> money, nor <i>so many</i> jewels to be happy,	No necesito <i>tanto</i> dinero, ni <i>tantas</i> alhajas, para ser feliz.
He has <i>as much</i> ink, and <i>as many</i> pens as he requires,	Tiene <i>tanta</i> tinta, y <i>tantas</i> plumas como necesita.

17. *So as*, used in English with an infinitive of a Verb, require *tan que* in the translation; and *such as*, *tal que*, and the infinitive is generally rendered by a Verb in the same tense as that in which the preceding Verb is placed; Ex.

The night was <i>so dark as to prevent</i> our going out,	La noche estuvo <i>tan oscura que</i> no nos permitió el salir.
His conduct was <i>such as to excite</i> a great tumult,	<i>Tal</i> fué su conducta, <i>que</i> excitó un grande alboroto.

18. Comparatives of *superiority* with relation to *Nouns* and *Adverbs* are formed by placing *mas* (more) before, and *que* (than) after them ; Ex.

Posee <i>mas</i> talento <i>que</i> su hermano,	He has <i>more</i> talent <i>than</i> his brother.
Escribe <i>mas</i> elegantemente <i>que</i> su predecesor,	He writes <i>more</i> elegantly <i>than</i> his predecessor.

19. In relation to *Verbs*, they are formed by placing *mas* *que* (more than) after them ; Ex.

Escribe <i>mas</i> <i>que</i> su predecesor,	He writes <i>more than</i> his predecessor.
--	---

20. *The more* being repeated in a sentence in English, the latter expression being consequent on the former, should be translated, the first by *cuanto mas*, the second by *tanto mas* ; Ex.

<i>The more</i> you study, <i>the more</i> you will learn,	<i>Cuanto mas</i> estudie vmd. <i>tanto mas</i> sabrá.
<i>The more</i> affable you are, <i>the more</i> you will be esteemed,	<i>Cuanto mas</i> afable sea vmd. <i>tanto mas</i> será estimado.

21. Comparatives of *inferiority*, in relation to *Nouns* and *Adverbs*, are formed by placing *menos* (less) before, and *que* (than) after them ; Ex.

Posee <i>ménos</i> talento <i>que</i> su hermano,	He has <i>less</i> talent <i>than</i> his brother.
Escribe <i>ménos</i> elegantemente <i>que</i> su predecesor,	He writes <i>less</i> elegantly <i>than</i> his predecessor.

22. In relation to *Verbs*, they are formed by placing *ménos* *que* (less than) after them ; Ex.

Aprende <i>ménos</i> <i>que</i> su hermano,	He learns <i>less than</i> his brother.
---	---

23. *Than*, after a comparative (either of superiority or inferiority) coming before *what*, expressed or understood, is generally translated *de* in the affirmative, and *que* in the negative sense ; Ex.

More <i>than what</i> he has,	<i>Mas de</i> lo que él tiene.
Less <i>than what</i> I thought,	<i>Ménos de</i> lo que creía.
No more <i>than what</i> I said,	<i>No mas que</i> lo que dije.
Nothing less <i>than</i> he deserved,	<i>Nada ménos que</i> lo que merecía.

24. *Than*, after comparatives coming before numeral Adjectives, is translated *de* ; Ex.

I have <i>more than one</i> hundred,	<i>Tengo mas de</i> ciento.
I was <i>less than an</i> hour,	<i>Estuve ménos de</i> una hora.

25. *The less, the less; the more, the less, and the less, the more*; being used in different parts of a sentence, are translated *cuanto ménos, tanto ménos; quanto mas, tanto menos*; and *cuanto ménos, tanto mas*; Ex.

*The less* you read, *the less* you will know, *Cuanto ménos* lea, *tanto ménos* sabré ymd.

*The more* he reads, *the less* he learns, *Cuanto mas* lee, *tanto ménos* aprende.

*The less* you spend, *the more* you will save, *Cuanto ménos* gastare ymd., *tanto mas* ahorrará.

## EXERCISE ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Some consider Virgil as great a poet as Homer. Those  
Algunos consideran Virgilio poeta Homero. aquellos  
ideas are (2) not (1) less sublime than these. His progress was as  
son estas. su progreso era.

slow as certain. My books are as good as his. Nature  
lento mis son [los suyos.] naturaleza

is more admirable than art. The Republic of Athens was more  
es más admirable que arte. República Atenas era

illustrious than that of Lacedemon. The second Punic war lasted  
ilustre Lacedemonia. Púnica guerra duró

six years less than the first. This is higher than that. The  
es seis años menos que la primera. esto es alto aquello.

style of Bossuet is less harmonious than that of Fenelon. He is (2)  
estilo Bossuet es menos armonioso que el Fenelon. él es (2)

not (1) so obliging as his brother. Xerxes was more ambitious  
bondadoso su Seres fue más ambicioso

than prudent. The general appearance of the Island of Jamaica,  
prudente. aspecto isla

presents such a magnificent prospect of the beauties of nature,  
presenta magnífico prospecto belleza

heightened by the industry of man, as very rarely to be seen  
perfeccionado industria humana, como muy raramente se ve

in Europe; and offers to the stranger a most delightful field for  
ofrece extranjero delicioso campo

contemplation and reflection. The inhabitants also of this island  
habitantes tambien

possess much frankness, sociability, and benevolence; and in very few  
poseen franqueza, sociabilidad benevolencia;

parts is (1) hospitality (5) more (3) generally (4) practised (2).  
parte se hospitalidad generalmente practica.

The city of London is the largest, most populous, and wealthiest in  
ciudad Londres poblada rico

Europe. New York and Boston are very fine cities, but Philadelphia  
Nueva York Boston son pero Filadelfia



## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Uno,	one.	cincuenta,	fifty.
dos,	two.	sesenta,	sixty.
tres,	three.	setenta,	seventy.
cuatro,	four.	ochenta,	eighty.
cinco,	five.	noventa,	ninety.
seis,	six.	ciento,	one hundred.
siete,	seven.	ciento y uno,	one hundred and one.
ocho,	eight.	ciento y dos,	one hundred and two.
nueve,	nine.	dos cientos,	two hundred.
diez,	ten.	tres cientos,	three hundred.
once,	eleven.	cuatro cientos,	four hundred.
doce,	twelve.	quinientos,	five hundred.
trece,	thirteen.	seis cientos,	six hundred.
catorce,	fourteen.	setecientos,	seven hundred.
quince,	fifteen.	ochocientos,	eight hundred.
diez y seis,	sixteen.	novecientos,	nine hundred.
diez y siete,	seventeen.	mil,	one thousand.
diez y ocho,	eighteen.	dos mil,	two thousand.
diez y nueve,	nineteen.	tres mil,	three thousand.
veinte,	twenty.	cuatro mil,	four thousand.
veinte y uno,	twenty-one.	diez mil,	ten thousand.
veinte y dos,	twenty-two.	cien mil,	one hundred thousand.
veinte y tres,	twenty-three.	doscientos mil,	two hundred thousand.
veinte y cuatro,	twenty-four.	un millon,*	a million.
veinte y cinco,	twenty-five.	mil ocho cientos	one thousand eight hundred
veinte y seis,	twenty-six.	treinta y tres,	and thirty-three.
veinte y siete,	twenty-seven.		
veinte y ocho,	twenty-eight.		
veinte y nueve,	twenty-nine.		
treinta,	thirty.		
treinta y uno,	thirty-one.		
cuarenta,	forty.		

2. All the cardinal numbers except *uno*, and the compounds of *ciento*, are indeclinable.

3. *Uno* agrees in gender with the Noun to which it refers, but drops the *o* when it immediately precedes a Noun masculine singular : Ex.

*Uno* de los documentos,

One of the documents.

*Una* cuestion,

A question.

*Un* hombre, *un* libro,

A man, a book.

4. The compounds of *ciento*, agree in gender with the Nouns to which they refer. *Ciento*, drops the last syllable, when placed immediately before a Noun singular, of either gender : Ex.

*Cien* hombres y *cien* mugeres,

A hundred men and a hundred women.

*Ciento* y veinte libras,

A hundred and twenty pounds.

Dos *cientos* soldados,

Two hundred soldiers.

Tres *cientas* escopetas,

Three hundred muskets.

\* *Millon*, however, belongs rather to the class of Substantives ; for we cannot say *un millon hombres*, as we would *cien hombres* : *millon* being a Substantive, governs the following Noun with the Preposition *de* ; as, *un millon de hombres*.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Primero,	first.
segundo,	second.
tercero,	third.
cuarto,	fourth.
quinto,	fifth.
sesto,	sixth.
séptimo,	seventh.
octavo,	eighth.
noveno or nono,	ninth.
décimo,	tenth.
undécimo,	eleventh.
duodécimo,	twelfth.
décimo tercio,	thirteenth.
décimo cuarto,	fourteenth.
décimo quinto,	fifteenth.
décimo sexto,	sixteenth.
décimo séptimo,	seventeenth.
décimo octavo,	eighteenth.
décimo nono,	nineteenth.
vigésimo,	twentieth.
vigésimo primo,	twenty-first.
vigésimo segundo,	twenty-second.
vigésimo tercio,	twenty-third.
vigésimo cuarto,	twenty-fourth.
vigésimo quinto,	twenty-fifth.

vigésimo sexto,	twenty-sixth.
vigésimo séptimo,	twenty-seventh.
vigésimo octavo,	twenty-eighth.
vigésimo nono,	twenty-ninth.
trigésimo,	thirtieth.
trigésimo primo,	thirty-first.
cuadragésimo,	fortieth.
quincuagésimo,	fiftieth.
sexcagésimo,	sixtieth.
septuagésimo,	seventieth.
octagésimo,	eightieth.
nonagésimo,	ninetieth.
centésimo,	hundredth.
centésimo primo,	hundred and first.
centésimo segundo,	hundred and second.
docentésimo,	two hundredth.
trecentésimo,	three hundredth.
cuadragentésimo,	four hundredth.
quingentésimo,	five hundredth.
sescentésimo,	six hundredth.
septingentésimo,	seven hundredth.
octingentésimo,	eight hundredth.
nonagésimo,	nine hundredth.
milésimo,	a thousandth.

5. All the ordinal numbers agree with the Noun to which they refer, in gender and number : *primero* drops the *o* when placed immediately before a Noun masculine : Ex.

El <i>primer</i> día,	The first day.
El <i>primero</i> de todos,	The first of all.
Los <i>primeros</i> días,	The first days.
Las <i>primeras</i> noches,	The first nights.
El <i>segundo</i> tomo,	The second volume.
Las <i>segundas</i> nuevas,	The second news.

6. *Tercero* or *tercer*, may be indiscriminately used ; for we may either say *el tercero día*, or *el tercer día*.

7. Besides the cardinal and ordinal numbers, we must notice the *collective*, the *distributive*, and the *proportional* ; but observe, that these are Substantives, and not Adjectives.

8. The *collective*, denote a determined number of things, collected into one distinct mass or body : Ex.

Una <i>docena</i> ,	a dozen.	un <i>par</i> ,	a pair or couple.
media <i>docena</i> ,	half a dozen.	un <i>millar</i> ,	a thousand.
una <i>centena</i> ,	a hundred.	un <i>millon</i> or	a million.
una <i>veintena</i> ,	a score.	<i>cuento</i> ,	

9. The *distributive*, denote the different parts of a whole : Ex.

La <i>mitad</i> ,	the half.	una <i>cuarta</i> ,	a fourth.
el <i>tercio</i> ,	the third.	una <i>décima</i> ,	a tenth.

10. The *proportional*, are such as denote the progressive increase of things : Ex.

El doble,	the double.		el cuádruplo,	the quadruple.
el triple,	the triple.		el centuplo,	the hundredfold.

11. Numerical Adjectives referring to a Noun or Adjective of dimension, require the preposition *de*, after them : Ex.

Una mesa de tres pies <i>de altura</i> , or	A table three feet in height,
<i>de alto</i> ,	or high.
Paño de dos varas <i>de ancho</i> ,	Cloth of two yards wide.

12. When the numerical Adjective that relates to a Noun or Adjective of dimension, is preceded in English by some part of the Verb *to be*, this Verb is rendered by the Verb *tener*, to have : Ex.

The table <i>is</i> three feet high, or	La mesa <i>tiene</i> tres pies de alto, or
in height,	de altura.

13. *Six feet by four, twelve inches by eight*, and so forth, are translated literally ; as *Seis pies por cuatro, doce pulgadas por ocho*.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON PREPOSITIONS EMPLOYED WITH ADJECTIVES.

14. Adjectives are frequently followed by certain prepositions that govern the word to which the Adjective is directed. This is a matter in which not only the English and Spanish languages frequently differ, in regard to the Preposition employed ; but one in which the greatest nicety is required in each language. The following are some examples, in which the two languages differ in this respect.

<i>Agradecido á las bondades de vmd.,</i>	<i>Thankful for your kindness.</i>
<i>El jarro es muy ancho de boca,</i>	<i>The jug is very wide at the mouth.</i>
<i>Es escaso en su mesa,</i>	<i>He is sparing at his meals.</i>
<i>Es bondadoso con todos,</i>	<i>He is kind to every one.</i>
<i>Ingrato para con sus bienhechores,</i>	<i>Ungrateful to his benefactors.</i>
<i>Es útil para todo,</i>	<i>He is useful in everything.</i>

It would be an endless, and perhaps a useless task, to attempt at reducing to a set of rules, what custom has rendered so arbitrary and capricious, and what can only be attained by constant reading. The Royal Academy of Madrid, aware of the difficulty attending on the choice of Prepositions (not only as employed with Adjectives, but more particularly as employed with Verbs), has in its Grammar, given a very

copious alphabetical list of Verbs, and other words, with the Prepositions by which they are followed, and the words governed by the Prepositions. In order therefore to lessen the difficulties which may present themselves to the learner in this respect, it has been deemed expedient to insert the same list in the Appendix to this work, giving the English translation to each example, to serve as a reference in cases of doubt: and it is to this list that the student is now referred in order to know what Preposition he should employ with the Adjective he may be translating. This list will be even more important to him when he arrives at the government of Verbs: he is therefore referred to what is said respecting it, in Lec. 26, Par. 9. It would also be advisable to the student to peruse the said list as frequently as possible.

---

## LECTURE XV.

### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

1. For the definition of this part of speech, the student is referred to Lec. 4, Par. 7; after reperusing which, he will observe that Pronouns are generally classed under six different heads; namely, *personal*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *relative*, *interrogative* and *indeterminate*.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

2. Personal Pronouns are those which are used in reference to persons, and supply their places. There are *three* persons, namely, the *first*, or the person that speaks; the *second*, or the person spoken to; and the *third*, or the person spoken of; as *I* wrote the letter, *you* sealed it, and *he* delivered it. Here it is seen, that the pronoun that stands in the place of the person that *speaks*, is *I*, which is the *first* person, that which stands in the place of the person *spoken to*, is *you*, which is the *second* person; and that which stands in the place of the person *spoken of*, is *he*, which is the *third* person.

3. Personal Pronouns are subject to a variation of *number*, *person*, *gender*, and *case*, as observed in the following,—



## DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## First person singular number, common to both genders.

NOM.	Yo,	I.
GEN.	de mí,	of me.
DAT.	á, or, para mí, me,	to or for me.
ACC.	me, or, á mí,	me.
ABL.	por mí,	by me.

## First person plural number.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
NOM.	Nosotros,	We.	Nosotras,
GEN.	de nosotros,	of us.	de nosotras,
DAT.	á, or para nosotros, nos,	to or for us.	á or para nosotras, nos,
ACC.	nos or á nosotros,	us.	nos or á nosotras,
ABL.	por nosotros,	by us.	por nosotras,

## Second person singular number common to both genders.

NOM.	Tú,	Thou.
GEN.	de tí,	of thee.
DAT.	á or para tí, te,	to or for thee.
ACC.	te or á tí,	thee.
ABL.	por tí,	by thee.

## Second person plural number.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
NOM.	Vosotros,	You or ye.	Vosotras,
GEN.	de vosotros,	of you.	de vosotras,
DAT.	á or para vosotros, os,	to or for you.	á or para vosotras, os,
ACC.	os, or á vosotros,	you.	os or á vosotras,
ABL.	por vosotros,	by you.	por vosotras,

## Third person masculine gender.

Singular.		Plural.	
NOM.	Él,	He.	Ellos,
GEN.	de él,	of him.	de ellos,
DAT.	á or para él, le,	to or for him,	á or para ellos, les,
ACC.	le or á él,	him.	los or á ellos,
ABL.	por él,	by him.	por ellos,

## Third person feminine gender.

Singular.		Plural.	
NOM.	Ella,	She.	Ellas,
GEN.	de ella,	of her.	de ellas,
DAT.	á or para ella, le,	to or for her.	á or para ellas, les,
ACC.	la or á ella,	her.	las or á ellas,
ABL.	por ella,	by her.	por ellas,

## Third person neuter gender.

NOM.	Ello,	It.
GEN.	de ello,	of it.
DAT.	á or para ello, lo,	to or for it.
ACC.	lo or á ello,	it.
ABL.	por ello,	by it.

The Neuter Pronoun has no plural number in Spanish.

4. The third person, is also used *reciprocally*, and is declined in the following manner, without the nominative case, and is common to all genders and numbers : Ex.

GEN. <i>De sí,</i>	Of himself, herself, itself or themselves.
DAT. <i>d or para sí, sé,</i>	to or for himself, &c.
ACC. <i>se or á sí,</i>	himself, &c.
ABL. <i>por sí,</i>	by himself, &c.

5. *Nos*, is sometimes seen used in the nominative case instead of *nosotros*, and *vos* instead of *vosotros*; but this practice is now nearly obsolete, and confined chiefly to poetry, or to the elevated style of writing.

6. The Pronouns *él, la, los, las*, might, in consequence of their similarity in spelling, be mistaken for the Articles; but they may be easily distinguished from them, since Articles are only employed with Nouns, whereas Pronouns can only be employed with Verbs.

7. Errors may also arise in the use of Pronouns of the third person singular and plural, of the dative and accusative cases : to prevent which, let the following be attended to. When the action of the Verb falls immediately on a Pronoun, the Pronoun is the *direct* object of the Verb, and is in the *accusative* case; but when the energy of the Verb falls on any other word in the sentence, the Pronoun will be the *indirect* object, and therefore in the *dative* case, and the word on which the energy of the Verb falls, will be in the *accusative* case : (See Lec. 9, on Case.) The Pronoun in the *dative* case must be expressed *le* in the singular, and *les* in the plural number for both genders : — But, and observe, that in the *accusative* case, the masculine pronoun singular is *le*, and its plural is *los* : the feminine singular is *la*, and its plural *las* : Ex.

Yo <i>le</i> di el libro,	I gave <i>him</i> or <i>her</i> the book.
Yo <i>les</i> di el libro,	I gave <i>them</i> ( <i>mas.</i> or <i>fem.</i> ) the book.

In these examples, the Pronouns *le* and *les*, are in the *dative* case, because the action of the Verb does not fall on these Pronouns, but on the Noun *libro* : — But in the four following examples the Pronouns *le, los, la, las*, are in the *accusative* case, because to them is the action of the Verb directed : Ex.

Él <i>le</i> llam6,	He called <i>him</i> .
El <i>los</i> llam6,	He called <i>them</i> . ( <i>mas.</i> )
El <i>la</i> llam6,	He called <i>her</i> .
El <i>las</i> llam6,	He called <i>them</i> . ( <i>fem.</i> )

8. Notwithstanding the foregoing rule on the proper employment of personal Pronouns in the *dative* and *accusative* cases, and which cannot be too strictly attended to, it is frequently violated; even sometimes by writers of much celebrity.

9. An equal want of precision is also observed, and frequently too by classical authors, in confounding the neuter Pronoun *lo* with the masculine Pronoun *le*, in the *accusative* case: a practice which should be scrupulously avoided. The *masculine* Pronoun should be employed only in reference to a Noun *masculine*; and the *neuter* Pronoun in reference to something, the gender of which is not denoted; as in the following examples.

*Lo* tomais muy despacio,  
¿Que es aquello? traeme *lo*,

You take it very leisurely.  
What is that? bring it to me.

We see that in each of these examples, *lo* refers to something understood, the nature of which not being known, is considered neuter.

10. The foregoing observations are also applicable to the Pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nos*, *os*, as regards the ascertaining of their case, on account of their similarity of spelling in the *dative* and *accusative*.

11. The Pronoun *se* is also frequently employed in the third person singular and plural in any of the tenses, to form the *passive voice*; Ex.

El dinero *se* recibirá,  
Se han recibido los libros,

The money will be received.  
The books have been received.

(See also Lec. 24, Par. 7).

#### EMPLOYMENT OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

12. Personal Pronouns in the nominative case, in the natural construction of the language, precede the Verb in Spanish; Ex.

Yo hablo, I speak.  
Tú has venido, Thou hast come.  
El tomará, He will take.  
Nosotros vendremos, We will come.

Vosotros fuisteis, You went.  
Que ellos compren, That they may buy.

13. This natural order of placing the nominative case before the Verb, may be inverted for the sake of elegance, or to add greater energy to the expression, not only with respect to

Pronouns and Verbs, but also with Nouns and Verbs. Indeed the natural construction of the Spanish language, admits a great variety of syntactical inversion as regards several of the other parts of speech, as we have already seen with the Substantive and Adjective, and as we shall further see as we arrive at the construction of the several parts of speech respectively. Custom appears to have established as a rule, that that word should take precedence, which we would have appear the most conspicuous in the sentence : for instance, we would say in English, Then *said I* to her, fear nothing ; and in Spanish, *Entonces le dije yo, nada temas* : in which, contrary to the natural order of the Spanish language, the Verb *digo* precedes its nominative *yo*. It happens the same in the English sentence, where the Verb *said* precedes the nominative *I*, because the intent of the speaker is principally on the *saying*. This licence, however, is allowed a much wider latitude in Spanish than in English ; and writers that know how to avail themselves of it, are able to display the variety and elegance which the Spanish language is capable of exhibiting.

14. In interrogative sentences, personal Pronouns usually follow the Verb in Spanish ; Ex.

¿ *Habló él* con vmd. ?  
¿ *Quiere vmd.* algo ?

Did he speak to you ?  
Do you wish any thing ?

15. Personal Pronouns likewise follow the Verb in Spanish in the imperative mood ; Ex.

*Venga vmd.* conmigo,  
*Hagamos nosotros* nuestro deber,

Come with me.  
Let us do our duty.

16. Personal Pronouns are generally omitted in Spanish, in the nominative case, unless they be the emphatical word in the sentence, or when their omission would create ambiguity ; Ex.

*Voy á comprar* un libro,  
*Es muy hermosa*,  
*Yo* tocaré con tal que *ella* cante,  
*El* escribe, y *ella* dibuja,

I am going to purchase a book.  
She is very handsome.  
I will play provided she sings.  
He writes, and she draws.

In the first example, the termination of the Verb *voy*, denotes its nominative to be the *first* person singular, and therefore the Pronoun *yo* is dispensed with as unnecessary. In the second the Verb *es*, denotes its nominative to be of the *third* person singular, while the feminine termination of the Adjective *hermosa* points out its gender. In the third example, the Pronouns are the emphatical words in the sen-

tence, and are therefore expressed. And in the fourth, both Verbs being in the third person singular, the omission of the Pronouns would create ambiguity as regards the gender of the nominatives.

17. The nominative case of the neuter Pronoun (*ello*), is always suppressed in Spanish, when employed with *impersonal* Verbs; that is, Verbs used only in the *third person singular*; Ex.

*Parece que lloverá hoy,*  
*Es preciso que vayamos,*

It appears that it will rain to day.  
It is necessary that we go.

#### EMPLOYMENT OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES.

18. We will first treat on those personal Pronouns, which are governed by the Verb, namely, *me, te, le, la, lo, nos, os, les, las, los, se*. These in the dative and accusative cases are placed *after*, and *joined* to the Verb, in the *infinitive* and *imperative* modes, and also the *participle active*; Ex.

##### Dative.

Voy á *darle* el dinero,  
Enseñeme vmd. el libro,  
Estoy *escribiéndole* una carta,

I am going to give him the money.  
Show me the book.  
I am writing him a letter.

##### Accusative.

¿Quiere vmd. *verla*?  
Traigala vmd. aquí,  
Están *maltratándolos*,

Do you wish to see him?  
Bring her here.  
They are ill-treating them.

*Note.*—The first and second persons plural of the Verb in the imperative mode drop the final letter, when *nos* and *os* are affixed to them; as *salvémonos*, let us save ourselves; *instruíos*, instruct yourselves; instead of *salvemosnos, instruidos*.

On all other occasions, the foregoing Pronouns are generally placed before the Verb; Ex.

##### Dative.

El *nos* *dió* la noticia,  
Yo *le* *he* *escrito* la carta,  
Ellos *me* *enviaron* el libro,

He gave us the news.  
I have written him a letter.  
They sent me the book.

##### Accusative.

Nosotros *le* *vimos*,  
Ellos *se* *han* *lastimado*,  
El *la* *acompañará*,

We saw him.  
They have hurt themselves.  
He will accompany her.

19. To give energy to the expression, the syntactical order of the Pronouns in the dative and accusative cases, may be inverted, and particularly when the sentence begins with a Verb; Ex.

*Dejéme ver sus escritos,  
Mostráse muy atento á mis sú-  
plicas,*

He allowed me to see his writings.  
He showed himself very attentive  
to my entreaties.

20. When it happens that both the direct and indirect objects are *Pronouns*, the *direct* object is translated by a *Pronoun* in the accusative case; but the *indirect* object is rendered by one of the *Pronouns* *me*, *te*, *se*, in the singular, and *nos*, *os*, *se*, in the plural: and observe that the order of the *Pronouns* is reversed in the translation; Ex.

*El me lo dio,  
Voy á darte lo,  
Enséñeselos.  
El nos lo dijo,  
Yo os la enviaré,  
Se lo he escrito,*

He gave it to *me*.  
I am going to give it to *thee*.  
Show *them* to *them*.  
He told *us* to *us*.  
I will send *her* to *you*.  
I have written it to *him*.

21. We have now to consider those personal *Pronouns* of the dative and accusative cases, that are preceded by a *Preposition*; namely, *á mí*, *á tí*, *á él*, *á ella*, *á ello*, *á sí*, *á nosotros*, *á nosotras*, *á vosotros*, *á vosotras*, *á ellos*, *á ellas*. These *Pronouns* are frequently employed with the other class of *Pronouns*, of the dative and accusative cases: their use is either to add more energy to the object of the Verb, or to the person to whom the object is directed; or to distinguish more particularly the gender of the object; Ex.

*La llevaron á ella á su casa, y á  
mí me enviaron al despacho,  
Yo le escribí á él con preferencia,*

They carried *her* to her house, and  
sent me to the office.  
I wrote to *him* in preference.

In the first example, the additional *Pronouns* *á ella*, and *á mí*, add greater energy to the sentence, by placing the objects of the Verbs in a more conspicuous light; and in the second, *á él* determines the *sex* of the object; for without this additional *Pronoun*, *le escribí* would be ambiguous in its signification, and mean either *I wrote to him*, or *I wrote to her*. It is also seen in the latter part of the first example, that the additional *Pronouns* may, for the sake of emphasis, alter their situation.

22. This class of *Pronouns* in the *indirect* regimen, and also *after comparatives*, may sometimes be used by themselves; Ex.

*Dele vmd. el libro á él, y la  
carta á ella,  
Nos han dado ménos que á ellos,*

Give the book to *him*, and the letter  
to *her*.  
They have given us less than *them*.

EMPLOYMENT OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE GENITIVE AND  
ABLATIVE CASES.

23. There is nothing very particular to be observed in the employment of personal Pronouns in these two cases. They are always preceded by Prepositions. It must be observed, however, that the *first* and *second* personal Pronouns *singular*, and also the *reciprocal* Pronoun, are, when in the *ablative case* preceded by *con* (with), written thus, *conmigo*, with me ; *contigo*, with thee ; *consigo*, with him, her, or them.

24. Observe also, that formerly, when the Preposition *de* preceded the Pronouns *él*, *ella*, *ellos*, *ellas*, *ello*, it dropped the *e*, and was thus contracted with these Pronouns, *del*, *della*, *dellos*, *dellas*, *dello* ; but this usage is now obsolete, though sometimes seen in the poetical style.

EXERCISE ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

I have a book. tengo	Thou [wilt come] to-morrow. vendrás mañana.	He and she
[will be] here [to-day.] estarán aquí hoy.	We m. have written. hemos escrito.	We f. have
told the truth. dicho verdad.	You m. are happy. sois dichoso.	You f. [shall go.] iréis.
answered. respondieron.	They f. came. vinieron.	He came, said he, but it was too pero fué muy
late. tarde.	They knew (2) not (1) sabían no	what to say. que ^ decir.
Who is he? quien es	What are they? que son	Go thou. ve
He returned within an hour. volvió [dentro de] hora.	He was more fué	Stay you here. quedad
guilty. delincuente.	They came, we did not come. vinieron ^ vinimos.	We had habíamos
[set off] before they arrived. partido [antes que]	llegasen.	He came to pay me the debt. vino ^ pagar
Give us some wine. da	Examine yourselves well. ecsaminad bien.	Let us go ^ vamos
home. [á casa.]	They were persuading me estaban persuadiendo	to go. [á que fuese.]
to know him. ^ conocer	Bring her here. trae	I [should like] quisiera
to me.	They are trying him. están justificando	Comfort thyself, and listen consuela escucha
		He was beating her. estaba pegando

We paid them. I have spoken to her. Vice deceives us.  
pagámos he hablado engaña

Prosperity gains us friends, but adversity tries them.  
prosperidad grangea amigo, mas adversidad [pone á la prueba]

I accompanied her [as far as] her house. I related to him all her  
acompañé hasta conté todo

history. I brought a letter and gave it to her. Here are the  
historia. traje dí estan

drawings, show them to them. I have told it to her.  
dibujo muestre he dicho

[Wilt thou refuse] it to them? I saw her, but could (I) see  
negarás ví pero pude ver

him. I give it to thee in preference. They handed us a plate  
doy preferencia sirvieron plato

of soup, but sent them beef. I am going to send it to him  
sopa enviaron carne. voy mandar

that he [may forward] it to her. It is to them that I spoke.  
[para que] remita es [á quienes] hablé.

It is better to give it to her than to him. They [would send] it to us  
mejor dar enviarían

rather than return it to him. Do they speak of me or of him?  
antes volver hablan ó

What does he say about it? He says (2) nothing (1) of himself.  
que dice de dice nada

Was it done by him or by her? He is gone with them. He did  
fué hecho ha ido con hizo

it for me. I can go without him. They spoke against  
para puedo ir sin hablaron contra

me. [He would neither stay] with me, nor with thee. He  
no quiso quedarse ni

carried it along with him.  
llevó

25. Before concluding this lecture on personal Pronouns, there is one thing more of importance to notice; which is, that the *second personal Pronoun* is employed in Spanish in addressing those persons with whom we are on terms of the greatest familiarity; also by parents to their children; between brothers and sisters; sometimes by masters to their servants; it is also used in scripture and in poetry. In novels and romances, we frequently see the *second personal Pronoun plural* used in addressing persons, for whom a kind of veneration respect is entertained.

But in polite conversation, or addressing strangers, instead of the *second personal Pronoun*, *Usted* is used with both genders in the singular number, and *Ustedes* in the plural.



*Usted* is an abbreviation of *Vuestra Merced*, which, strictly speaking, has no equivalent meaning in English; but it is a term of nearly the same import as *your grace*, or *your honour*. In writing, *Usted* is thus contracted, *Vmd.*, or thus, *vmd.* (as may be seen in several of the examples already given in this work); some write it thus, *Vm.*; others *Vd.* or *V.* An *s* is added to either mode of abbreviation to form the plural number: and observe, that the Verb and the possessive Pronoun are put in the *third* person singular to agree with *Vmd.*, and in the *third* person plural to agree with *Vmds.* The following are a few Examples on the employment of *Vmd.*

¿ Señor, ha visto <i>vmd.</i> á mi hermano?	Sir, have you seen my brother?
<i>Favorescame vmd.</i> con su compañía,	Favour me with your company.
Señora, parece que <i>está vmd.</i> cansada,	Madam, you appear tired.
¿ Que dice <i>vmd.</i> ?	What do you say?
Caballeros, <i>son vmds.</i> muy corteses,	Gentlemen, you are very polite.
¿ Señoritas es de <i>vms.</i> esta música?	Does this music belong to you, young ladies?

Observe that the Adjective which refers to *vmd.* or *vmds.*, agrees in gender with the person to whom these abbreviations allude: Ex.

¿ Esta <i>vmd.</i> bueno ( <i>caballero</i> )?	Are you well (Sir)?
(Señoras) son <i>vmds.</i> muy bondadosas,	(Ladies), you are very kind.

## LECTURE XVI.

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Possessive Pronouns are those which denote the possession of any thing by the persons or things to which they refer. They are of two kinds, namely, those which precede the Noun, and are by some grammarians called *conjunctive* possessive Pronouns, and those which follow the Noun, or that refer to some Noun understood, and are called by some, *disjunctive* or *relative* possessive Pronouns.

2. Possessive Pronouns do not vary their form on account

of case ; but they admit the same Prepositions in the several cases as personal Pronouns do.

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS THAT PRECEDE THE NOUN.

<i>Mi,</i>	my.	<i>nuestro,</i>	our.
<i>tu,</i>	thy.	<i>vuestro,</i>	your.
<i>su,</i>	his, her, its.	<i>su,</i>	their.

3. These are applied to things possessed in the *singular* number : an *s* is added to them, to agree with Nouns possessed in the plural number : *mi, tu, su,* are applicable to both genders ; but *nuestro* and *vuestro* are of the *masculine* gender, and change their final letter into *a*, when they refer to Nouns possessed, in the *feminine* gender : Ex.

Mi sombrero,	My hat.
Mis espadas,	My swords.
Tu carta,	Thy letter.
Tus libros,	Thy books.
Su valor,	His, her, or its valour.
Sus virtudes,	His, her, or its virtues.
Nuestro deber,	Our duty.
Nuestra constancia,	Our constancy.
Vuestro juicio,	Your judgment.
Vuestros hechos,	Your deeds.
Su talento,	Their talent.
Sus esperanzas,	Their hopes.

In these examples we see that all the Pronouns, agree in Spanish, in *person* with the *possessor*, and in *number* with the thing possessed ; and that the first and second persons *plural*, agree also in *gender* with the thing possessed.

4. The word *own*, used in English together with possessive Pronouns, is translated *propio* or *mismo* : Ex.

Hablo de <i>mi propio</i> negocio,	I speak of <i>my own</i> business.
Son <i>sus casas propias</i> ,	They are <i>his own</i> houses,
Hablaba de <i>mi mismo</i> ,	I was speaking of <i>my own</i> self.

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS THAT FOLLOW THE NOUN, OR THAT REFER TO A NOUN UNDERSTOOD.

<i>Mio,</i>	mine.	<i>nuestro,</i>	ours.
<i>tuyo,</i>	thine.	<i>vuestro,</i>	yours.
<i>suyo,</i>	his, hers, its.	<i>suyo,</i>	theirs.

5. This class of possessive Pronouns, are made to agree in *person* with the *possessor*, and in *gender* and *number* with the thing possessed. An *s* is added to them to form the plural

number, and they change the final letter into *a* to form the feminine gender : Ex.

El dolor <i>mio</i> ,	<i>My</i> grief.
La paciencia <i>mia</i> ,	<i>My</i> patience.
Los deseos <i>mios</i> ,	<i>My</i> desires.
Las esperanzas <i>mias</i> ,	<i>My</i> hopes.
El valor <i>tuyo</i> ,	<i>Thy</i> valour.
El candor <i>suyo</i> ,	<i>His</i> or <i>her</i> candour.
Los esfuerzos <i>nuestros</i> ,	<i>Our</i> efforts.
Una carta <i>vuestra</i> ,	<i>A</i> letter of <i>yours</i> .
La virtud <i>suya</i> ,	<i>His, her, its, or their</i> virtue.

6. When these Pronouns are employed in reference to a Noun understood, they are also preceded by the Article agreeing with them in gender and number ; except when used in answer to a question, in which case the Article is not necessary, unless we wish to identify or to particularize the thing to which the Pronoun refers : Ex.

Mi libro y el <i>tuyo</i> estan aquí,	<i>My</i> book and <i>thine</i> are here, but
pero el <i>suyo</i> no,	not <i>his, hers, or theirs</i> .
Nuestra carta llegó ántes que las	<i>Our</i> letter arrived before <i>his, hers,</i>
<i>suyas</i> ,	or <i>theirs</i> .
¿ De quien es este libro ?— <i>mio</i> ,	Whose book is this ?— <i>mine</i> .
¿ Cual quiere vmd., el <i>nuestro</i> ó	Which will you have, <i>ours</i> or <i>his</i> ?
el <i>suyo</i> ?—el <i>nuestro</i> ,	— <i>ours</i> .

7. Neither is the Article required when there is a *Verb* between the Noun and the possessive Pronoun, unless we wish to particularize the Noun : Ex.

El sombrero es <i>mio</i> ,	The hat is <i>mine</i> .
La espada es <i>suya</i> ,	The sword is <i>his</i> .
Este paragua es el <i>mio</i> ,	This umbrella is <i>my own</i> .

8. *Disjunctive* possessive Pronouns are sometimes used with the neuter Article, in the same manner as Adjectives substantively employed are : Ex.

Lo <i>mio</i> ,	<i>Mine, or that which is mine.</i>
Lo <i>tuyo</i> ,	<i>Thine, or that which is thine.</i>
Lo <i>suyo</i> ,	<i>His or hers, or that which is his or hers.</i>
Lo <i>nuestro</i> ,	<i>Ours, or that which is ours.</i>
Lo <i>vuestro</i> ,	<i>Yours, or that which is yours.</i>
Lo <i>suyo</i> ,	<i>Theirs, or that which is theirs.</i>

9. *Disjunctive* possessive Pronouns, preceded in English by the Preposition *of*, do not generally admit the Preposition in Spanish : Ex.

<i>A</i> dress <i>of mine</i> ,	<i>Un</i> vestido <i>mio</i> .
Two servants <i>of his</i> ,	<i>Dos</i> criados <i>suyos</i> .

But should we wish to lay a particular emphasis on the

Pronoun, then both Preposition and Article are required in Spanish : Ex.

Two servants of his, and one of mine.	Dos criados de los suyos, y uno de los míos.
---------------------------------------	--

*Two of my servants, one of his friends, would be rendered, dos de mis criados, uno de sus amigos.*

10. The Pronoun *my*, used in English in addresses, is translated *mío*, and follows the Noun : Ex.

Do not go, my son,	No vayas, hijo mío.
My God!	¡Dios mío!
My dear Sir,	Señor mío.

11. As in the employment of possessive Pronouns of the *third* person, some ambiguity may arise respecting the *gender* and *number* of the possessor ; it would be preferable in doubtful cases, to employ a *personal* Pronoun in the genitive case, allusive to the possessor, in addition to the possessive Pronoun ; by which means every obscurity will be removed : Ex.

Su casa de él,	His house.
Su casa de ella,	Her house.
Su casa de ellos,	Their house ( <i>masculine</i> ).
Su casa de ellas,	Their house ( <i>feminine</i> ).
Su casa de vmd.	Your house ( <i>masculine and feminine singular</i> ).
Su casa de vmds.	Your house ( <i>masculine and feminine plural</i> ).

We may also say, *La casa de él*, his house ; *La casa de ella*, her house, &c.

12. The same rule is to be observed with possessive Pronouns, as with *personal* Pronouns, as regards the employment of the third person instead of the second, as noticed in Lec. 15, Par 25 : Ex.

Tome vmd. su sombrero,	Take your hat.
Aquí estan sus, or los guantes de vmd.,	Here are your gloves.

13. In phrases like the following, namely, *I wounded his arm, I washed my face*, and such like ; instead of the *possessive* Pronoun used in English, a *personal* Pronoun in the *dative* case is employed in Spanish, in allusion to the person to whom the action of the Verb is directed ; while the *definite Article* points out the part affected by the Verb : Ex.

I wounded his arm.	Yo le herí el brazo.
I washed my face,	Me lave la cara.
My head aches,	Me duele la cabeza.
He took them by the hand,	Les tomó de la mano.

14. The same construction is observed in Spanish, even

when the object affected by the Verb does not denote any part of the person; but merely something appertaining to it: Ex.

Nos quitaron las espadas,  
Le cortaron la casaca,

They took away our swords.  
They tore his coat.

15. In the following examples, and others of a like construction, the *definite Article* alone is used in Spanish, in place of the English *possessive Pronoun*.

She has lost *her* sight,  
He lost *his* right arm in battle,  
I put the money into *my* pocket,

Ha perdido *la* vista.  
Perdió *el* brazo derecho en batalla.  
Metí *el* dinero en *la* faltriquera.

### EXERCISE ON POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

My father and my mother are at home. My books are well  
están en casa. están bien  
bound. Your houses are well built, and your gardens are  
encuadrado. edificado jardín  
adorned with beautiful flowers. Her servant took her horses to the  
adornado de bello flor. criado llevó caballo  
stable. His genius and his talent are esteemed. Our  
caballeriza. genio talento son estimado. Our  
constancy and our efforts [will surmount] every obstacle. Thy  
constancia esfuerzo vencerán todo obstáculo. Thy  
candour and thy virtue are well known. Soldiers! your brave  
candor virtud son conocido. soldado soldado bizarro  
conduct has filled my hopes, and satisfied my wishes. That  
conducta ha llenado esperanza satisfecho deseo. aquella  
is his own idea. My friends did not serve me with the same  
es amigo A no obsequiaron mismo  
zeal as his. The greater part of the goods are damaged; but  
celo parte género están averiado; pero  
yours and mine are in a good condition. Your condition  
A  
[cannot be compared] with ours. Their confidence deserves mine.  
no puede cotejarse confianza merece  
Whose gloves are these?—mine; and that hat?—his. Is  
cuyos guante son estos ese es  
this her coach?—no, it is mine. A friend of mine has spoken to a  
este coche A es ha hablado  
relation of his, concerning some business of yours. We sent  
pariente [acerca de] negocio enviámos  
a servant of ours to an aunt of hers. He has sold one of his  
criado tia ha vendido  
horses. [What ails thee] my child? Here it is my friend.  
qué tienes aquí está

Ours and yours are superior to his.      Hers [will go] first.      It is  
son ————— irá

of her house      that I speak ; not      of his.      Her letter is  
[de la que] hablo      [de la de] carta está

better written than      his.      I took off my hat.      [It is better]  
escribió      [la de él.] quitó      mas vale

for a man to lose his life than his honour.      He is putting on  
que      A pierda vida      está poniéndose A

his coat.      She cut her finger.      He lost his life in a  
casaca.      se cortó dedo.      perdió

duel.  
desafío.

## LECTURE XVII.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. **DEMONSTRATIVE Pronouns** are those which point out, or identify the objects to which they refer. In English they are of two kinds, namely, *this*, which refers to an object near to the speaker ; and *that*, which refers to an object at a distance from the speaker : *this* forms its plural by *these* ; and *that* by *those*. In Spanish, however, there are *three* kinds of demonstrative Pronouns : the first *este*, refers to an object near to the speaker ; the second, *ese*, refers to an object that is nearer to the person or thing spoken to, than to the speaker ; and the third, *aquel*, refers to an object which is distant both from the speaker, and from the object spoken to : Ex.

***Este libro que estoy leyendo, ese tratado que tiene vmd. en la mano, y aquel folleto que está sobre la mesa, son míos.***

*This book which I am reading, that treatise which you have in your hand, and that pamphlet which is on the table, are mine.*

2. Demonstrative Pronouns in Spanish are subject to a variation of *gender* and *number*; they do not vary their form on account of case, but admit the same Prepositions to point out their case, as personal Pronouns do: Ex.

**MASCULINE.      FEMININE.      NEUTER.**

**Singular.**

<i>Este,</i>	<i>esta,</i>	<i>esto,</i>	This.
<i>ese,</i>	<i>esa,</i>	<i>eso,</i>	that.
<i>aquel,</i>	<i>aquella,</i>	<i>aquello,</i>	that yonder.

## Plural.

<i>Estos,</i>	<i>estas,</i>	<i>no neuter,</i>	<i>These.</i>
<i>esos,</i>	<i>esas,</i>	<i>no neuter,</i>	<i>those.</i>
<i>aquellos,</i>	<i>aquellas,</i>	<i>no neuter,</i>	<i>those yonder.</i>

3. The terms *the former*, and *the latter*, are translated *este*, and *aquel* : Ex.

Jamas tengas soberbia, ni vanidad ;  
*aquella* te adquirirá enemigos, y *esta*  
será tu ruina.

Never possess haughtiness nor  
vanity ; *the former* will gain  
thee enemies, *the latter* will be  
thy ruin.

4. When Demonstrative Pronouns refer to time, *este* is applied to the present, and *ese* or *aquel* to the past, according to the remoteness of the time referred to : Ex.

*Este* es el siglo de la ilustracion,  
Me acuerdo bien de *ese* or *aquel* dia,

*This* is the age of knowledge.  
I recollect *that* day well.

## OBSERVATION ON ESE AND AQUEL.

5. Although what has just been observed with regard to the employment of *ese* and *aquel*, is conformable to the rules given by the Spanish Academy respecting them, it would be more advisable to employ them with objects, the relative local situation of which, or distance with regard to time, could be more distinctly denoted in English by an adverb : Ex.

*That* book *there* on the table, and  
*that* one *yonder* on the shelf  
belong to you,

*Ese* libro que está sobre la mesa, y  
*aquel* que está en el estante  
pertenecen a Vmd.

*That* vessel which arrived *yesterday*, and *that* which was shipwrecked *last year*, belonged to the same owner,

*Ese* buque que llegó *ayer*, y *aquel*  
que naufragó, *el año pasado*,  
pertenecian al mismo dueño.

6. The expressions *namely*, and *that is*, or *that is to say*, are translated *esto es* : Ex.

Le encomendé que no anduviera  
mucho ; *esto es*, que solo hiciese  
un poco de ejercicio,

I desired him not to walk much ;  
*that is*, that he should only take a  
little exercise.

Me dijo que le comprara lo siguiente,  
*esto es*,

He told me to purchase him the  
following, *namely*.

7. *Este* and *ese*, are sometimes used also compounded with the word *otro*, other : in such cases they drop the final vowel ; Ex.

*Estotro, estotra*, this other.  
*esotro, esotra*, that other.

*Estotros, estotras*, these others.  
*esotros, esotras*, those others.

This compounding of the two words, does not take place with *aquel*; but they are written separately: Ex.

*Aquel otro, aquella otra*, that other. *Aquellos otros, aquellas otras*, those others.

8. Sometimes, though seldom, *aqueste* and *aquese* are employed instead of *este* and *ese*.

THE ARTICLE USED INSTEAD OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

9. When in English the demonstrative Pronoun is followed by *who*, *which*, or *that*, expressed or understood, it is sometimes rendered in Spanish by the *definite Article*. This however is not to be comprehended as a general rule: in this case, the employment of the one in preference to the other, is a mere matter of taste, although the Article seems to be more generally adopted in familiar language: Ex.

Mis libros y los que vmd. compró,  
Los que lo dicen se engañan,  
Traigame vmd. el que vi ayer,

My books and those (that) you bought.  
Those who say so are mistaken.  
Bring me that which I saw yesterday.

10. Also when the English personal Pronoun is followed by *who* or *that*, expressed or understood, it may be either translated by the Article, or by the demonstrative Pronoun *aquel*: Ex.

El que es sabio, or, aquel que es sabio,  
no lo dirá.

He that is wise will not say so.

Los que or aquellos que lo dicen,  
La que or aquella que vmd. vió,

They who say so.  
She whom you saw.

EXERCISE ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

[Do you know] this man and this girl? [Have you read] these lines?  
conoce vmd. a muchacha ha leído vmd. verso

These pens do not write well. This garden is full of flowers. These  
no escriben bien. está lleno flor.

apples are better than those. He is a relation of that  
manzana son es pariente  
gentleman whom you (2) met (1) here [some days ago.]  
caballero [a quien] encontró aquí hace algunos días.

[Are you acquainted with] those ladies there? That was a brilliant age  
conoce vmd. a fué brillante siglo

for the Athenians. He arrived on that very day. What is that?  
para Atenienses. llegó a que es

Prefer virtue to vice, the former [will make] thee happy and the latter  
preferiré virtud vicio hará feliz

miserable. That is what he may do, that is to say, what he ought to  
es puede hacer debe



do. Those that cultivate learning should be encouraged. Happy they  
cultivan ciencias deben ser protegido.

who are virtuous. I prefer that which you have, to those which I bought.  
que son virtuoso. prefiero que tiene compré

Those who speak ill of her do not know her. He that is wise speaks  
hablan mal ^ conocen que es sabio habla

when it is necessary; but he that only [presumes to be so] speaks  
cuando necesario mas solo lo presumo

incessantly.  
incesantemente.

## LECTURE XVIII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. RELATIVE PRONOUNS are such as refer, or relate to some person or thing in a sentence, which person or thing so referred to, is called the *antecedent*; for instance, *The man who spoke to you*; *The bird which you killed*; *The ship that was lost*: In these examples, *who*, *which*, and *that*, are relative Pronouns, and relate or refer to the antecedent Nouns *man*, *bird* and *ship*.

2. *Who* becomes *whose* in the genitive case, and *whom* in the accusative case: *which* and *that* are indeclinable in regard to case; and neither of the three, vary on account of gender or number.

3. Relative Pronouns in Spanish, do not vary their form on account of case; but admit the same Prepositions as personal Pronouns do, in the several cases. There are four relative Pronouns in Spanish, namely, *quien*, who; *cual*, which; *que*, who, which, or that; and *cuyo*, whose, or of which.

4. *Quien* and *cual*, have a plural termination, as *quienes*, *cuales*; but they are common to both genders. *Quien*, refers to persons only, and *cual*, both to persons and things: Ex.

El es quien lo tiene,  
Los señores con quienes hablaba vmd.,

Las señoras á quienes or á las cuales envié  
el recado,

Es una ciencia de la cual tengo muy  
poco conocimiento.

It is he who has it.  
The gentlemen with whom you  
were speaking.

The ladies to whom I sent the  
message.

It is a science of which I have  
but little knowledge.

*Note.*—Some classical authors, have employed *quien* in reference to *things*, and have also used it in its singular termination, in referring to a plural Noun ; but this practice is by no means sanctioned, nor general.

5. We sometimes see *quien* and *cual*, used in the sense of *some*, and *others* : Ex.

Quien se salvó á nado, <i>quien</i> en lanchas,	<i>Some</i> saved themselves by swimming, <i>others</i> in boats.
Peleaban <i>cual</i> con cuchillos, <i>cual</i> con espadas,	<i>Some</i> fought with knives, <i>others</i> with swords.

6. *Cual*, in exclamatory sentences, means *how*, or *in what a state*, or *condition* : Ex.

¡ *Cual* le hallé !      How wretched, or in what a wretched state I found him !

7. *Que*, is common to both numbers and genders, and is applied to persons and things : Ex.

El hombre <i>que</i> vino,	The man <i>who</i> (or <i>that</i> ) came.
Las mugeres <i>que</i> vimos,	The women <i>whom</i> ( <i>that</i> or <i>which</i> ) we saw.
Los caballos <i>que</i> vmd. compró,	The horses <i>which</i> (or <i>that</i> ) you bought.
Las cosas á <i>que</i> vmd. se refiere,	The things to <i>which</i> you allude.

*Note.*—The second example, might be also thus expressed, *Las mugeres á quienes vimos* ; but it is preferable, when *whom* is not preceded by a Preposition, to translate it *que*.

8. When *who* is repeated in a sentence, it may be translated either *que*, or *el cual* : Ex.

El hombre <i>que</i> partió ayer, y <i>que</i> or <i>el cual</i> fué asesinado,	The man <i>who</i> started yesterday, and <i>who</i> was murdered.
---	--

Also if *whom* be repeated in a sentence, it may be either translated *á quien*, or *al cual* : Ex.

El hombre á <i>quien</i> hablamos, y á <i>quien</i> , or <i>al cual</i> dimos la noticia,	The man to <i>whom</i> we spoke, and to <i>whom</i> we gave the news.
---	---

9. *Cuyo*, partakes of the nature of both a relative and a possessive Pronoun ; as a relative, it relates to an antecedent, and as a possessive Pronoun it refers to the person or thing possessed ; in which latter capacity it agrees in number and gender with the person or thing possessed, and not with the possessor : Ex.

El hombre <i>cuyo</i> sombrero es este,	The man <i>whose</i> hat this is.
Los autores <i>cuyas</i> obras he leído,	The authors <i>whose</i> works I have read.

10. Relatives are expressed in Spanish, where they are frequently omitted in English. Ex.

La casa que fuimos a ver. The house we went to see.  
Las instituciones de que hablaban. The institutions they spoke of.

In each of these sentences in English, there is a relative understood: and the sentences to be complete, should be thus expressed: *The house, which we went to see; The institutions, of which they spoke.*

11. The relative in English, does not invariably follow the Preposition by which it is governed as in the examples, *The gentleman whom I saw; The persons which you speak of* in which we see that the Prepositions *to* and *of*, come after, and are separated from the relative *whom* and *which*, which they govern. In Spanish, however, the relative must immediately follow the Preposition by which it is governed; as *el caballero a quien escribí*, *la veracruz de quien hablé* &c.

# EXERCISES ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(1) He who has seen no better. The gentleman from whom I saw  
he who, he, no, better, he, good, none, he  
(2) Good and kind. The man whom we met, and whom we  
good, kind, kind, man, whom, we, met, and whom we  
(3) Whom I could derive any benefit from. The man from whom I could derive any benefit.  
whom, I, could, derive, any, benefit, from, the, man, from, whom, I, could, derive, any, benefit.  
(4) To whom you danced. The lady to whom you sent the  
to, whom, you, danced, the, lady, to, whom, you, sent, the  
(5) The man who wrote it. The house that you see them. These  
the, man, who, wrote, it, the, house, that, you, see, them, these  
(6) To whom you should refer in preference to those which you love  
to, whom, you, should, refer, in, preference, to, those, which, you, love  
(7) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(8) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(9) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(10) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(11) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(12) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(13) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(14) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(15) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(16) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(17) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(18) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(19) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in  
(20) The general who conducted the battle and that (was killed) in  
the, general, who, conducted, the, battle, and, that, (was, killed), in

ought to shun.  
debemos evitar.

The men we saw this morning.  
vimos mañana.

The law  
ley

which I [was speaking] of.  
hablaba

The idea which you referred to.  
[se referia]

## LECTURE XIX.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. INTERROGATIVE Pronouns are so called, from their being employed in asking questions. They are in fact relative Pronouns used interrogatively: Ex.

¿ Quien es ?

Who is it ?

¿ Cual es de vmd. ?

Which is yours ?

¿ Que es aquello ?

What is that ?

¿ Cuya es esta casa ?

Whose house is this ?

2. *Cuyo*, in interrogative sentences, is very frequently substituted by *de quien*; therefore we may with equal propriety say, ¿ *De quien es esta casa* ? or, ¿ *Cuya es esta casa* ?

3. The same Preposition which we employ in the interrogation is required in the answer; which Preposition must always be expressed in Spanish, although sometimes omitted in English: Ex.

¿ A' quien fué vmd. a ver ?—*a* su hermano,

Whom did you go to see ?—your brother.

¿ Con quien vino ?—*con* migo,

Whom did he come *with* ?—*with* me.

¿ En que viajaban ?—*en* coche,

What did they travel in ?—a coach.

*Note.*—Should the question be asked with *cuyo*, the Preposition *de* is required with the answer, in the same manner as if the question were put with *de quien*: Ex.

¿ Cuyo es este reloj ?—*de* mi padre,

Whose watch is this ?—my father's.

¿ Cuyas son estas llaves ?—*del* amo,

Whose keys are these ?—the master's.

### EXERCISE ON INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Who are those ladies ?  
son

Who is that gentleman ?  
es

Whom

[did you give it] to ?  
lo ha dado vmd.

Which of those carriages  
carroza

[do you like best] ?  
le gusta á vmd. mas

Which are your works? son	What say you to that? dice	What
[shall I take] with me? llevaré	Who is he? es	What [shall we buy]? compraremos
What [shall we do]? haremos.	Whose is this seal? es sello.	Whose is that house?
What hour is it? hora es	[What did you do it for?] para que lo hizo vmd.	—to save her. A salvar
[What was it painted on?] en que fué dibujado.	—on paper. papel.	[Whom do they fight against?] contra quien pelean
—the Turks. Turco.	Whose was the decision? fué	—the judge's. juez.

## LECTURE XX.

## INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

1. THESE Pronouns are so called, because they are employed in an indeterminate manner, with regard to the objects to which they refer; that is, they do not point them out, or identify them so precisely as demonstrative Pronouns do. The following is a list of indeterminate Pronouns, succeeded by rules for their proper employment.

Alguno, alguien,	Some, somebody, any body.
uno,	one.
algo,	something.
uno á otro,	one another, each other.
ambos or entrámbos,	both.
cada,	each.
cada uno,	every one.
otro,	other.
todo,	all.
mucho,	much.
varios,	several.
ninguno,	no one.
nadie,	nobody.
nada,	nothing.
ni uno, ni otro,	neither.
cualquiera,	whichever.
cualquiera cosa,	whatsoever.
quienquiera,	whoever.
fulano,	such a one.
fulano y zutano,	such and such a one.
cuanto,	how much.

2. These Pronouns are subject to a variation of number and gender, except *alguien*, *algo*, *cada*, *nadie*, and *nada*,

which are always used in the *singular* number, and are common to *both* genders : *ambos*, *entrámbos*, and *varios*, are always employed in the *plural* number, and are made to agree in *gender* with the Nouns to which they refer : *cualquiera* forms its plural by *cualesquiera*, and is common to *both* genders : *quienquiera* has, generally speaking, *no* plural, but is common to *both* genders ; *unos*, the plural of *uno*, signifies *some* ; *todos*, the plural of *todo*, means *every body* ; and *muchos*, the plural of *mucho*, means *many*.

# EMPLOYMENT OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

3. *Alguno* and *alguien* are equivalent to *somebody*, *some*, *some one*, *any body* ; or to *any one*, used interrogatively : Ex.

*Alguno* deberá saberlo,  
*Algunos* vendrán con vmd.  
¿ Lo ha dicho *alguien* ?

*Somebody* or *some one* must know it.  
*Some* will come with you.  
Did *any one* or *any body* say so ?

4. *Uno* means *one*, and *unos* *some* : Ex.

¿ Que puede hacer *uno* en tal  
caso ?  
*Unos* dicen que sí, otros dicen que  
no,

What can *one* do in such a case ?  
*Some* say yes, others say no.

5. *Algo* and *alguna cosa*, are equivalent to *something* ; or to *any thing*, used interrogatively : Ex.

Tengo *alguna cosa* que decirle,  
¿ Tiene *algo* para mí ?  
¿ Trae *algo* ?—sí, *algo* trae,

I have *something* to tell you.  
Has he *any thing* for me ?  
Does he bring *any thing* ?—yes,  
*something*.

Note.—When *algo* is employed as a Noun, it requires the Preposition *de* between it and the Noun or Pronoun following it : Ex.

¿ Sabe *algo de* mundo ?  
Sabe *algo de* él,

Does he know *any thing* of the  
world ?  
He knows *something* about him.

6. *Uno á otro* may be translated *one another*, or *each other* ; which, when preceded in English by any other Preposition but *to*, a corresponding Preposition in Spanish supplies the place of *á* : Ex.

Lo digeron *uno á otro*,  
Se aman *uno al otro*,  
Hablan *uno del otro*,

They told it *to one another*.  
They love *each other*.  
They speak of *one another*.

7. *Ambos*, or sometimes *entrámbos*, signify *both* : Ex.

*Ambos* vendrán,  
Me dió *ámbas* manos,  
Los vi *á entrámbos*,

They will *both* come.  
He gave me *both* hands.  
I saw them *both*.

8. *Cada* is equivalent to *each* or *every*, when either of these is immediately joined to a Noun : Ex.

*Cada* país tiene sus costumbres,  
Dí un peso por *cada* obra,

*Every* country has its customs.  
I gave a dollar for *each* work.

When *each* is not immediately joined to a Noun, it is translated *cada uno*, or *cada cual* : Ex.

*Cada uno* me costó un peso,  
Todos vendrán ahora, y *cada cual*  
con su propia historia,

*Each* cost me a dollar.  
Every one will come now, and *each*  
with his own story.

9. *Todo* signifies *all*, *every thing*, or *every one* : Ex.

*Todo* es vanidad,  
*Todo* tiene su fin,  
*Todos* lo saben,  
*Todas* las señoras,

*All* is vanity.  
*Every thing* has its end.  
*Every one* knows it.  
*All* the ladies.

10. *Otro* is equivalent to *another*, *other*, or *others* : Ex.

¿Tiene vmd. *otro* libro ?  
Tengo *otras* obras mejores, y *otras*  
que no son tan buenas,

Have you *another* book ?  
I have *other* better works, and *others*  
which are not so good.

*Note.*—*Others*, referring to persons, and used in a vague sense, is frequently translated *próximo* ; and *another's* is rendered *ageno* : Ex.

Debíamos amar al *próximo*, como  
á nosotros mismos,  
No codicies el bien *ageno*,

We should love *others* as we do  
ourselves.  
Do not covet *another's* wealth.

11. *Mucho* is equivalent to *much*, and *muchos* to *many* : Ex.

Tiene *mucho* dinero, pero no *mu-*  
*cho* juicio,  
*Muchos* lo dicen,

He has *much* money, but not much  
sense.  
*Many* say so.

12. *Varios* means *several* or *various* : Ex.

He hablado con *varios* de su pa-  
recer,  
Había allí *varias* señoras,  
Corrían *varios* rumores,

I have spoken to *several* of his opi-  
nion.  
There were *several* ladies there.  
*Various* rumours were afloat.

13. *Ninguno* signifies *none*, *not one*, or *not any* : Ex.

*Ninguno* de ellos vino,  
No he leído *ninguna* de estas  
obras,

*None* of them, or *not one* of them  
came.  
I have *not* read *any* of these works.

14. *Nadie* is equivalent to *nobody*, or *not any one* : Ex.

No he visto á *nadie*,  
No se lo dé vmd. á *nadie*,

I have seen *nobody*.  
Do not give it to *any one*.

15. *Nada* means *nothing*, or *not any thing* : Ex.

No hay *nada* que temer,  
No dijo *nada*,

There is *nothing* to fear.  
He did not say *any thing*.

*Note*.—When *nada* is employed as a Noun, it requires the Preposition *de* between it and the following word : Ex.

No hay *nada de nuevo*,      There is *nothing new*.

Observe also that when *nada* is used as a Noun, if there be an Adjective referring to it, the Adjective must be put in the masculine gender : Ex.

*Nada* hay tan cierto,      Nothing is so certain.

16. *Ni uno, ni otro*, may be translated *neither*, or *neither one nor the other* : Ex.

*Ni uno ni otro* me gusta,  
No me acomodan *ni unos ni otros*,

I like *neither one nor the other*.  
*Neither* of them suit me.

17. *Cualquiera* is equivalent to *whichever*, or *whichever* : Ex.

*Cualquiera* que vmd. guste,  
*Cualesquiera* que vengan primero,

*Whichever* you please.  
*Whichever* of them should come first.

18. *Cualquiera cosa* may be translated *whatever*, or *whatsoever* : Ex.

*Cualquiera cosa* que diga,  
*Cualquiera cosa* que hicieren,

*Whatever* he may say.  
*Whatsoever* they may do.

*Note*.—Some writers frequently drop the final letter of *cualquiera* and *cualesquiera* ; but the retention or omission of it is a mere matter of taste.

19. *Quienquiera* is equivalent to *whoever*, *whosoever*, and *whomsoever* : Ex.

*Quienquiera* que vaya,  
*De quienquiera* que vmd. hable,

*Whoever* or *whosoever* should go.  
Of *whomsoever* you may speak.

Observe that when *cualquiera*, *cualquiera cosa*, or *quienquiera* is followed by a Verb in the sentence, the relative *que* must always be expressed in Spanish before the Verb.



20. *Fulano*, and *fulano y Zutano*: the former expression means *such a one*, and the latter, *such and such a one*: Ex.

El señor *fulano* le dijo que—

Vmd. dijo que *fulano y Zutano* ya lo sabían,

Mr. *such a one* told him that—

You said that *such and such a one* already knew it.

21. *Cuanto* means *how much*, and *cuantas*, *how many*: Ex.

¿Cuanto quiere vmd.?

No sé cuantas veces,

*How much* do you want?

I do not know *how many* times.

### EXERCISE ON INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

Has (1) any body come (2)? ha venido.	Let (1) some one go (2). que vaya.	I am estoy
waiting for somebody. esperando á	They are some of his friends. son	Can puede
any one [be ignorant of it?] ignorarle.	One is (2) not (1) certain of está cierto	living vivir
till to-morrow. hasta mañana.	[Have you bought] any thing for me? ha comprado vmd.	
[Have you sent her] any thing? le ha enviado vmd.	He has given me something for you. ha dado	
Does the post (2) bring (1) any thing new? correo trae	They communicate nuevo. comunican	
their ideas to one another. —	Their interests are connected with each interés están enlazado	
other. Both said so. [lo digeron]	I gave them both what they deserved. [les dí á]	merecían.
We revised each paragraph revisámos párrafo	separately. separadamente.	Every plant has its planta tiene
virtue. Every one should think for himself. debía pensar	All the world. mundo.	
Every one applauded him. aplaudieron	He can do every thing. sabe [hacer de]	
Every celestial body has its purpose. cuerpo tiene	Every thing that he said. designio. dijo.	
Give me another pen. dé	The misfortunes of another (man) desgracia	
should be a warning to us. [debía servirnos de escarmiento.]	The mines of Peru produce much mina — producen	
gold and silver. He has many friends. oro plata. tiene	Many [would rather lose] perderían antes	
their life than their honour. —	[There were] several persons of distinction. había persona —	
We sometimes have friends in [algunas veces] tenemos	prosperity, and none in prosperidad	

adversity.	[There is not] any one of them there.	No promises
adversidad.	no hay	allí. promesa
could tempt him.	No one knows it.	[I am not acquainted with]
pudieron tentar	sabe	no conozco á
any body in that town.	Nothing [shall be said] about it.	Nothing
ciudad.	se dirá	de
should hinder us from speaking the truth.	Neither has done his	
debía impedir	decir	ha hecho
duty.	Neither deserves praise.	Whoever it [may be.]
deber.	merece elogio.	A sea. Of
whomsoever you [may speak.]	Whatever [he should say.]	Give
hable.	diga	
me whichever you please.	Whatever situation.	Whatever
guste.	colocacion.	
rank.	Such orders [could never have been issued] by such a	
rango.	órden	jamás pudieran ser dadas
general.	Such was his conduct.	[Do you know] what
	fué	conducta. sabe vmd.
such-a-one (2) said (1).	[Why do you wish] that such and	
dijo	porque quiere vmd.	
such-a-one [should know it] ?	How many misfortunes awaited	
lo sepan.	contratiempo aguardaban	
her !	How much money [do you require ?]	
	dinero necesita vmd.	

## LECTURE XXI.

## ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF VERBS.

1. THE pupil is referred to Lec. 4, Par. 8, for the definition of this part of speech. It is now to be observed, that there are four species or kinds of Verbs, which are distinguished by the names *auxiliary*, *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*.

2. The *auxiliary* Verbs in Spanish, are *haber*, to have ; and *ser*, and *estar*, to be. They are called auxiliaries, from their peculiar office in forming the compound tenses of other Verbs.

3. A Verb is called *active*, when the action described by it passes from one person or thing to another person or thing ; for which reason it is also called *transitive* : thus, *to strike*, *to hate*, *to buy*, *to write*, *to see*, *to love*, &c., are *active* Verbs ; because the action described by them, proceeding from the

do. Those that cultivate learning should be encouraged. Happy they  
cultivan ciencias deben ser protegido.

who are virtuous. I prefer that which you have, to those which I bought.  
que son virtuosos. prefiero que tiene compré

Those who speak ill of her do not know her. He that is wise speaks  
hablan mal ^ conocen que es sabio habla

when it is necessary; but he that only [presumes to be so] speaks  
cuando necesario mas solo lo presumo

incessantly.  
incesantemente.

## LECTURE XVIII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. RELATIVE Pronouns are such as refer, or relate to some person or thing in a sentence, which person or thing so referred to, is called the *antecedent*; for instance, *The man who spoke to you*; *The bird which you killed*; *The ship that was lost*: In these examples, *who*, *which*, and *that*, are relative Pronouns, and relate or refer to the antecedent Nouns *man*, *bird* and *ship*.

2. *Who* becomes *whose* in the genitive case, and *whom* in the accusative case: *which* and *that* are indeclinable in regard to case; and neither of the three, vary on account of gender or number.

3. Relative Pronouns in Spanish, do not vary their form on account of case; but admit the same Prepositions as personal Pronouns do, in the several cases. There are four relative Pronouns in Spanish, namely, *quien*, who; *cual*, which; *que*, who, which, or that; and *cuyo*, whose, or of which.

4. *Quien* and *cual*, have a plural termination, as *quienes*, *cuales*; but they are common to both genders. *Quien*, refers to persons only, and *cual*, both to persons and things: Ex.

El es quien lo tiene,

Los señores con quienes hablaba vmd.,

Las señoras á quienes or á las cuales envié el recado,

Es una ciencia de la cual tengo muy poco conocimiento.

It is he who has it.

The gentlemen with whom you were speaking.

The ladies to whom I sent the message.

It is a science of which I have but little knowledge.

*Note.*—Some classical authors, have employed *quien* in reference to *things*, and have also used it in its singular termination, in referring to a plural Noun; but this practice is by no means sanctioned, nor general.

5. We sometimes see *quien* and *cual*, used in the sense of *some*, and *others*: Ex.

Quien se salvó á nado, <i>quien</i> en lanchas,	<i>Some</i> saved themselves by swimming, <i>others</i> in boats.
Peleaban <i>cual</i> con cuchillos, <i>cual</i> con espadas,	<i>Some</i> fought with knives, <i>others</i> with swords.

6. *Cual*, in exclamatory sentences, means *how*, or *in what a state*, or *condition*: Ex.

¡ *Cual* le hallé !      How wretched, or in what a wretched state I found him !

7. *Que*, is common to both numbers and genders, and is applied to persons and things: Ex.

El hombre <i>que</i> vino,	The man <i>who</i> (or <i>that</i> ) came.
Las mugeres <i>que</i> vimos,	The women <i>whom</i> ( <i>that</i> or <i>which</i> ) we saw.
Los caballos <i>que</i> vmd. compró,	The horses <i>which</i> (or <i>that</i> ) you bought.
Las cosas á <i>que</i> vmd. se refiere,	The things to <i>which</i> you allude.

*Note.*—The second example, might be also thus expressed, *Las mugeres á quienes vimos*; but it is preferable, when *whom* is not preceded by a Preposition, to translate it *que*.

8. When *who* is repeated in a sentence, it may be translated either *que*, or *el cual*: Ex.

El hombre <i>que</i> partió ayer, y <i>que</i> or <i>el cual</i> fué asesinado,	The man <i>who</i> started yesterday, and <i>who</i> was murdered.
---	--

Also if *whom* be repeated in a sentence, it may be either translated *á quien*, or *al cual*: Ex.

El hombre á <i>quien</i> hablamos, y á <i>quien</i> , or <i>al cual</i> dimos la noticia,	The man to <i>whom</i> we spoke, and to <i>whom</i> we gave the news.
---	---

9. *Cuyo*, partakes of the nature of both a relative and a possessive Pronoun; as a relative, it relates to an antecedent, and as a possessive Pronoun it refers to the person or thing possessed; in which latter capacity it agrees in number and gender with the person or thing possessed, and not with the possessor: Ex.

El hombre <i>cuyo</i> sombrero es este,	The man <i>whose</i> hat this is.
Los autores <i>cuyas</i> obras he leído,	The authors <i>whose</i> works I have read.

10. Relatives are expressed in Spanish, where they are frequently omitted in English : Ex.

La casa que fuimos á ver,      The house we went to see.  
Las instituciones de que hablaron,      The institutions they spoke of.

In each of these sentences in English, there is a relative understood : and the sentences, to be complete, should be thus expressed ; *The house which we went to see ; The institutions of which they spoke.*

11. The relative in English, does not invariably follow the Preposition by which it is governed ; as in the examples, *The gentleman whom I wrote to ; The persons which you speak of :* in which we see that the Prepositions *to* and *of*, come after, and are separated from the relatives *whom* and *which*, which they govern. In Spanish, however, the relative must immediately follow the Preposition by which it is governed ; as *El caballero á quien escribí, Las personas de quienes habla Vmd.*

#### EXERCISE ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

It is he who has sent us here.      The gentlemen from whom I have  
es      ha enviado aquí.      he  
received so much kindness. The men whom we met, and whom we  
recibido      bondad.      encontramos  
questioned. Where is the man from whom I could derive any benefit?  
preguntamos. donde está,      podría sacar      provecho  
The lady with whom you danced. The ladies to whom you sent the  
bailó.      envié  
drawings. The man who wrote it. The house that you see there. These  
dibujo.      escribió      ve allí.  
are the works that you should read, in preference to those which you have  
obra      debía leer      con preferencia      ha  
selected. The general who conducted the battle and that [was killed] in  
elegido.      dirigia      batalla      murió en  
it. A man that spends his life in idleness, dies miserable. Give it to  
pasa      vida      ociosidad      muere      dé  
whom you please. Virgil whose works we admire. It is an evil, the  
guste. Virgilio      admiramos. es      mal  
cause of which is unknown. The book, the owner of which I am.  
causa      es desconocida.      dueño      soy.  
Milton, whose sublime genius is so universally known. Lope de Vega,  
genio es      universalmente conocido.  
whose ardent spirit knew (2) no (1) bounds. Idleness is a vice we  
ardiente espíritu conocia      limite. ociosidad

ought to shun. debemos evitar.	The men we saw this morning. vimos mañana.	The law ley
which I [was speaking] of. hablaba	The idea which you referred to. [se referia]	

## LECTURE XIX.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. INTERROGATIVE Pronouns are so called, from their being employed in asking questions. They are in fact relative Pronouns used interrogatively: Ex.

¿ Quien es ?	Who is it ?
¿ Cual es de vmd. ?	Which is yours ?
¿ Que es aquello ?	What is that ?
¿ Cuya es esta casa ?	Whose house is this ?

2. *Cuyo*, in interrogative sentences, is very frequently substituted by *de quien*; therefore we may with equal propriety say, ¿ *De quien es esta casa* ? or, ¿ *Cuya es esta casa* ?

3. The same Preposition which we employ in the interrogation is required in the answer; which Preposition must always be expressed in Spanish, although sometimes omitted in English: Ex.

¿ A' quien fué vmd. a ver ?—a su hermano,	Whom did you go to see ?—your brother.
¿ Con quien vino ?—conmigo,	Whom did he come with ?—with me.
¿ En que viajaban ?—en coche,	What did they travel in ?—a coach.

*Note.*—Should the question be asked with *cuyo*, the Preposition *de* is required with the answer, in the same manner as if the question were put with *de quien*: Ex.

¿ Cuyo es este reloj ?—de mi padre,	Whose watch is this ?—my father's.
¿ Cuyas son estas llaves ?—del amo,	Whose keys are these ?—the master's.

## EXERCISE ON INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Who are those ladies ? son	Who is that gentleman ? es	Whom es
[did you give it] to ? lo ha dado vmd.	Which of those carriages carroza	[do you like best] ? le gusta á vmd. mas

Which are your works? son	What say you to that? dice	What? dice
[shall I take] with me? llevaré	Who is he? es	What [shall we buy]? compraremos
What [shall we do]? haremos.	Whose is this seal? es sello.	Whose is that house?
What hour is it? hora es	[What did you do it for?] para que lo hizo vmd.	—to save her. A salvar
[What was it painted on?] en que fué dibujado.	—on paper. papel.	[Whom do they fight against?] contra quien pelean
—the Turks. Turco.	Whose was the decision? fué	—the judge's. juez.

## LECTURE XX.

## INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

1. THESE Pronouns are so called, because they are employed in an indeterminate manner, with regard to the objects to which they refer; that is, they do not point them out, or identify them so precisely as demonstrative Pronouns do. The following is a list of indeterminate Pronouns, succeeded by rules for their proper employment.

Alguno, alguien,	Some, somebody, any body.
uno,	one.
algo,	something.
uno á otro,	one another, each other.
ámbos or entrámbos,	both.
cada,	each.
cada uno,	every one.
otro,	other.
todo,	all.
mucho,	much.
varios,	several.
ninguno,	no one.
nadie,	nobody.
nada,	nothing.
ni uno, ni otro,	neither.
cualquiera,	whichever.
cualquiera cosa,	whatsoever.
quienquiera,	whosoever.
fulano,	such a one.
fulano y Zutano,	such and such a one.
cuanto,	how much.

2. These Pronouns are subject to a variation of number and gender, except *alguien*, *algo*, *cada*, *nadie*, and *nada*,

which are always used in the *singular* number, and are common to *both* genders : *ambos*, *entrámbos*, and *varios*, are always employed in the *plural* number, and are made to agree in *gender* with the Nouns to which they refer : *cualquiera* forms its plural by *cualesquiera*, and is common to *both* genders : *quienquiera* has, generally speaking, *no* plural, but is common to *both* genders ; *unos*, the plural of *uno*, signifies *some* ; *todos*, the plural of *todo*, means *every body* ; and *muchos*, the plural of *mucho*, means *many*.

# EMPLOYMENT OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

3. *Alguno* and *alguien* are equivalent to *somebody*, *some*, *some one*, *any body* ; or to *any one*, used interrogatively : Ex.

*Alguno* deberá saberlo,  
*Algunos* vendrán con vmd.  
¿ Lo ha dicho *alguien* ?

*Somebody* or *some one* must know it.  
*Some* will come with you.  
*Did any one* or *any body* say so ?

4. *Uno* means *one*, and *unos* *some* : Ex.

¿ Que puede hacer *uno* en tal  
caso ?  
*Unos* dicen que sí, otro : dicen que  
no,

What can *one* do in such a case ?  
*Some* say yes, others say no.

5. *Algo* and *alguna cosa*, are equivalent to *something* ; or to *any thing*, used interrogatively : Ex.

Tengo *alguna cosa* que decirle,  
¿ Tiene *algo* para mí ?  
¿ Trae *algo* ?—sí, *algo* trae,

I have *something* to tell you.  
Has he *any thing* for me ?  
Does he bring *any thing* ?—yes,  
*something*.

*Note*.—When *algo* is employed as a Noun, it requires the Preposition *de* between it and the Noun or Pronoun following it : Ex.

¿ Sabe *algo de* mundo ?  
Sabe *algo de* él,

Does he know *any thing* of the  
world ?  
He knows *something* about him.

6. *Uno á otro* may be translated *one another*, or *each other* ; which, when preceded in English by any other Preposition but *to*, a corresponding Preposition in Spanish supplies the place of *á* : Ex.

Lo digeron *uno á otro*,  
Se aman *uno al otro*,  
Hablan *uno del otro*,

They told it *to one another*.  
They love *each other*.  
They speak of *one another*.



7. *Ambos*, or sometimes *entrámbos*, signify *both* : Ex.

*Ambos* vendrán,  
Me dió *ámbas* manos,  
Los vi á *entrámbos*,

They will *both* come.  
He gave me *both* hands.  
I saw them *both*.

8. *Cada* is equivalent to *each* or *every*, when either of these is immediately joined to a Noun : Ex.

*Cada* país tiene sus costumbres,  
Dí un peso por *cada* obra,

*Every* country has its customs.  
I gave a dollar for *each* work.

When *each* is not immediately joined to a Noun, it is translated *cada uno*, or *cada cual* : Ex.

*Cada uno* me costó un peso,  
Todos vendrán ahora, y *cada cual*  
con su propia historia,

*Each* cost me a dollar.  
Every one will come now, and *each*  
with his own story.

9. *Todo* signifies *all*, *every thing*, or *every one* : Ex.

*Todo* es vanidad,  
*Todo* tiene su fin,  
*Todos* lo saben,  
*Todas* las señoras,

*All* is vanity.  
*Every thing* has its end.  
*Every one* knows it.  
*All* the ladies.

10. *Otro* is equivalent to *another*, *other*, or *others* : Ex.

¿Tiene vmd. *otro* libro ?  
Tengo *otras* obras mejores, y *otras*  
que no son tan buenas,

Have you *another* book ?  
I have *other* better works, and *others*  
which are not so good.

*Note.*—*Others*, referring to persons, and used in a vague sense, is frequently translated *próximo* ; and *another's* is rendered *ageno* : Ex.

Debíamos amar al *próximo*, como  
á nosotros mismos,  
No codicies el bien *ageno*,

We should love *others* as we do  
ourselves.  
Do not covet *another's* wealth.

11. *Mucho* is equivalent to *much*, and *muchos* to *many* : Ex.

Tiene *mucho* dinero, pero no *mu-*  
*cho* juicio,  
*Muchos* lo dicen,

He has *much* money, but not much  
sense.  
*Many* say so.

12. *Varios* means *several* or *various* : Ex.

He hablado con *varios* de su pa-  
recer,  
Había allí *varias* señoras,  
Corrían *varios* rumores,

I have spoken to *several* of his opi-  
nion.  
There were *several* ladies there.  
*Various* rumours were afloat.

13. *Ninguno* signifies *none*, *not one*, or *not any* : Ex.

*Ninguno* de ellos vino,  
No he leído *ninguna* de estas  
obras,

*None* of them, or *not one* of them  
came.  
I have *not* read *any* of these works.

14. *Nadie* is equivalent to *nobody*, or *not any one* : Ex.

No he visto á *nadie*,  
No se lo dé vmd. á *nadie*,

I have seen *nobody*.  
Do not give it to *any one*.

15. *Nada* means *nothing*, or *not any thing* : Ex.

No hay *nada* que temer,  
No dijo *nada*,

There is *nothing* to fear.  
He did not say *any thing*.

*Note.*—When *nada* is employed as a Noun, it requires the Preposition *de* between it and the following word : Ex.

No hay *nada de nuevo*,

There is *nothing new*.

Observe also that when *nada* is used as a Noun, if there be an Adjective referring to it, the Adjective must be put in the masculine gender : Ex.

*Nada* hay tan cierto,

Nothing is so certain.

16. *Ni uno, ni otro*, may be translated *neither*, or *neither one nor the other* : Ex.

*Ni uno ni otro* me gusta,  
No me acomodan *ni unos ni otros*,

I like *neither one nor the other*.  
*Neither* of them suit me.

17. *Cualquiera* is equivalent to *whichever*, or *whichever* : Ex.

*Cualquiera* que vmd. guste,  
*Cualesquiera* que vengan primero,

*Whichever* you please.  
*Whichever* of them should come first.

18. *Cualquiera cosa* may be translated *whatever*, or *whatsoever* : Ex.

*Cualquiera cosa* que diga,  
*Cualquiera cosa* que hicieren,

*Whatever* he may say.  
*Whatsoever* they may do.

*Note.*—Some writers frequently drop the final letter of *cualquiera* and *cualesquiera* ; but the retention or omission of it is a mere matter of taste.

19. *Quienquiera* is equivalent to *whoever*, *whosoever*, and *whomsoever* : Ex.

*Quienquiera* que vaya,  
De *quienquiera* que vmd. hable,

*Whoever* or *whosoever* should go.  
Of *whomsoever* you may speak.

Observe that when *cualquiera*, *cualquiera cosa*, or *quienquiera* is followed by a Verb in the sentence, the relative *que* must always be expressed in Spanish before the Verb.

20. *Fulano*, and *fulano y zutano*: the former expression means *such a one*, and the latter, *such and such a one*: Ex.

El señor *fulano* le dijo que—

Vmd. dijo que *fulano y zutano* ya lo sabían,

Mr. *such a one* told him that—

You said that *such and such a one* already knew it.

21. *Cuanto* means *how much*, and *cuantas*, *how many*: Ex.

¿Cuanto quiere vmd.?

No sé cuantas veces,

*How much* do you want?

I do not know *how many* times.

### EXERCISE ON INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

Has (1) any body come (2)?	Let (1) some one go (2).	I am
ha venido.	que vaya.	estoy
waiting for somebody.	They are some of his friends.	Can
esperando á	son	puede
any one [be ignorant of it?]	One is (2) not (1) certain of living	
ignorarle.	está cierto vivir	
till to-morrow.	[Have you bought] any thing for me?	
hasta mañana.	ha comprado vmd.	
[Have you sent her] any thing?	He has given me something for you.	
le ha enviado vmd.	ha dado	
Does the post (2) bring (1) any thing new?	They communicate	
correo trae	nuevo. comunican	
their ideas to one another.	Their interests are connected with each	
other.	interés están enlazado	
Both said so.	I gave them both what they deserved.	
[lo digeron]	[les di á]	merecian.
We revised each paragraph separately.	Every plant has its	
revisámos párrafo separadamente.	planta tiene	
virtue.	Every one should think for himself.	All the world.
	debía pensar	mundo.
Every one applauded him.	He can do every thing.	
aplaudieron	sabe [hacer de]	
Every celestial body has its purpose.	Every thing that he said.	
cuerpo tiene designio.	dijo.	
Give me another pen.	The misfortunes of another (man)	
dé	desgracia	
should be a warning to us.	The mines of Peru produce much	
[debía servirnos de escarmiento.]	mina — producen	
gold and silver.	He has many friends.	Many [would rather lose]
oro plata. tiene		perderían antes
their life than their honour.	[There were] several persons of distinction.	
	había persona	
We sometimes have friends in prosperity, and none in		
[algunas veces] tenemos	prosperidad	

adversary.	[There is not]	any one of them there.	No promises
adversidad.	no hay	allí.	promesa
could tempt him.	No one knows it.	[I am not acquainted with]	
pudieron tentar	sabe	no conozco á	
any body in that town.	Nothing [shall be said]	about it.	Nothing
ciudad.	se dirá	de	
should hinder us from speaking the truth.	Neither has done his		
debía impedir	decir	verdad.	ha hecho
duty.	Neither deserves praise.	Whoever it [may be.]	Of
deber.	merece elogio.	^ sea.	
whomsoever you [may speak.]	Whatever [he should say.]	Give	
hable.	diga		
me whichever you please.	Whatever situation.	Whatever	
guste.	colocacion.		
rank.	Such orders [could never have been issued] by such a		
rango.	órden	jamás pudieran ser dadas	
general.	Such was his conduct.	[Do you know] what	
	fué	sabe vmd.	
such-a-one (2) said (1).	[Why do you wish] that such and		
dijo	porque quiere vmd.		
such-a-one [should know it] ?	How many misfortunes awaited		
lo sepan.	contratiempo aguardaban		
her !	How much money [do you require ?]		
	dinero necesita vmd.		

## LECTURE XXI.

## ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF VERBS.

1. THE pupil is referred to Lec. 4, Par. 8, for the definition of this part of speech. It is now to be observed, that there are four species or kinds of Verbs, which are distinguished by the names *auxiliary*, *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*.

2. The *auxiliary* Verbs in Spanish, are *haber*, to have; and *ser*, and *estar*, to be. They are called auxiliaries, from their peculiar office in forming the compound tenses of other Verbs.

3. A Verb is called *active*, when the action described by it passes from one person or thing to another person or thing; for which reason it is also called *transitive*: thus, *to strike*, *to hate*, *to buy*, *to write*, *to see*, *to love*, &c., are *active* Verbs; because the action described by them, proceeding from the

person or thing that acts (which is called the nominative or agent of the Verb), may pass over to a person or thing acted upon ; that is, on which the energy of the Verb falls ; or the person or thing affected by the Verb ; or in other words, the object of the Verb : for instance, *William struck Henry* ; *They hate vice* ; in which examples, *William* and *They*, are the *agents*, or *actors*, or *nominatives* of the Verbs *struck* and *hate* ; and *Henry* and *vice* being the person and thing acted upon, or affected by the Verbs, are the *objects* of these Verbs.

4. Active Verbs become *reflective* when their agent and object are both the same person or thing ; thus *I see myself* ; *He loves himself* ; in each of which examples it is observed, that the action described by the Verb, does not affect any object beyond the actor. When there is a *reciprocity* of action between two or more persons or things, the Verb denoting the action is called a *reciprocal Verb* : for instance, *We see each other* ; *They love one another*.

5. A Verb is called *passive* when it describes the suffering or the receiving of an action by the person or thing to which its influence is directed. All active Verbs become passive, when employed with the Verb *to be* ; thus, *Henry was struck by William* ; *Vice is hated by the virtuous*. And here we see that the Verbs *to be struck*, and *to be hated*, express a *passiveness* or *suffering*, on account of which, they are called *passive Verbs*.

6. A *neuter Verb* is neither transitive nor passive. By a neuter Verb something is represented as *existing* or *being*, denoting only the *state* of the agent of the Verb : the meaning of the Verb does not pass over to any other person or thing ; for which reason neuter Verbs have also been called *intransitive*. *To live, to sleep, to sit, to walk*, are neuter Verbs, because they merely denote the state of being of their agents : for the same reason *to be*, independently of its capacity as an auxiliary Verb, is likewise a neuter Verb.

To distinguish a *neuter* from an *active Verb*, we have only to put a *Noun* after it, and if it makes sense with the *Noun*, it is *active* ; if not, it is *neuter*.

Although a neuter Verb is not called *active*, still there are some neuter Verbs that denote a *visible action* : such as *to go, to come*, and many others. But the action denoted by these is not *transitive*, for it remains with their agents. This kind of Verbs has been called *active intransitive*.

There are some Verbs, which according to the manner in which they are employed, are sometimes *active*, and at others *neuter* : thus, *to run* is *active* when we say, *To run a race* ;

because the act of running passes over to an object, which is *race* : but it is neuter when we say *He runs fast*, because the act of running remains with the agent, and admits of no objective case after it.

7. Verbs are again subdivided into *Regular*, *Irregular*, *Impersonal* and *Defective*.

8. *Regular* Verbs, are all those which are conjugated throughout every mode and tense, conformably to a model, which is considered as a standard for all regular Verbs. In Lec. 24, the Verbs *hablar*, to speak, *temer* to fear, and *sufrir*, to suffer, are given as models for conjugating all the regular Verbs in the Spanish Language.

9. *Irregular* Verbs are those which deviate in some instances from the general standard for conjugating regular Verbs. In Lec. 25, are given lists of all the irregular Verbs in the Spanish Language ; pointing out in what their irregularity consists. On this subject, the student cannot bestow too much attention, for unless he be perfectly acquainted with every irregularity peculiar to these Verbs, he will inevitably find himself much embarrassed in the course of his translations.

10. *Impersonal* Verbs are those which are used in the *third* person only : thus, *to rain*, *to dawn*, *to be necessary*, besides many others, are impersonal Verbs. These Verbs are called impersonal, because in their employment, there appears no apparent Noun or Pronoun belonging to them, acting as their agent ; for when we say, *it rains*, we do not precisely express *who* or *what* it is that rains, and we therefore give to the Verb an agent in the third person and neuter gender. See the conjugation of impersonal Verbs, Lec. 25, Par. 4.

11. *Defective* Verbs, are those which are only used in certain tenses, and with certain persons ; because their peculiar meaning does not admit them to be employed with every tense and person. See the conjugation of defective Verbs, Lec. 25, Par. 7.

12. We have now four more things connected with Verbs to consider, namely the *conjugation*, the *modes*, the *tenses* or *times*, and the *number* and *person*.

#### THE CONJUGATION.

13. By conjugation we are to understand, all the various changes that a Verb undergoes in the several modes, tenses, persons and numbers. Conjugation, in other words, is the uniting under one view, all the various changes which a Verb

admits. These variations are very numerous in Verbs in the Spanish, and in most foreign languages, comparatively to what they are in English Verbs; and consequently become a matter of the greatest importance to attend to.

#### THE MODES.

14. *Mode* or *Mood*, which signifies *manner*, expresses the intention of the mind concerning the manner in which we use the Verb. There are four modes, namely, the *Infinitive*, the *Indicative*, the *Subjunctive*, and the *Imperative*.

15. The *Infinitive* mode, which is the root of the Verb, represents the act, or state of being, in a general and unlimited manner, without any reference to time, number or person: thus the Verbs *hablar*, *comer*, and *permitir* (to speak, to eat, to permit), in the manner here expressed, do not denote when, or in what manner, the actions represented by them, take place, nor who acts as their agent: to determine all which, a Verb in the infinitive mode must have an antecedent, or as it is sometimes called, a governing Verb: Ex.

*Voy á hablar,*  
No *puedo* comer,  
No *quiere* permitir,

*I am going to speak.*  
*I cannot eat.*  
*He will not permit.*

In these examples, it is also seen, that the infinitive in both languages is sometimes preceded by a Preposition, and sometimes not. To know when they require the Preposition, and when not, is a subject that will be referred to in the government of Verbs, Lec. 26.

*Note.*—The Spanish infinitive is frequently seen to partake of the nature of a Noun, and becomes the nominative to another Verb: Ex.

*El estudiar* mucho a veces daña la salud,  
*El trabajar* con moderacion fortalece el cuerpo,

Too much *study* or *studying*, is sometimes hurtful to health.  
*To work* moderately strengthens the body.

16. The *Indicative* mode, is so called, because it simply *indicates*, or points out the action or state of being, in a positive and unconditional manner, and depends on no other Verb to determine its signification; Ex.

Yo hablo,  
El come,  
Nosotros permitimos,

*I speak.*  
*He eats.*  
*We permit.*

It does not always occur, that the same mode and tense are employed in both languages: it frequently happens, that when one particular mode or tense is required in English, a different one is employed in Spanish. This subject will be treated on in Lec. 26. Par. 10.

17. The *subjunctive* mode, makes no complete sense of itself; but represents an action under *condition, doubt, wish or supposition*. A Verb in this mode, depends on the antecedent Verb, to render its signification complete: the antecedent Verb is sometimes expressed and sometimes only understood. All conditional phrases suppose two propositions, the one *principal*, the other *subordinate*. The principal proposition precedes the Conjunction, and the subordinate, is governed by the Conjunction: Ex.

**Leería continuamente, si tuviera buenos libros.**      **I would read continually, if I had good books.**

In this example *leeria continuamente*, I would read continually, is the principal proposition, to which *si tuviera buenos libros*. If I had good books, is subordinate.

It is not absolutely necessary that the principal proposition should always precede the subordinate: for instance, the foregoing sentence may in both languages, be altered in its construction, thus,

**Si tuviera buenos libros, leería continuamente.**

If I had good books, I would read continually.

But notwithstanding this inversion, the Verb governed by the Conjunction, is still subordinate to the Verb in the principal proposition.

18. The *Imperative* mode, is that used for *commanding* or *exhorting*: **Ex.**

Venga vmd. temprano,  
Suplico á vmd. me lo diga.,

**Come soon.**  
**I request you to tell it to me.**

Very little further explanation is required with regard to this mode, except that when it is employed in English in a *negative* sense, or to *forbid*, the present tense of the subjunctive mode, preceded by a negative particle, is used in Spanish, instead: Ex.

**Suplico á vmd. que no venga,  
No me hable vmd.,**

**I entreat you not to come,  
Do not speak to me.**



## THE TENSES.

19. The meaning of the word *tense*, is simply *time*, and as all actions or states of being, must necessarily be limited to time, they are said to be either in the *present tense*, the *past tense* or the *future tense*. These are the three grand divisions of time—the past, the present and the future. In the present tense, the meaning of the Verb is confined to the present time, and denotes the action, or state of being represented by the Verb, to be taking place at the time of expressing it; as *I write, he sleeps, they travel*. In the past tense, the action, or state of being, is represented as having taken place or to have already commenced; *I wrote, he slept, they travelled*. And, in the future tense, the action or state of being is represented as not having taken place yet, but which it is expected will take place at a time to come, as *I shall write, he will sleep, they will travel*.

20. Each of these three grand divisions of time, has by Grammarians been subdivided, in order to denote the time of being or action, with greater minuteness and precision.

These subdivisions of time, are what are called the *compound tenses*. They are so called, because to express them, more than one word is required in English and Spanish, and in most of the modern languages: for instance, *I have written*, is the *compound* of the *present* tense of the Verb *to write*: *He had slept*, is the *compound* of the *past* tense of the Verb *to sleep*: and *they will have travelled*, is the *compound* of the *future* tense of the Verb *to travel*. We here see, that each of these tenses, is formed by compounding the auxiliary Verb *to have*, with the *participle past* of the Verb, by which we express the action or state of being. Verbs in the Latin language, admit of such great variety in their terminations, that each of these compound tenses, is formed by a single word; and therefore, instead of being called compound tenses, they have each a distinct name. Many of the writers of modern Grammars, have adopted Latin names in a variety of forms, to apply to the several tenses; and indeed almost every Grammarian has made use of different names to designate them; but the foregoing disposition of the tenses, has been considered more comprehensive, and less tedious to the student\*.

---

\* The names of Latin origin that are usually employed to designate the several tenses, are as follows,

<i>Present</i> , I write.	<i>Preterpluperfect</i> , I had written.
<i>Preterimperf.</i> I wrote.	<i>Future Imperfect</i> , I shall or will write.
<i>Preterperf.</i> I have written.	<i>Future Perfect</i> , I shall or will have written.

### OF NUMBER AND PERSON.

21. There are two numbers in Verbs, the singular and the plural. All Verbs must agree in number and person with their agent, or nominative case. If therefore a Verb has but one agent, the Verb must be placed in the singular number ; if it has more than one agent it must be placed in the plural number : For instance, in *I love, thou singest, the ship sails*, the Verbs are each in the singular number, because each has but one agent : But in *We see, you walk, the trees bud*, the Verbs are placed in the plural, because their agents are each of that number.

22. Every Verb must have a Noun or Pronoun belonging to it, for its agent ; for no action can be done without an agent to perform it. Sometimes however the agent is understood in the sentence, though not expressed.

23. Each number has *three persons*, namely, the first, the second, and the third. The *first* person is the person *that speaks* ; as *I read*, in the singular number, and *we read* in the plural : The *second* person is the person or thing *spoken to* ; as, *thou readest*, in the singular, and *you read* in the plural : and the *third* person, is the person or thing *spoken of* ; as, *he, she or it reads*, in the singular, and *they read* in the plural.

## LECTURE XXII.

### USE AND EMPLOYMENT OF THE TENSES.

#### PRESENT TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MODE.

1. THIS tense expresses the existing state of things, and what is being done, or taking place, at the present time : Ex.

Yo estoy bueno,	I am well.
El escribe,	He writes.
La virtud es amable,	Virtue is amiable.

It likewise expresses what we do habitually : Ex.

Estudio el Español,	I study Spanish.
Vmd. dibuja muy bien,	You draw very well.
Ellos se levantan muy tarde,	They rise very late.

This tense is sometimes formed with the participle active and the Verb to be; and, in a more forcible manner, denotes the action as occurring at the time of expressing it: Ex.

Estoy escribiendo,	I am writing.
Estamos leyendo,	We are reading.

The same construction is also made use of, to denote any action in a progressive state, though not actually in operation at the precise time of naming it: Ex.

Mi hermano <i>está viajando</i> por España,	My brother <i>is travelling</i> in Spain.
<i>Estoy escribiendo</i> una obra,	<i>I am writing</i> a work.

There is one thing more to be observed respecting the employment of the present tense, and is that there are three ways of employing it in English: as for instance, *I write*, *I am writing*, and *I do write*. The two former are also used in Spanish, as we have already seen; but the latter, with the auxiliary *do*, which is intended to add greater energy to the affirmation, does not admit of a literal translation in Spanish: instead of which, the Verb is pronounced with greater emphasis, or sometimes it is preceded by the affirmative particle *sí*, yes: Ex.

La <i>amo</i> apesar de cuanto me ha hecho,	<i>I do love</i> her, notwithstanding all that she has done to me.
¿Le conoce vmd.?— <i>Sí</i> , le <i>conozco</i> ,	Do you know him? <i>I do know</i> him.

Observe, that when the Verb *to do*, is used as a principal Verb, and not as an auxiliary, or as a sign, it is translated by the Verb *hacer*: Ex.

<i>Yo hago</i> lo que vmd. me dice,	<i>I do</i> what you tell me.
<i>Hizo</i> todo lo que pudo.	<i>He did</i> all he could.

The Verb *to do*, is also used as the sign of negative and interrogative sentences, for which see Verbs, used negatively and interrogatively. Lec. 25, Par. 8 and 9.

#### PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MODE.

2. This tense in Spanish, is divided into the *past imperfect*, and the *past perfect*; and as in English both are frequently expressed by the same word, learners of the Spanish language (and of most of the other continental languages) are frequently at a loss to know, which of the two forms of the verb to employ; as in translating from the English, they

must, in most cases, be guided by the meaning of the phrase, in order to determine whether the Verb be in the past *imperfect*, or the past *perfect* tense.

The principal and most general distinction that characterizes these two tenses, is, that a Verb in the past *imperfect*, denotes the action to be in a progressive state, or that it has some connexion with the present time, or to be taking place at a time, when another action was performing: whereas, a Verb in the past *perfect* tense, denotes the action to have completely gone by at some particular or stated period, having no connexion with the present time, nor reference to any other action. For instance, if I say, *Francis loved Isabel*, my hearer is in doubt whether that love has ceased, or continues to exist, or whether it existed at a period, when another circumstance having reference to it, was occurring. This doubt will be removed by continuing the sentence; as, *Francis loved Isabel, and still loves her*. Now we see, that the act of loving is in a state of progression, and is also connected with the present time; consequently *loved* is here in the past *imperfect* tense. In the following example, *Francis loved Isabel long before he married her*; although the act of loving may have no connexion with the present time, nevertheless it is in a progressive state, and therefore *loved* is likewise here in the past *imperfect* tense: and again, in, *Francis loved Isabel when he married her*, the act of loving is represented to have existed at the time of marriage; or it expresses an action present, with respect to a time past, and therefore *loved*, is here also in the past *imperfect* tense. But in the sentence, *I wrote to my brother last Monday*, the act of writing is stated to have taken place at a particular period, which is entirely gone by: it is not in a progressive state, nor has it any reference to the present time: it is therefore in the past *perfect* tense.

It is of essential importance to the student, to know how to distinguish the nature of these two tenses at once; and therefore, for their better illustration, he is here presented with some examples, in both languages: for instance,

<i>Past Imperfect,</i>	<i>Iba á la librería.</i>
<i>Past Perfect,</i>	<i>Fui á la librería.</i>

Both these examples are translated, *I went to the library*; but the meaning of the first, is, *I used to go, or was in the habit of going to the library*; as when we say,

When I was in Paris, I went to the library almost every night,	Cuando yo estaba en Paris, iba casi todas las noches á la librería.
---	--

663910 A

In which, the act of *going* is described as a reiterated action, or one that the actor was accustomed to do repeatedly: but in the second instance the Verb alludes to some particular or stated period; as,

I *went* to the library with him      Anoche *fué* á la librería con él.  
last night,

And here we see that the particular period in which the act of going took place, is referred to, and that it is perfectly past, and has no connexion with the present time.

With the past *imperfect* tense, are described all former customs, habits, manners, professions, &c., of individuals and nations no longer existing, as well as those which belonged formerly to persons still existing: Ex.

Los Israelitas <i>hacían</i> sacrificios á Dios,	The Israelites <i>made</i> sacrifices to God (i. e. <i>were in the habit of making</i> ).
Los Egipcios <i>cultivaban</i> las ciencias,	The Egyptians <i>cultivated</i> the sciences.
César <i>era</i> gran general,	Cæsar <i>was</i> a great general.
Cicerón <i>era</i> gran orador,	Cicero <i>was</i> a great orator.
Mi tío <i>era</i> cónsul,	My uncle <i>was</i> a consul.
Mi padre <i>era</i> muy viajador,	My father <i>was</i> a great traveller.
<i>Escribía</i> mucho,	<i>He was in the habit of writing</i> much.

The past *perfect* tense, describes a former, but not a progressive act, or state of existence. It represents the occurrence as entirely past at some particular period, as before stated. To authorize the use of this tense, the time in which the circumstance represented by it happened, must have no relation whatever with the present period: that is, it cannot be employed in referring to an action that has occurred in the present century, age, year, month, week or day, nor any period, of which the time in which we are speaking, forms a part. Therefore, though we may say, *It was discovered last year*, we cannot with grammatical propriety say, *Many useful things were discovered during the present year*; for in the first instance, the time spoken of is entirely past, but in the second it is not, since we still exist in the year of which we are speaking. The latter would require to be placed in the compound of the *present tense*; thus, *Many useful things have been discovered during the present year*. (See the compound of the present tense, Par. 4.)

The following are some examples in the past *perfect* tense:

<i>Estuve</i> á verle ayer,	I <i>went</i> to see him yesterday.
<i>Vimos</i> salir los buques el Jueves pasado,	We <i>saw</i> the vessels sail out on Thursday last.
<i>Preseñámonos</i> su elección,	We <i>were</i> present at his election.

In the historical style, this tense is most generally used, for which reason it has by some, been called the *historical past tense*: Ex.

Cristobal Colon *descubrió* las islas de Cuba y Santo Domingo en el año de 1493,

La destruccion de Troya *aconteció* 1183 años ántes de la era Cristiana,

Christopher Columbus *discovered* the isles of Cuba and St. Domingo in 1493.

The destruction of Troy *occurred* 1183 years before the Christian era.

#### FUTURE TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MODE.

3. This tense indicates that a thing will exist or take place at a time which is not yet arrived: Ex.

Él *será* elegido,  
Iré á verla mañana,  
Los virtuosos *serán* premiados,

He *will be* chosen.  
I *shall go* and see her to-morrow.  
The virtuous *will be* rewarded.

The future tense is sometimes used in Spanish, instead of the imperative: Ex.

Si le encontráre, *vendrá* vmd. á decírmelo,

If you should meet him, *come* and let me know.

It is also sometimes used instead of the present tense, when something is affirmed, respecting the certainty of which some doubt is entertained: Ex.

*Vendrá* quizá para hablarle,

He *comes* probably to speak to you.

It is likewise used instead of the present, when in inquiring into his own condition, the interrogator is almost persuaded that there can be none to equal it: Ex.

¿*Habré* miseria mayor que la mia? Can there be greater misery than mine?

#### COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MODE.

4. This tense denotes an action that has passed; but at a period of which the present time forms a part: Ex.

Le *he escrito* tres veces desde que estoy en Madrid,

I *have written* to him three times since I am in Madrid.

In this instance the act of writing is passed, but the period in which the writing took place, still exists, which period is that of the writer's stay in Madrid.

This tense is generally applied to express a past occurrence, provided it has taken place in the present century, age, year,

month, week or day, or in any period of which the time in which we are speaking forms a part (see the *past perfect tense*, Par. 2): Ex.

Ni le he visto hoy, ni en toda esta semana,

Muchas obras de mérito se han escrito durante el presente siglo,

I have neither seen him to-day, nor during the whole of this week.

Many works of merit have been written during the present age.

In speaking of an author that existed many centuries ago, but whose writings are still extant, we may also employ this tense; but if neither the author nor the work are any longer in existence we must, in referring to either, employ the *past perfect tense*.

#### COMPOUND OF THE PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MODE.

5. This tense denotes the occurrence of one circumstance, prior to the taking place of another: But like the simple past, this tense is divided into the *imperfect* and the *perfect*; and in order to know when to employ the Verb in one, and when in the other, observe the following: When the occurrence represented by the compound of the past tense in English, denotes what is the chief object of the speaker to mention, the Verb describing the occurrence, must be put in the compound of the *imperfect past tense*, in Spanish: but if the occurrence represented by the compound of the past tense in English, merely indicates the date or period of some circumstance, incidental to the occurrence of some other circumstance, then the Verb in Spanish, must be placed in the compound of the *perfect past tense*: Ex.

Le habia visto ántes que se casase,

Así que hubo llegado al meson, saqué la carta y la leí,

I had seen him before he was married.

As soon as I had arrived at the inn, I took out the letter, and read it.

In the first example, we observe that the *seeing*, is what the speaker's principal object was to mention, while his referring to the *time of seeing*, is merely incidental; therefore the act of *seeing*, must in Spanish be placed in the compound of the *imperfect past tense*; namely, *habia visto*. In the second example, the *arrival* is not what the speaker's principal object was to mention; it is a circumstance merely denoting the *period* of the reading of the letter, which act is the main object of the speaker's discourse: therefore the *arriving*, must in Spanish be put in the compound of the *past perfect tense*,

namely, *habe llegado*. This is a distinction in the Spanish language, to which particular attention is required : and observe also, that the *compound of the past perfect tense* is always preceded by some such conjunctions, or adverbs of time, as the following, namely, *después que*, after ; *luego que*, as soon as ; *cuando*, when ; *no bien*, scarcely.

The following are some examples in the compound of the past tense of the indicative mode.

*Habia acabado de escribir, ántes que él llegase,*

*Mahomet habia huido á Medina, ántes que los Saracenos tomaran á Jerusalem,*

*Bonaparte habia tomado á Malta, ántes que la armada Francesa fuese derrotada por el Almirante Nelson,*

*Ya habia oido la noticia cuando vmd. llegó,*

*Después que hubieron expelido á Tarquino Séptimo, Roma fué gobernada por dos cónsules,*

*Cuando Octavio hubo conquistado la Alejandria, Antonio y Cleopatra se dieron la muerte,*

*No bien hube acabado de escribir, cuando entró,*

*I had finished writing, before he arrived.*

*Mahomet had fled to Medina, before the Saracens took Jerusalem.*

*Bonaparte had taken Malta, before the French fleet was destroyed by Admiral Nelson.*

*I had already heard the news when you arrived.*

*After they had expelled Tarquin the Seventh, Rome was governed by two consuls.*

*When Octavius had conquered Alexandria, Anthony and Cleopatra put themselves to death.*

*I had scarcely finished writing, when he entered.*

#### COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MODE.

6. This tense denotes that an action will have been accomplished at, or before the time of another future event : Ex.

*Mañana á las nueve habrémos llegado á Segovia,*

*Habré escrito mis cartas, ántes que den las cuatro,*

*To-morrow at nine o'clock we shall have arrived at Segovia.*

*I shall have written my letters before the clock strikes four.*

#### TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

7. In this mode we have to consider three tenses, namely, the *present*, the *imperfect*, and the *future* ; with their compounds, namely, the *compound of the present*, the *compound of the imperfect*, and the *compound of the future*.

8. With regard to the propriety of designating the tenses of the subjunctive by the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, it is



not the intention here of making it a matter of discussion. A name however they must have; and as the Royal Academy of Madrid, and also most writers of Spanish Grammars, have appropriated those names to them, they have also been adopted in this work, in order not to embarrass the learner with new coined ones: It is however the use, not the names of the tenses, that demands the learner's attention; and therefore it need only be added here, that a Verb in any tense of the subjunctive mode, denotes a subordination to some action or state of being expressed by the antecedent Verb, and that all Verbs that express *fear, joy, surprise, admiration, desire, hope, uncertainty, command, prohibition*, or such like, require that the Verb which they govern, or in other words the subordinate Verb, should be placed in the subjunctive mode. In what tense of this mode the subordinate Verb should be placed, is a matter that will be treated on (as noticed before), in Lec. 26, Par. 10.

ON THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE TERMINATIONS *RA, RIA,*  
AND *SE*, OF THE IMPERFECT TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

9. We have now to notice another matter of the highest importance, connected with the subjunctive mode in Spanish; which is, that a Verb in the *imperfect* tense of this mode, always ends in one or other of the terminations *ra, ria* or *se*; and it is a matter of great difficulty to explain by precept, when to employ the one, and when the other of these terminations, inasmuch as they are not only not equivalent in their signification collectively, but they often vary in their meaning individually: it is nevertheless hoped, that due attention to the following observations, will, in a great measure, enable the student to surmount one of the greatest obstacles peculiar to the Spanish language.

I.

When a Verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive, is *not* preceded by a conditional Conjunction, either of the terminations *ra, or ria*, may be employed: Ex.

Estraño *fuera* or *seria* que lo digese,

Yo *quisiera* or *querria* que vmd. viniese,

It would be strange that he should say so.

I would wish you to come.

In these examples, it is likewise observed, that the termination *se*, is employed in the second member of the sentence, which is generally the case, when the first member begins without a conditional Conjunction.

## II.

When the Verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive, is preceded by a conditional Conjunction, such as *si*, *sino*, *aunque*, &c., if, but, although, &c., or by an Interjection expressive of desire, the termination *ra* or *se* is employed; and *ria* is generally used with the Verb in the second member of the sentence: Ex.

Si tuviera or tuviese dinero, compraría libros,	If I had money, I would buy books.
Aunque estuvieran or estuviesen allí no los hablaría,	Although they might be there, I would not speak to them.
Ojalá viniera or viniese,	Would to God he would come.

It results from the foregoing examples, that the termination *ra*, accommodates itself to serve in the place of either *ria* or *se*; but that the two latter, always differ in their signification: We may therefore with equal propriety say,

Quise que lo hiciera, or Quise que lo hiciese,	I wished him to do it, or that he might or could do it.
Podría ser mejor, or Podiera ser mejor,	It might be better.

But we could not say, *Quise que lo haría*, nor *Pudiese ser mejor*.

## III.

When a Verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive, governed by the Conjunction *que* (that), is preceded by a Verb in any of the past tenses of the indicative mode, signifying to *speak*, to *think*, or to *promise*, either of the three terminations may be employed; observing nevertheless that when we wish to express by the Verb in the subjunctive, either a *power* or an *obligation*, we may make use of *ra* or *se*; but if it be our intention to express a *will* or *inclination*, we must use *ria*: Ex.

Dijo que viniera or viniese vmd. inmediatamente,	He said that you should come, or were to come immediately.
Me había dicho que saliera or saliese con él,	He had told me that I might go out with him.
No pensaba que vendría,	I did not think that he would come.
Prometió que me pagaría,	He promised that he would pay me.

## IV.

If the Verb in the past tense of the indicative mode, denotes a *wish* or *desire*, the Verb governed, should be put in the imperfect of the subjunctive with the termination *ra* or *se*; but not *ria*: Ex.

Quiso que yo *fuese* or *fuera* con él,

He wished that I should, might, or would go with him; *or*, he wished me to go with him.

Deseaban que *vinieramos*, or *viniesemos*,

They were desirous that we should, might, or would come; *or*, they wished us to come.

## V.

The same terminations are employed, when the Verb in the imperfect subjunctive, is governed by the Conjunction *para que* (in order that), or by any other Conjunction of the like import, whatever Verb it may be preceded by in any of the past tenses of the indicative mode: Ex.

Me lo hacia repetir todos los dias, para que lo *retuviera*, or *retuviese* en la memoria,

He made me repeat it every day, in order that I might, *or* should retain it in my memory.

Le llamé temprano, para que *tuviera* or *tuviese* tiempo de aprontarse,

I called him early, that he might have time to get ready.

Se lo he dicho, para que *tuviera*, or *tuviese* cuidado,

I told it to him, in order that he should or might take care.

## VI.

The termination *ria*, is employed when the Verb in the imperfect subjunctive is preceded by an Adverb of *doubt*, expressed or understood: Ex.

Quizá *volveria*, y vmd. no lo habrá sabido,

Perhaps he has, *or* may have returned, and you may not have known it.

No lo *compraria*, por carecer de medios,

Probably he has not bought it, *or* may not have bought it, for want of means.

## VII.

When the words *were I*, and *had I*, are used instead of *if I were*, and *if I had*, they require the termination *ra* or *se*, in the translation: Ex.

*Had I*, or *if I had* good books, I would read them,

*Si tuviera*, or *tuviese* buenos libros, los leeria.

*Were I* to know it, or *if I were* to know it,

*Si lo supiera*, or *supiese*.

# VIII.

When the word *were*, is used in the place of *would be*, it requires the termination *ria* in the translation : Ex.

I know it *were* or *would be* my duty to do it,      Sé que *seria* mi deber el hacerlo.

10. *Observation.* When the words *may*, *should*, *might*, and *would*, are not employed in English as *signs* of the subjunctive, but are used as principal Verbs, having a distinct meaning of their own, they are translated into Spanish by Verbs corresponding to their signification :—Thus *may*, and its derivative *might*, denote *possibility* or *liberty*; *should* denotes *duty* or *obligation*; and *would* expresses an *inclination of the mind*. *Should* and *would* have the same apalogy to *shall* and *will*, as *might* has to *may*.

*May* and *might*, are translated by *poder*; *should*, by *deber*; and *would* by *querer* : Ex.

I *may* go when I like,  
He *might* have purchased the book  
with his own money,  
You *should* have gone,  
She *would* not go,

*Puedo* ir cuando quiero,  
*Podia* haber comprado el libro con  
su propio dinero.  
*Debia* vmd. haber ido.  
Ella no *quiso* ir.

It may not be improper to notice here, that *can* and its derivative *could*, are also translated by *poder*, as they also denote *power*; but it is a species of power different from that expressed by *may* and *might*; inasmuch as the latter express a kind of *moral* power, or *permission*; whereas the former denote a *physical* and *absolute* power : Ex.

At present I *can* only walk three  
miles an hour, though at one  
time I *could* walk five,

En la actualidad solo *puedo* cami-  
nar tres millas por hora, cuando  
en otro tiempo *podia* caminar  
cinco.

## OF PARTICIPLES.

11. Participles are so called, from their partaking of the nature of *Verbs*, *Adjectives*, and *Nouns*: they are originally a part of the Verb. There are both in English and in Spanish two Participles, the one generally distinguished by the names *active* or *present*; the other by *passive* or *past*. We will first see how Participles are employed as forming part of the Verb.

12. The *Participle active* is that part of a Verb that de-

notes action, or state of being ; and is generally preceded by some other Verb, to denote the *time* of action or being ; Ex.

*Está, estaba, ha estado, or estará escribiendo,*

*He is, was, has been, or will be writing.*

Sometimes the Participle active is used without the governing Verb ; but the nature of the sentence will denote the time of action or being expressed by the Participle : Ex.

*Mandándole el médico que se quedase en casa, no quiso salir,*

*The doctor ordering him to keep within doors, he would not go out.*

13. When in English the Participle active has reference to a Noun or Pronoun, which is *not* the nominative case, the Participle is rendered in Spanish by a Verb in some tense of the indicative mode : Ex.

*I gave it to the clerk acting as agent,*

*Se lo dí al dependiente que hacia de apoderado.*

But should the English Participle active refer to a Noun or Pronoun which *is* the nominative case, it is translated into Spanish by a Participle active also : Ex.

*I, acting as agent, wrote to him on the subject,*

*Haciendo yo de apoderado, le escribí sobre el asunto.*

14. When in English, the Participle active expresses any kind of *motion*, and is preceded by the Verb *to be*, it is translated by a Verb in the same mode and tense as that in which the Verb *to be* is placed : Ex.

*We are going to embark to-day, If you should be coming this way to-morrow,*

*Nos vamos á embarcar hoy. Si viniere usted. por aquí mañana.*

18. The *infinitive* in Spanish is most generally employed instead of the *Participle active*, as used in English, after Verbs that signify the different manners of *perception* ; such as *to see, to hear, &c.* : Ex.

*I saw them coming, I hear them speaking,*

*Los vi venir. Los oigo hablar.*

19. When in English the Participle active is preceded by a Preposition, it is most generally translated by the *infinitive*, and sometimes by a Noun : Ex.

*I had the pleasure of seeing her, She devotes much of her time to drawing, At hearing such a discourse, He was three months without writing to me. It came from walking,*

*Tuve el gusto de verla. Se dedica mucho al dibujo.*

*Al oír tal discurso. Estuvo tres meses sin escribirme.*

*Vengo de pasear.*

From this rule, however, may be generally excepted, those active Participles which are preceded by the Prepositions *in* and *by*; in which cases the Participle is used in Spanish without the Preposition: Ex.

I tremble <i>in meditating</i> on the result,	Tiemblo <i>meditando</i> en la resulta.
By <i>working</i> moderately we preserve health,	<i>Trabajando</i> con moderacion conservamos la salud.

20. When, however, the employment of the Participle active is likely to produce ambiguity, it is preferable to resolve it into some tense of the Verb from which it is derived: for instance, in the example,

Los vimos <i>yendo</i> á pasear esta mañana,	We saw them <i>going</i> to walk this morning,
--	--

the sense is ambiguous in both Languages; for it is not clearly demonstrated by the Participle active, *who* was going to walk, *we* or *they*; it would therefore be preferable to say,

Los vimos cuando <i>iban</i> á pasear, esta mañana, or,	We saw them when <i>they were going</i> to walk this morning, or,
Los vimos cuando <i>ibamos</i> á pasear esta mañana,	We saw them when <i>we were going</i> to walk this morning.

*Observe*, that active Participles in Spanish, derived from Verbs of the first conjugation, always end in *ando*; as, *hablando*, speaking: those of the second and third conjugations end in *iendo*; as, *temiendo*, fearing; *sufriendo*, suffering.

21. The *Participle past*, as relates to Verbs, is that part of the Verb, which, joined to the auxiliary *haber*, to have, forms the *compound tenses*; and when joined to the Verb *ser*, to be, it forms the passive voice (see the conjugation of passive Verbs, and observation on the passive voice, Lec. 24, Par. 6 and 7): Ex.

He caminado, habiamos hablado, Soy amado or amada, serán vendidos or vendidas,	I have walked, we had spoken. I am loved, they will be sold.
--	--

22. Past Participles derived from Verbs of the first conjugation, always end in *ado*; as, *hablado*, spoken. Those of the second and third conjugations end in *ido*; as, *temido*, feared; *sufrido*, suffered.

23. When the past Participle is used with any part of the Verb *haber*, it is *indeclinable*; but used with the Verb *ser*, to form the passive voice, it agrees in gender and number with the nominative of *ser*: see the examples in last paragraph but one.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *HABER*, TO HAVE.

## Infinitive Mode.

Habrér, to have.

## Indicative Mode.

## Present Tense.

Singular.		Plural.	
Yo he,	I have.	Nosotros hémos or habémos,	We have.
tú has,	thou hast.	vosotros habéis,	you have.
él ha,	he has.	ellos han,	they have.

## Past Imperfect Tense.

Yo había,	I had.	Nosotros habíamos,	We had.
tú habías,	thou hadst.	vosotros habíais,	you had.
él había,	he had.	ellos habían,	they had.

## Past Perfect Tense.

Yo hube,	I had.	Nosotros hubimos,	We had.
tú hubiste,	thou hadst.	vosotros hubisteis,	you had.
él hubo,	he had.	ellos hubieron,	they had.

## Future Tense.

Yo habré,	I shall or will have.	Nosotros habrémos,	We shall have.
tú habrás,	thou shalt have.	vosotros habréis,	you shall have.
él habrá,	he shall have.	ellos habrán,	they shall have.

## Subjunctive Mode.

## Present Tense.

Yo háya,	I may have.	Nosotros hayámos,	We may have.
tú háyas,	thou mayest have.	vosotros hayáis,	you may have.
él háya.	he may have.	ellos háyan,	they may have.

## Imperfect Tense.

## Singular.

Yo hubiera,	habría,	hubiese,	I should, might, or would have,
tú hubieras,	habrías,	hubieses,	thou shouldst, mightest, &c.
él hubiera,	habría,	hubiese,	he should, might, or would have.

## Plural.

Nosotros hubiéramos,	habríamos,	hubiésemos,	We should, &c. have.
vosotros hubierais,	habríais,	hubieseis,	you should, &c. have.
ellos hubieran,	habrían,	hubiesen,	they should, &c. have.

## Future Tense.

## Singular.

Si yo hubiere,	If I should have.
si tú hubieres,	if thou shouldst have.
si él hubiere,	if he should have.

*Plural.*

Si nosotros hubiéremos,	If we should have.
si vosotros hubiéreis,	if you should have.
si ellos hubiéren,	if they should have.

<i>Participle Active,</i>	Habiendo, Having.
<i>Participle Past,</i>	Habido, Had.

*Note.*—The compound tenses of the foregoing Verb are omitted, *haber* being no longer used in the capacity of an active Verb.

In the conjugations of all the following Verbs, the personal Pronouns in Spanish are omitted, as in most cases they are not required. See Lec. 16, Par. 16.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB TENER, TO HAVE.

**Infinitive Mode.**

<i>Simple.</i>	<i>Compound.</i>
Tenér, To have.	Habér tenido, To have had.

**Indicative Mode.**

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Compound of the Present.</i>
Téngo, I have.	He tenido, I have had.
tiénes, thou hast.	has tenido, thou hast had.
tiene, he has.	ha tenido, he has had.
tenémos, we have.	hemos tenido, we have had.
tenéis, you have.	habéis tenido, you have had.
tiénen, they have.	han tenido, they have had.

<i>Past Imperfect Tense.</i>	<i>Compound of the Past Imperfect.</i>
Tenía, I had.	Había tenido, I had had.
tenías, thou hadst.	habías tenido, thou hadst had.
tenía, he had.	había tenido, he had had.
teníamos, we had.	habíamos tenido, we had had.
teníais, you had.	habíais tenido, you had had.
tenían, they had.	habían tenido, they had had.

<i>Past Perfect Tense.</i>	<i>Compound of the Past Perfect.</i>
Tuve, I had.	Hube tenido, I shall have had.
tuviste, thou hadst.	hubiste tenido, thou shalt have.
tuvo, he had.	hubo tenido, he shall, &c.
tuvimos, we had.	hubimos tenido, we shall, &c.
tuvisteis, you had.	hubisteis tenido, you shall, &c.
tuvieron, they had.	hubieron tenido, they shall &c.

<i>Future Tense.</i>	<i>Compound of the Future.</i>
Tendré, I shall or will have.	Haré tenido, I shall have had.
tendrás, thou shalt or wilt have.	harás tenido, thou shalt, &c.
tendrá, he shall or will have.	habrá tenido, he shall, &c.
tendremos, we shall or will have.	habremos tenido, we shall, &c.
tendréis, you shall or will have.	habréis tenido, you shall, &c.
tendrán, they shall or will have.	habrán tenido, they shall &c.



## Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Present Tense.</i>		<i>Compound of the Present.</i>	
Ténga,	I may have.	Háya tenido,	I may have had.
téngas,	thou mayest have.	háyas tenido,	thou mayest, &c.
ténga,	he may have.	háya tenido,	he may, &c.
tengámos,	we may have.	hayámos tenido,	we may, &c.
tengáis,	you may have.	hayáis tenido,	you may, &c.
téngan,	they may have.	háyan tenido,	they may, &c.

*Imperfect Tense.*

Tuviéra,	tendría,	tuviése,	I should, might or would have.
tuviéras,	tendrías,	tuviéses,	thou shouldst, mightest, &c.
tuviéra,	tendría,	tuviése,	he should, might, &c.
tuviéramos,	tendríamos,	tuviésemos,	we should, might, &c.
tuviérais,	tendríais,	tuviéseis,	you should, might, &c.
tuviéran,	tendrían,	tuviésen,	they should, might, &c.

*Compound of the Imperfect Tense.*

Hubiéra,	habría,	hubiése	tenido,	I should, might or would have	
hubiéras,	habrías,	hubiéses	tenido,	thou shouldst, &c.	[had.
hubiéra,	habría,	hubiése	tenido,	he should, might, &c.	
hubiéramos,	habríamos,	hubiésemos	tenido,	we should, might, &c.	
hubiérais,	habríais,	hubiéseis	tenido,	you should, might, &c.	
hubiéran,	habrían,	hubiésen	tenido,	they should, might, &c.	

*Future Tense.*

Si tuviére,	If I should have.
si tuviéres,	if thou shouldst have.
si tuviére,	if he should have,
si tuviéremos,	if we should have.
si tuviéreis,	if you should have.
si tuviéren,	if they should have.

*Compound of the Future.*

Si hubiere tenido,	If I should have had.
si hubiéres tenido,	if thou shouldst have had.
si hubiere tenido,	if he should have had.
si hubiéremos tenido,	if we should have had.
si hubiéreis tenido,	if you should have had.
si hubiéren tenido,	if they should have had.

## Imperative Mode.

Ten tú,	Have thou.
ténga él,	let him have.
tengámos nosotros,	let us have.
tened vosotros,	have you.
téngan ellos,	let them have.

<i>Participle Active,</i>	Teniendo,	Having.
<i>Compound ditto,</i>	Habiendo tenido,	Having had.
<i>Participle Past,</i>	Tenido,	Had.

## OBSERVATION.

When the Verb *to have* is used in English, in the capacity of an *auxiliary Verb*, it is translated *haber*; but when em-

played as an *active* Verb, denoting *possession*, it must be translated *tener*. We therefore say, *He comprado un libro*, for, *I have bought a book*; but we must say, *Tengo un libro*, for, *I have a book*: In the first instance, *to have*, is used as an *auxiliary* to the Verb *to buy*; but in the second, it is employed as an *active* Verb, denoting the *possession* of the book.

# CONJUGATION OF THE VERB SER, TO BE.

## Infinitive Mode.

Simple.		Compound.	
Ser,	To be.	Haber sido,	To have been.

## Indicative Mode.

### Present Tense.

Soy,	I am.	Somos,	We are.
eres,	thou art.	sois,	you are.
es,	he is.	son,	they are.

### Past Imperfect Tense.

Éra,	I was.	Éramos,	We were.
eras,	thou wast.	erais,	you were.
era,	he was.	eran,	they were.

### Past Perfect Tense.

Fui,	I was.	Fuimos,	We were.
fuiste,	thou wast.	fuisteis,	you were.
fué,	he was.	fuéron,	they were.

### Future Tense.

Seré,	I shall or will be.	Serémos,	We shall or will be.
serás,	thou shalt be.	seréis,	you shall be.
será,	he shall be.	serán,	they shall be.

## Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mode.

### Compound of the Present.

He sido, &c. I have been, &c.

### Compound of the Past Imperfect.

Había sido, &c. I had been, &c.

### Compound of the Past Perfect.

Húbo sido, &c. I had been, &c.

### Compound of the Future.

Habré sido, &c. I shall have been, &c.

## Subjunctive Mode.

### Present Tense.

Sea,	I may be.	Seámos,	We may be.
seas,	thou mayest be.	seáis,	you may be.
sea,	he may be.	seán,	they may be.

*Imperfect Tense.*

Fuéra,	sería,	fuése,	I should, might or would be.
fuéras,	serías,	fuéses,	thou shouldst, mightest or wouldst be.
fuera,	sería,	fuése,	he should, might or would be.
fuéramos,	seríamos,	fuésemos,	we should, might or would be.
fuérais,	seriais,	fuéseis,	you should, might or would be.
fuéran,	serían,	fuésen,	they should, might or would be.

*Future Tense.*

Si fuére,	If I should be.	Si fuéremos,	If we should be.
si fuéres,	if thou shouldst be.	si fuéreis,	if you should be.
si fuéren,	if he should be.	si fuéren,	if they should be.

**Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive Mode.***Compound of the Present.*

Haya sido, &c.	I may have been, &c.
----------------	----------------------

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Hubiera sido, &c.	} I should, might, or would have been, &c.
Habría sido, &c.	
Hubiése sido, &c.	

*Compound of the Future.*

Si hubiere sido, &c.	If I should have been, &c.
----------------------	----------------------------

**Imperative Mode.**

Sé tú,	Be thou.
sea él,	let him be.
seamos nosotros,	let us be.
sed vosotros,	be you.
sean ellos,	let them be.

*Participle Active.**Siendo,**Being.**Compound ditto.**Habiendo sido,**having been.**Participle Past.**Sido,**been.***CONJUGATION OF THE VERB ESTAR, TO BE.****Infinitive Mode.**

<i>Simple.</i>		<i>Compound.</i>
Estar,	To be,	Habér estado, To have been.

**Indicative Mode.***Present Tense.*

Estoy,	I am.	Estamos,	We are.
estás,	thou art.	estáis,	you are.
está,	he is.	están,	they are.

*Past Imperfect Tense.*

Estaba,	I was.	Estábamos,	We were.
estabas,	thou wast.	estabais,	you were.
estaba,	he was.	estaban,	they were.

*Past Perfect Tense.*Estuve,  
estuviste,  
estuvo,I was.  
thou wast.  
he was.Estuvimos,  
estuvisteis,  
estuvieron,We were.  
you were.  
they were.*Future Tense.*Estaré, I shall or will be.  
estarás, thou shalt be.  
estará, he shall be.Estarémos, We shall or will be.  
estaréis, you shall be.  
estarán, they shall be.**Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mode.***Compound of the Present.*

He estado, &amp;c. I have been, &amp;c.

*Compound of the Past Imperfect.*

Había estado, &amp;c. I had been, &amp;c.

*Compound of the Past Perfect.*

Hube estado, &amp;c. I had been, &amp;c.

*Compound of the Future.*

Habré estado, &amp;c. I shall have been, &amp;c.

**Subjunctive Mode.***Present Tense.*Esté,  
estés,  
esté,I may be.  
thou mayest be.  
he may be.Esténos,  
estéis,  
estén,We may be.  
you may be.  
they may be.*Imperfect Tense.*

Estuviéra,	estaría,	estuviése,	I should, might or would be.
estuviéras,	estaría,	estuviéses,	thou shouldst, mightest, &c.
estuviéra,	estaría,	estuviése,	he should, might or would be.
estuviéramos,	estaríamos,	estuviésemos,	we should, might or would be.
estuviérais,	estaríais,	estuviéseis,	you should, might or would be.
estuviéran,	estarían,	estuviésen,	they should, might or would be.

*Future Tense.*

Si estuviére,	If I should be.	Si estuviéremos,	If we should be.
si estuviéres,	if thou shouldst be.	si estuviéreis,	if you should be.
si estuviére,	if he should be.	si estuviéren,	if they should be.

**Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive Mode.***Compound of the Present.*

Haya estado, &amp;c. I may have been, &amp;c.

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Hubiera estado, &c.	} I should, might or would have been, &c.
Habría estado, &c.	
Hubiese estado, &c.	

*Compound of the Future.*

Si hubiere estado, &amp;c. If I should have been, &amp;c.

## Imperative Mode.

Está tú,	Be thou.
esté él,	let him be.
estémos nosotros,	let us be.
estád vosotros,	be you.
estén ellos,	let them be.

Participle Active.	Estádo,	Being.
Compound ditto.	Habiéndo estádo,	Having been,
Participle Past.	Estádo,	Been.

2. When the Verb *to have*, precedes an infinitive, it is rendered *tener que* : Ex.

<i>I have to do at present,</i>	<i>Tengo que hacer ahora.</i>
<i>We shall have to go to-morrow,</i>	<i>Tendremos que ir mañana.</i>

And when *to be*, precedes an infinitive, it is translated *haber de* : Ex.

<i>She is to sing this evening,</i>	<i>Ella ha de cantar esta noche.</i>
<i>We are to be the witnesses,</i>	<i>Nosotros hemos de ser los testigos.</i>

3. When in English the Verb *to be*, precedes the Adjectives, *hungry, thirsty, warm, cold, sleepy*, and such like, the Verb *to be*, is translated *tener*, and the Adjective is rendered by a corresponding Noun in Spanish : Ex.

<i>I am hungry,</i>	<i>Tengo hambre.</i>
<i>He is thirsty,</i>	<i>Tiene sed.</i>
<i>They are warm,</i>	<i>Tienen calor.</i>
<i>We are cold,</i>	<i>Tenemos frío.</i>
<i>I am sleepy,</i>	<i>Tengo sueño.</i>

## OBSERVATIONS ON SER AND ESTAR.

4. In the foregoing conjugations of these two Verbs, both are translated by the same Verb in English, namely, *to be* ; yet by no means can they be indiscriminately used in Spanish, since they differ materially from each other in signification. It is therefore essentially necessary, that the learner be acquainted with their peculiar meaning and use ; a matter that frequently embarrasses beginners, and which has justly been considered one of the greatest difficulties peculiar to the Spanish Language ; but which it is hoped that due attention to the following remarks, will enable the student to surmount.

5. When we wish to express the *natural* or *inherent* quality, essential to any thing ; also the qualities of the mind,

and the natural beauties and defects of the body, we must employ *ser*: Ex.

La piedra *es* dura,  
La nieve *es* blanca,  
Ellos *son* humildes,  
El *es* docto,  
Ella *es* hermosa,  
Es ciego,

Stone *is* hard.  
Snow *is* white.  
They *are* humble.  
He *is* learned.  
She *is* handsome.  
He *is* blind.

But to denote any *accidental circumstance, locality, the emotions of the mind*, or when we speak of the state of one's health, we must use *estar*: Ex.

El vino ya *está* agrio,  
*Está* cojo de una caída,  
El reloj *está* parado,  
*Estan* en Madrid,  
*Estaré* aquí mañana,  
*Está* muy triste,  
*Estémos* alegres,  
*Estoy* bueno,  
*Está* malo,

The wine *is* already sour.  
He *is* lame from a fall.  
The watch *is* stopped.  
They *are* in Madrid.  
I shall *be* here to-morrow.  
She *is* very sad.  
Let us *be* merry.  
I *am* well.  
He *is* ill.

6. In the following example, the learner will observe the striking difference in the meaning of these two Verbs.

*Este es el niño que está indispuerto,* This *is* the child that *is* unwell.

Here we see that the *essential being* of the child, is expressed by *ser*; but the *accidental circumstance* of its being *unwell*, is denoted by *estar*.

In speaking of a fruit, the peculiar nature of which is *sour*, we must say, *Esta fruta es agria*, This fruit *is* sour; but by changing the Verb *ser* into *estar*, it would denote that the fruit became sour, by some accidental circumstance; and not that it belonged to any species of fruit of a *naturally sour* kind.

7. We must employ the Verb *ser*, also, to express possession, and also to denote what a thing is intended for: Ex.

La hacienda *es* suya, pero el dinero  
*es* mio,  
Los libros *son* para estudiar,  
*Esta* carta *es* para vmd.

The property *is* his, but the money  
*is* mine.  
Books *are* to study by.  
This letter *is* for you.

8. Notwithstanding the foregoing remarks, there are instances in which we may use either *ser* or *estar*: Ex.

*Soy* or *estoy* del mismo parecer,  
*El es* corregidor, or *él está de* corregidor de  
Sevilla,

I *am* of the same opinion.  
He *is* the mayor of Seville.

However, on a close investigation of these two examples, we shall see, in the first, that with the Verb *ser*, an *unalterable* state of opinion is denoted; but with *estar*, *casual* opinion only is expressed. And in the second example, *El es* corre-

*gidor*, signifies that he has filled the office of mayorship for a considerable time, or that the office is deemed *permanent* to him; but *El está de corregidor*, means that he is *now* the mayor, or that he is *acting as* mayor.

9. Some Adjectives also vary their meaning, according as they are employed with *ser* or *estar*: Ex.

<i>Ser</i> bueno— <i>Estar</i> bueno,	To be good—To be well.
<i>Ser</i> vivo— <i>Estar</i> vivo,	To be lively—To be alive.
<i>Ser</i> despierto— <i>Estar</i> despierto,	To be vigilant—To be awake.
<i>Ser</i> malo— <i>Estar</i> malo,	To be wicked—To be unwell.

## LECTURE XXIV.

### CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

1. In Lec. 21, Par. 8, the nature of regular Verbs has been explained. The learner has now to observe, that the infinitive of all Spanish Verbs, ends in one or other of the following terminations, namely, *ar*, *er*, *ir*; as *hablar*, to speak; *temer*, to fear; *sufrir*, to suffer.

All Spanish Verbs are of the *first* conjugation, when their infinitives end in *ar*;—of the *second*, when they end in *er*;—and of the *third*, when they end in *ir*. All regular Verbs of the *first* conjugation, vary their endings, so as to correspond with those exhibited in the following conjugation of the Verb *hablar*: All those of the *second* conjugation, correspond with the terminations of *temer*; and all those of the *third*, correspond with those of *sufrir*.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION, *HABLAR*, TO SPEAK.

##### Infinitive Mode.

<i>Simple.</i>	<i>Compound.</i>
Hablar, To speak.	Habér hablado, To have spoken.

##### Indicative Mode.

###### *Present Tense.*

Hablo, I speak.	Hablamos, We speak.
hablas, thou speakest.	habláis, you speak.
habla, he speaks.	hablan, they speak.

###### *Past Imperfect Tense.*

Hablaba, I spoke.	Hablábamos, We spoke.
hablabas, thou speakest.	habláabais, you spoke.
hablaba, he spoke.	hablaban, they spoke.

*Past Perfect Tense.*

Hablé,	I spoke.	Hablamos,	We spoke.
hablaste,	thou spakest.	hablasteis,	you spoke.
habló,	he spoke.	hablaron,	they spoke.

*Future Tense.*

Hablaré,	I shall or will speak.	Hablarémos,	We shall or will speak.
hablarás,	thou shalt or wilt speak.	hablaréis,	you shall or will speak.
hablará,	he shall or will speak.	hablarán,	they shall or will speak.

**Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mode.**

*Compound of the Present.*

He hablado, &c.	I have spoken, &c.
-----------------	--------------------

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Había hablado, &c.	I had spoken, &c.
--------------------	-------------------

*Compound of the Perfect.*

Húbe hablado, &c.	I had spoken, &c.
-------------------	-------------------

*Compound of the Future.*

Habré hablado, &c.	I shall or will have spoken, &c.
--------------------	----------------------------------

**Subjunctive Mode.**

*Present Tense.*

Háble,	I may speak,	Hablémos,	We may speak.
hables,	thou mayest speak.	habléis,	you may speak.
hable,	he may speak.	hablen,	they may speak.

*Imperfect Tense.*

Hablára,	hablaría,	habláse,	I should, might or would speak.
hablarás,	hablarías,	habláses,	thou shouldst, mightest, &c.
hablara,	hablaría,	habláse,	he should, might or would speak.
habláramos,	hablaríamos,	hablásemos,	we should, might or would speak.
hablarais,	hablaríais,	habláseis,	you should, might or would speak.
hablarán,	hablarían,	hablásen,	they should, might or would, &c.

*Future Tense.*

Si habláre,	If I should speak.	Si habláremos,	If we should speak.
si hablarás,	if thou shouldst speak.	si hablaréis,	if you should speak.
si hablára,	if he should speak.	si hablarán,	if they should speak.

**Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive.**

*Compound of the Present.*

Háya hablado, &c.,	I may have spoken, &c.
--------------------	------------------------

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Hubiera hablado, &c.	} I should, might or would have spoken, &c.
Habría hablado, &c.	
Hubiése hablado, &c.	

*Compound of the Future.*

Si hubiere hablado, &c.	If I should have spoken, &c.
-------------------------	------------------------------



## Imperative Mode.

Hábla tú,		Speak thou.
hable él,		let him speak.
hablemos nosotros,		let us speak.
hablad vosotros,		speak you.
hablen ellos,		let them speak.
<i>Participle Active.</i>	Hablándo,	Speaking.
<i>Compound ditto.</i>	Habiendo hablado,	Having spoken.
<i>Participle Past.</i>	Hablado.	Spoken.

## SECOND CONJUGATION TEMER, TO FEAR.

## Infinitive Mode.

Temér,	<i>Simple.</i>	To fear.		<i>Compound.</i>	Habér temído,	To have feared.
--------	----------------	----------	--	------------------	---------------	-----------------

## Indicative Mode.

*Present Tense.*

Témo,	I fear.		Tememos,	We fear.
témes,	thou fearest.		teméis,	you fear.
téme,	he fears.		témen,	they fear.

*Past Imperfect Tense.*

Temía,	I feared.		Temíamos,	We feared.
temías,	thou fearedst.		temíais,	you feared.
temía,	he feared.		temían,	they feared.

*Past Perfect Tense.*

Temí,	I feared.		Temímos,	We feared.
temístes,	thou fearedst.		temísteis,	you feared.
temió,	he feared.		temieron,	they feared.

*Future Tense.*

Temeré,	I shall or will fear.		Temerémos,	We shall or will fear.
temerás,	thou shalt or wilt fear.		temeréis,	you shall or will fear.
temerá,	he shall or will fear.		temerán,	they shall or will fear.

## Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mode.

*Compound of the Present.*

He temído, &c. I have feared, &c.

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Había temído, &c. I had feared, &c.

*Compound of the Perfect.*

Húbe temído, &c. I had feared, &c.

*Compound of the Future.*

Habré temído, &c. I shall have feared, &c.

# Subjunctive Mode.

## Present Tense.

Téma,	I may fear.	Temámos,	We may fear.
témas,	thou mayest fear.	temáis,	you may fear.
téma,	he may fear.	téman,	they may fear.

## Imperfect Tense.

Temiera,	temería,	temiese,	I should, might or would fear.
temieras,	temerías,	temieses,	thou shouldst, &c. fear.
temiera,	temería,	temiese,	he should, might or would fear.
temiéramos,	temeríamos,	temiésemos,	we should, might or would fear.
temierais,	temeráis,	temieseis,	you should, might or would fear.
temieran,	temerían,	temiesen,	they should, might or would fear.

## Future Tense.

Si temiere,	If I should fear.	Si temiéremos,	If we should fear.
si temieres,	if thou shouldst fear.	si temiereis,	if you should fear.
si temiere,	if he should fear.	si temieren,	if they should fear.

# Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive Mode.

## Compound of the Present.

Haya temido, &c.	I may have feared, &c.
------------------	------------------------

## Compound of the Imperfect.

Hubiéra temido, &c.	} I should, might or would have feared, &c.
Habría temido, &c.	
Hubiese temido, &c.	

## Compound of the Future.

Si hubiere temido, &c.	If I should have feared.
------------------------	--------------------------

# Imperative Mode.

Téme tí,	Fear thou.
téma él,	let him fear.
temámos nosotros,	let us fear.
temed vosotros,	fear you.
téman ellos,	let them fear.

Participle Active.	Temiendo,	Fearing.
Compound ditto.	Habiendo temido,	Having feared.
Participle Past.	Temido,	Feared.

# THIRD CONJUGATION SUFRIR, TO SUFFER.

## Infinitive Mode.

Sufrir,	Simple. To suffer.	Habér sufrido,	Compound. To have suffered.
---------	-----------------------	----------------	--------------------------------

## Indicative Mode.

### Present Tense.

Súfro,	I suffer.	Sufrimos,	We suffer.
súfres,	thou sufferest.	sufris,	you suffer.
súfre,	he suffers.	súfren,	they suffer.

*Past Imperfect Tense.*

Sufría,	I suffered.	Sufríamos,	We suffered.
sufrias,	thou sufferedst.	sufrais,	you suffered.
sufría,	he suffered.	sufrían,	they suffered.

*Past Perfect Tense.*

Sufrió,	I suffered.	Sufrimos,	We suffered.
sufriste,	thou sufferedst.	sufristeis,	you suffered.
sufrió,	he suffered.	sufrieron,	they suffered.

*Future Tense.*

Sufriré,	I shall or will suffer.	Sufriremos,	We shall or will suffer.
sufirás,	thou shalt or wilt suffer.	sufiréis,	you shall or will suffer.
sufirá,	he shall or will suffer.	sufirán,	they shall or will suffer.

**Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mode.***Compound of the Present.*

He sufrido, &c. I have suffered, &c.

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Había sufrido, &c. I had suffered, &c.

*Compound of the Perfect.*

Húbe sufrido, &c. I had suffered, &c.

*Compound of the Future.*

Habré sufrido, &c. I shall have suffered, &c.

**Subjunctive Mode.***Present Tense.*

Súfra,	I may suffer.	Sufrámos,	We may suffer.
súfras,	thou mayest suffer.	sufrais,	you may suffer.
súfra,	he may suffer.	sufiran,	they may suffer.

*Imperfect Tense.*

Sufriera,	sufiría,	sufriése,	I should, might or would suffer.
sufirieras,	sufirirías,	sufriéase,	thou shouldst, mightest, &c. suffer.
sufriera,	sufiría,	sufriése,	he should, might or would suffer.
sufiriéramos,	sufiriríamos,	sufriésemos,	we should, might or would suffer.
sufiriérais,	sufiriríais,	sufriéseis,	you should, might or would suffer.
sufirieran,	sufirirían,	sufriésen,	they should, might or would suffer.

*Future Tense.*

Si sufriera,	If I should suffer.	Si sufriéremos,	If we should suffer.
si sufirieras,	if thou shouldst suffer.	si sufiriérais,	if you should suffer.
si sufiriera,	if he should suffer.	si sufirieran,	if they should suffer.

**Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive Mode.***Compound of the Present.*

Haya sufrido, &c. I may have suffered, &c.

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Hubiera sufrido, &c. }  
 Habría sufrido, &c. } I should, might or would have suffered, &c.  
 Hubiese sufrido, &c. }

*Compound of the Future.*

Si hubiere sufrido, &c. If I should have suffered, &c.

### Imperative Mode.

<b>Súfre tú,</b>		<b>Suffer thou.</b>
<b>súfra él,</b>		<b>let him suffer.</b>
<b>sufámos nosotros,</b>		<b>let us suffer.</b>
<b>sufid vosotros,</b>		<b>suffer you.</b>
<b>súfran ellos,</b>		<b>let them suffer.</b>
<b><i>Participle Active.</i></b>	<b>Sufriendo,</b>	<b>Suffering.</b>
<b><i>Compound ditto.</i></b>	<b>Habiendo sufrido,</b>	<b>Having suffered.</b>
<b><i>Participle Past.</i></b>	<b>Sufrido,</b>	<b>Suffered.</b>

2. The following synopsis will exhibit at one view, all the inflections in the regular Verbs.

The infinitives of Spanish Verbs, are divided into the *root* and the *termination*; as *habl-ar*, *tem-er*, *sufr-ir*: in which the roots are, *habl*, *tem*, *sufr*, and the terminations, *ar*, *er*, *ir*. The roots of regular Verbs are preserved without alteration, throughout the whole conjugation; except a few, which, in order to preserve the primitive sound of certain letters, undergo a slight alteration, as will be presently noticed; but which are not on that account considered irregular: the alteration being merely orthographical.

3. The student, by way of exercise, may apply the roots of some of the Verbs in the adjoining list (which are all regular) to the respective terminations in the following table, by which means, he may very soon become familiar with the conjugation of regular Verbs.

Acabar,	To finish.	acometer,	to attack.	acudir,	to assist.
alabar,	to praise.	beber,	to drink.	abrir,	to open.
abandonar,	to abandon.	comer,	to eat.	combatir,	to combat.
atar,	to bind.	deber,	to owe.	eludir,	to elude.
cortar,	to cut.	esconder,	to conceal.	esgrimir,	to fence.
ganar,	to gain.	emprender,	to undertake.	imprimir,	to print.
librar,	to free.	ofender,	to offend.	partir,	to depart.
molestar,	to molest.	poseer,	to possess.	permitir,	to permit.
pintar,	to paint.	prometer,	to promise.	suprimir,	to suppress.
quemar,	to burn.	vender,	to sell.	unir,	to unite.

### A COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE TERMINATIONS IN REGULAR VERBS.

#### Infinitive Mode.

1st. Conjugation,	Habl-	ár.
2d. ditto.	Tem-	ér.
3d. ditto.	Sufr-	ír.

## Indicative Mode.

*Present Tense.*

1st. Conj.	Hábl-	o	as	a	ámos	áis	an.
2d.	Tém-	o	es	e	émos	éis	en.
3d.	Súfr-	o	es	e	ímos	ís	en.

*Past Imperfect Tense.*

1.	Hábl-	aba	abas	aba	ábamos	abais	aban.
2.	Tem-	ía	ías	ía	íamos	íais	ían.
3.	Sufr-	ía	ías	ía	íamos	íais	ían.

*Past Perfect Tense.*

1.	Hábl-	é	áste	ó	ámos	ásteis	áron.
2.	Tem-	í	íste	ió	ímos	ísteis	iéron.
3.	Sufr-	í	íste	ió	ímos	ísteis	iéron.

*Future Tense.*

1.	Hábl-	aré	arás	ará	arémos	aréis	arán.
2.	Tem-	eré	erás	erá	erémos	eréis	erán.
3.	Sufr-	iré	irás	irá	irémos	iréis	irán.

## Subjunctive Mode.

*Present Tense.*

1.	Hábl-	e	es	e	émos	éis	en.
2.	Tém-	a	as	a	ámos	áis	án.
3.	Súfr-	a	as	a	ámos	áis	án.

*Imperfect Tense.*

1.	Hábl-	{	ára	áras	ára	áramos	árais	áran.
			aría	arías	aría	ariamos	aríais	arían.
			áse	áses	áse	ásemos	áseis	ásen.
2.	Tem-	{	iería	ierías	iería	ieráramos	ierárais	ieráran.
			ería	erías	ería	eríamos	eríais	erían.
			iése	iéses	iése	iésemos	iéseis	iésen.
3.	Sufr-	{	iería	ierías	iería	ieráramos	ierárais	ieráran.
			iría	irías	iría	iriamos	iríais	irían.
			iése	iéses	iése	iésemos	iéseis	iésen.

*Future Tense.*

1.	Hábl-	áre	áras	ára	áremos	áreis	áren.
2.	Tem-	iere	ierés	iere	ieremos	iereis	ieren.
3.	Sufr-	iere	ierés	iere	ieremos	iereis	ieren.

## Imperative Mode.

1.	Hábl-	a	e	émos	ad	en.
2.	Tém-	e	a	ámos	ed	an.
3.	Súfr-	e	a	ámos	id	an.

*Participle Active.*

1.	Hábl-	ando.
2.	Tem-	iendo.
3.	Sufr-	iendo.

*Participle Past.*

Hábl-	ado.
Tem-	ido.
Sufr-	ido.

4. It has been noticed in Par. 2 of this lecture, that there are a few regular Verbs that undergo a slight orthographical alteration ; which is made in order to preserve the hard or soft sound throughout the whole conjugation of the Verb, which certain consonants have in the infinitive, and are liable to change their primitive sound when followed by certain vowels. The alterations that take place are the following :

*C* changes into *qu*, when in the infinitive it has the sound of *k* ; as, *arrancár*, *arranquémos*, *arránquen*, &c.

*G* is followed by *u*, when in the infinitive it has the hard sound ; as, *vengár*, *venguémos*, *vénguen*, &c.

*G* changes into *j*, when in the infinitive it has the guttural sound ; as, *cogér*, *cójo*, *cójan*, &c.

*Gu* drop the *u* whenever *o* or *a* immediately follows ; as, *estinguir*, *estingo*, *estinga*, &c.

*Qu* change into *c* when the sound of the hard *c* is required to be preserved ; as, *delinquir*, *delinco*, *delincan*, &c.

*Note.*—Verbs of the second conjugation having their roots terminating in a vowel, would in some tenses, according to the regular conjugation of Verbs, change the *e* of their termination into *i* ; thus from *léer* to read ; *leíó* he read ; *leíera* I might read, &c. : but it is preferable in such cases, and by far more general, to adopt a *y* instead of an *i* ; thus, *leyó*, *leyera*, &c. This observation extends even to the regular tenses of irregular Verbs.

#### CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

5. In Lec. 21, Par. 4, the meaning of reflective Verbs is explained. In Spanish they are conjugated with the Pronouns of the objective case, *me*, *te*, *se*, in the singular number, and *nos*, *os*, *se*, in the plural. These Verbs may be employed also with or without the personal Pronouns of the nominative case, as the occasion may require.

#### CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTIVE VERB AMARSE, TO LOVE ONESELF.

##### Infinitive Mode.

	<i>Simpl.</i>	<i>Compound.</i>
Amarse,	To love oneself.	Habérse amado, To have loved oneself.

##### Indicative Mode.

###### *Present Tense.*

Me amo,	I love myself.	Nos amamos, We love ourselves.
te amas,	thou lovest thyself.	os amáis, you love yourselves.
se ama,	he loves himself.	se aman, they love themselves.

*Past Imperfect Tense.*

Me amába,	I loved myself.	nos amábamos,	we loved ourselves.
te amábas,	thou lovedst thyself.	os amábais,	you loved yourselves.
se amába,	he loved himself.	se amaban,	they loved themselves.

*Past Perfect Tense.*

Me amé,	I loved myself	nos amámos,	we loved ourselves.
te amáste,	thou lovedst thyself.	os amásteis,	you loved yourselves.
se amó,	he loved himself.	se amáron,	they loved themselves.

*Future Tense.*

Me amaré,	I shall or will love myself.	nos amarémos,	we shall love, &c.
te amarás,	thou shalt love thyself.	os amaréis,	you shall love, &c.
se amará,	he shall love himself.	se amarán,	they shall love, &c.

**Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mode.***Compound of the Present.*

Me he amádo, &c.	I have loved myself, &c.
------------------	--------------------------

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Me había amádo, &c.	I had loved myself, &c.
---------------------	-------------------------

*Compound of the Perfect.*

Me hube amádo, &c.	I had loved myself, &c.
--------------------	-------------------------

*Compound of the Future.*

Me habré amádo, &c.	I shall have loved myself, &c.
---------------------	--------------------------------

**Subjunctive Mode.***Present Tense.*

Me áme,	I may love myself.	Nos amémos,	we may love, &c.
te ámes,	thou mayest love thyself.	os améis,	you may love, &c.
se áme,	he may love himself.	se ámen,	they may love, &c.

*Imperfect Tense.*

Me amára,	amaría,	amáse,	I should, might or would love myself.
te amáras,	amarías,	amáses,	thou shouldst, &c. love thyself.
se amára,	amaría,	amáse,	he should, &c. love himself.
nos amáramos,	amaríamos,	amásemos,	we should, &c. love ourselves.
os amárais,	amaríais,	amáseis,	you should, &c. love yourselves.
se amáran,	amarían,	amásen,	they should, &c. love themselves.

*Future Tense.*

Si me amáre,	If I should love myself.
si te amáres,	if thou shouldst love thyself.
si se amáre,	if he should love himself.
si nos amáremos,	if we should love ourselves.
si os amáreis,	if you should love yourselves.
si se amáren,	if they should love themselves.

## Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive Mode.

*Compound of the Present.*

Me hayá amado, &c.      I may have loved myself, &c.

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Me hubiera amado, &c. }  
 Me habría amado, &c. } I should, might or would have loved myself, &c.  
 Me hubiese amado, &c. }

*Compound of the Future.*

Si me hubiere amado, &c.      If I should have loved myself, &c.

## Imperative Mode.

Ámate tú,	Love thou thyself.
ámese él,	let him love himself.
amémonos nosotros,	let us love ourselves.
amáos vosotros,	love you yourselves.
aménse ellos,	let them love themselves.

<i>Participle Active.</i>	Amándose,	Loving oneself.
<i>Compound ditto.</i>	Habiéndose amado,	Having loved oneself.
<i>Participle Past.</i>	Amado,	Loved.

## CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

6. In Lec. 21, Par. 5, the meaning of passive Verbs is explained. They may be conjugated with or without the Pronouns of the nominative case. And observe, that the Participle passive must agree in gender and number with the nominative of the Verb.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERB  
SER AMADO, TO BE LOVED.

## Infinitive Mode.

Ser amado,	<i>Simple.</i>	To be loved.		<i>Compound.</i>	Habér sido amado, To have been loved.

## Indicative Mode.

*Present Tense.*

Soy amado, éres amado, es amado,	I am loved.		Sómos amados,	we are loved.	
	thou art loved.		sois amados,		you are loved.
	he is loved.		son amados,		they are loved.

*Past Imperfect Tense.*

Era amado, éras amado, era amado,	I was loved.		Éramos amados,	we were loved.	
	thou wast loved.		érais amados,		you were loved.
	he was loved.		eran amados,		they were loved.



*Past Perfect Tense.*

Fuí amado,	I was loved.	Fuimos amados,	We were loved.
fuíste amado,	thou wast loved.	fuísteis amados,	you were loved.
fué amado,	he was loved.	fuéron amados,	they were loved.

*Future Tense.*

Seré amado,	I shall or will be loved.	Serémos amados,	We shall be loved.
serás amado,	thou shalt be loved.	seréis amados,	you shall be loved.
será amado,	he shall be loved.	serán amados,	they shall be loved.

**Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mode.***Compound of the Present.*

He sido amado, &c.	I have been loved, &c.
--------------------	------------------------

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Había sido amado, &c.	I had been loved, &c.
-----------------------	-----------------------

*Compound of the Perfect.*

Húbe sido amado, &c.	I had been loved, &c.
----------------------	-----------------------

*Compound of the Future.*

Habré sido amado, &c.	I shall have been loved, &c.
-----------------------	------------------------------

**Subjunctive Mode.***Present Tense.*

Séa amado,	I may be loved.	Seámos amados,	We may be loved.
seás amado,	thou mayest be loved.	seáis amados,	you may be loved.
seá amado,	he may be loved.	seán amados,	they may be loved.

*Imperfect Tense.*

Fuéra,	sería,	fuése	amado,	I should, might or would be loved.
fuéras,	serías,	fuéses	amado,	thou shouldst, mightest, &c.
fuera,	sería,	fuése	amado,	he should, might, &c.
fuéramos,	seríamos,	fuésemos	amados,	we should, might, &c.
fuérais,	seriais,	fuéseis	amados,	you should, might, &c.
fuéran,	serían,	fuésen	amados,	they should, might, &c.

*Future Tense.*

Si fuére amado,	If I should be loved.
si fuéres amado,	if thou shouldst be loved.
si fuére amado,	if he should be loved.
si fuéremos amados,	if we should be loved.
si fuéreis amados,	if you should be loved.
si fuéren amados,	if they should be loved.

**Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive Mode.***Compound of the Present.*

Háya sido amado, &c.	I may have been loved, &c.
----------------------	----------------------------

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

Hubiéra sido amado, &c.	} I should, might or would have been loved, &c.
Habría sido amado, &c.	
Hubiése sido amado, &c.	

*Compound of the Future.*

.Si *hubiere sido amado*, &c. If I should have been loved, &c.

**Imperative Mode.**

Sé tú amado,	Be thou loved.
sea él amado,	let him be loved.
seamos nosotros amados,	let us be loved.
sed vosotros amados,	be you loved.
sean ellos amados,	let them be loved.

<i>Participle Active,</i>	Siendo amado,	Being loved.
<i>Compound ditto.</i>	Habiendo sido amado,	Having been loved.

<i>Participles Passive,</i>	{ Mas. Sing. Amado,	} Loved.
	Plur. Amados,	
	Fem. Sing. Amada,	
	Plur. Amadas,	

OBSERVATION ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

7. A *reflective* Verb in the third person (singular or plural), in any of the tenses, is often employed in Spanish, where the meaning intended to be conveyed by it is *passive*: for instance, *Ten men were employed*, is frequently translated, *Se emplearon diez hombres*, instead of, *Diez hombres fueron empleados*: and, *The necessary precautions have been taken*, might be translated, *Se han tomado las precauciones necesarias*, as well as, *Las precauciones necesarias han sido tomadas*. Nevertheless, the learner should be very cautious how he employs the *reflective* voice in place of the *passive*, for fear of rendering his sentences ambiguous. We see that the first example, *Se emplearon diez hombres*, might be either taken for, *Ten men were employed*, or, *Ten men employed themselves*. In the second example, however, no ambiguity can arise from employing the Verb in either manner, since, as it is impossible for the precautions to take themselves, we must understand that the sense intended to be conveyed, is, that the precautions were taken.

8. The Pronoun *se*, with the third person singular of the *active* voice, is employed in Spanish in all vague and general reports: as,

They say, or it is said that, &c.	<i>Se dice</i> que, &c.
It is believed that the news is true.	<i>Se dice</i> que la noticia es verdadera.

## OBSERVATION ON THE ACCENTUATION OF VERBS.

9. In Lec. 3, Par. 6, it was noticed that Verbs have a peculiar accentuation of their own. In all the foregoing conjugations of Verbs, an accent has been placed over the syllable requiring the stress of voice, in order to assist the learner. But Verbs are not always found written with the accent for this purpose. The following rules, which are applicable to all regular Verbs, will point out where the stress is required in them. Many of the irregular Verbs also are accented in the same manner; but as no general rule can be given for the accentuation of these, the student must be governed by the accent laid on the irregular Verbs in the following lecture.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*—In this tense the stress is laid on the last syllable but one, in all the persons, except the 2d person plural, which is acute on the last.

*Imperfect Tense.*—Here all the persons are acute on the last syllable but one, except the 1st person plural, which has the stress on the last syllable but two.

*Perfect Tense.*—The 1st and 3d persons singular are acute in this tense on the last syllable, and all the rest on the last but one.

*Future Tense.*—The last syllable of this tense is acute in every person, except the 1st person plural, which has the stress on the last but one.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

*Present Tense.*—The same syllables are acute in this tense as in the present indicative.

*Imperfect and Future Tenses.*—These two tenses have the same syllable acute, as those in the imperfect indicative.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Here the 2d person plural is acute on the last syllable, and the rest are so on the last but one.

The *Infinitive* is always acute on the last syllable, and the *Participles* on the last but one.

## REMARK.

Should the accent fall upon a syllable having the diphthong *ie*, or *io*, the latter of the two vowels has the stress; as, *vendiendo*, *unio*.

If the accented syllable contains a combination of the vowels *ia* or *iai*, the stress falls on the first vowel; as, *vendia*, *temiais*.

When the syllable contains the diphthong *ei*, the stress falls on the *e*; as, *comprareis*, *venderéis*.

The stress is continued on the same vowel, or syllable, even when one or more pronominal cases are added to the verb; as from *confirma*, *confirmate*: from *vende*, *véndese*, *véndeselo*.

The foregoing observations point out what particular syllable of the Verb requires the stress of the voice; but it is not every syllable on which

stress falls, that is written with the accent. The sign of the accent is employed as follows :

<i>active Mode.</i>	<i>Imperf. Tense.</i>	On the 1st and 2d persons plural. 1st and 3d sing., and 2d plur. every person in this tense.
	<i>Perfect Tense.</i>	
	<i>Future Tense.</i>	
<i>inactive Mode.</i>	<i>Imperf. &amp; Future.</i>	the 1st and 2d persons plural.

## LECTURE XXV.

### REGULAR VERBS AND THEIR CONJUGATIONS.

In Lec. 21, Par. 9, the nature of irregular Verbs has been explained. The irregularity is sometimes found to be in the root of the Verb ; at others, in the termination, and occasionally in both. In the following conjugations of irregular Verbs, those modes, tenses and persons only, that have irregularity in them, are exhibited ; the rest being omitted, in order that the learner may, at one view, observe where the irregularity lies.

### IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

*ACERTAR*, To guess, to hit a mark, to ascertain.

The irregularity in this Verb is in the root, and admits an *i*, before the *e*, in the three persons singular, and 3d person plural of the present of the indicative and present of the subjunctive, and the 2d and 3d persons singular and 3d person plural of the imperative.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
<i>1to,</i>	<i>aciértas,</i>	<i>aciérta,</i>	—	—	<i>aciértan.</i>
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
<i>1te,</i>	<i>aciértes,</i>	<i>aciérte,</i>	—	—	<i>aciértén.</i>
<i>Imperative.</i>					
	<i>aciérta,</i>	<i>aciérte,</i>	—	—	<i>aciértén.</i>

#### *List of Verbs conjugated like ACERTAR.*

<i>comenzar</i> , To increase.	<i>aterrar</i> , to destroy, to terrify.	<i>comenzar</i> , to commence.
<i>guiñar</i> , to guide.		<i>concertar</i> , to concert.
<i>animar</i> , to encourage.	<i>atravesar</i> , to pierce, to cross.	<i>confesar</i> , to confess.
<i>pastar</i> , to graze.	<i>aventar</i> , to fan.	<i>despertar</i> , to awake.
<i>apretar</i> , to press.	<i>calentar</i> , to warm.	<i>despernar</i> , to take off legs.
<i>alquilar</i> , to rent.	<i>cegar</i> , to blind.	<i>desterrar</i> , to banish.
<i>anotar</i> , to register.	<i>cerrar</i> , to shut.	<i>empedrar</i> , to pave.
<i>llenar</i> , to fill.		

empezar, to begin.	herrar, to shoe horses.	quebrar, to break.
encerrar, to enclose.	helar, to freeze.	recomendar, to recom-
encomendar, to recom-	infernar, to damn.	mend.
mend.	invernar, to winter.	regar, to water.
enmendar, to mend.	manifestar, to manifest.	reventar, to burst.
ensangrentar, to cover	mentar, to mention.	segar, to reap.
with blood.	merendar, to take a col-	sembrar, to sow.
enterrar, to bury.	lation.	sentar, to fit, to please.
errar*, to err.	negar, to deny.	serrar, to saw.
escarmentar, to be tu-	nevar, to snow.	sosegar, to tranquillize.
tored by experience.	pensar, to think.	temblar, to tremble.
fregar, to rub.	plegar, to fold, to	tentar, to tempt.
gobernar, to govern.	plait.	tropezar, to stumble.

And all their compounds.

#### ACOSTAR, To lie down.

This Verb changes the *o* of the root into *ue*, in the same modes, tenses, and persons, as those in which the Verb *acertar*, admits an *i* before the *e*.

##### *Indicative Present.*

Acuésto,	acuéstas,	acuésta,	—	—	acuéstan.
----------	-----------	----------	---	---	-----------

##### *Subjunctive Present.*

Acuéste,	acuéstes,	acuéste,	—	—	acuésten.
----------	-----------	----------	---	---	-----------

##### *Imperative.*

acuésta,	acuéste,	—	—	acuésten.
----------	----------	---	---	-----------

#### *List of Verbs conjugated like ACOSTAR.*

Acordar, to agree.	descollar, to surpass in	regoldar, to belch.
agorar, to augur.	height.	renovar, to renew.
almorzar, to breakfast.	degollar, to decapitate.	rescontar, to balance
amolzar, to grind.	desollar, to skin.	an account.
apostar, to bet.	emporcar, to dirty.	resollar, to breathe.
aprobar, to approve.	encontrar, to meet.	revolcarse, to wallow.
asolar, to destroy.	encordar, to string.	rodar, to roll.
asoldar, to furnish	enrodar, to break on	soldar, to solder.
money.	the wheel.	soltar ‡, to let loose.
colar, to strain liquor.	engrosar, to grow stout.	sonar, to sound.
colgar, to hang.	forzar, to force.	soñar, to dream.
comprobar, to prove.	holgar, to be lazy.	tostar, to toast.
consolar, to comfort.	hollar, to trample.	trocar, to exchange.
contar, to reckon, to	mostrar, to show.	tronar, to thunder.
relate.	poblar, to people.	volar, to fly.
costar, to cost.	probar, to prove.	volcar, to overset.

And all their compounds.

\* In th's Verb a *y*, substitutes the *i*, which goes before the *e*, in the irregular tenses.

† *Manifestar* has both a regular and an irregular past Participle, the latter is *manifesto*.

‡ This Verb has both a regular and an irregular past Participle: the latter is *suelto*.

**ANDAR**, To walk, to go.

*Indicative Perfect.*

Andúve, anduviste, andúvo, anduvimos, anduvisteis, anduviéron.

*Subjunctive Imperfect.*

Anduviéra, anduviéras, anduviéra, anduviéramos, anduviérais, anduviéran.  
Anduviése, anduviéses, anduviése, anduviésemos, anduviéseis, anduviésen.

*Future.*

Anduviére, anduviéres, anduviére, anduviéremos, anduviéreis, anduviéren.

**ESTAR**, To be.

(See this Verb conjugated at full, page 116.)

**DAR**, To give.

*Indicative Present.*

Doy,	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Perfect.</i>					
Dí,	diste,	dió,	dimos,	dísteis,	diéron.
<i>Subjunctive Imperfect.</i>					
Diéra,	diéras,	diéra,	diéramos,	diérais,	diéran.
Diése,	diéses,	diése,	diésemos,	diéseis,	diésen.
<i>Future.</i>					
Diére,	diéres,	diéro,	diéremos,	diéreis,	diéren.

**JUGAR**, To play.

This Verb admits an *e* after the *u*, in those modes, tenses, and persons, that are irregular in the Verbs *acertar* and *acostar*.

*Indicative Present.*

Juégo, juégas, juéga, — — — juégan.

*Subjunctive Present.*

Juégue, juégues, juégue, — — — juéguen.

*Imperative.*

juéga, juégue, — — — juéguen.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

**ABORRECER**, To hate.

The irregularity in this Verb, and in all those terminating in *acer*, *ecer*, and *ocer*, consists in admitting a *s* before the *c* in the root, whenever the latter is followed by *a* or *o*.

*Indicative Present.*

Aborrezco, — — — — —

*Subjunctive Present.*

Aborrezca, aborrezcas, aborrezca, aborrezcámos, aborrezcáis, aborrezcan.

*Imperative.*

— aborrezca, aborrezcámos, — aborrezcan.

The Verb *HACER*, to do, to make, and its compounds, are exceptions to this rule, as will be seen in the following conjugation :

*Indicative Present.*

Hágo, — — — — —

*Perfect.*

Híce, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron.

*Futura.*

Haré, harás, hará, haremos, haréis, harán.

*Subjunctive Present.*

Hága, hagas, haga, hagámos, hagáis, hagan.

*Imperfect.*

Hiciéra, hiciéras, hiciéra, hiciéramos, hiciérais, hiciéran.  
Hiciése, hiciéses, hiciése, hiciésemos, hiciéseis, hiciésen.

*Future.*

Hiciere, hiciéres, hiciere, hiciéremos, hiciéreis, hiciéren.

*Imperative.*

haz, haga, hagámos, — hagan.

*Participle Past. Hécho.*

All the compounds of this Verb are conjugated in the same manner.

Of those Verbs ending in *ocer*, we must also except *COCER*, to boil, to bake, to cook ; *escocer*, to smart, to irritate ; and *recocer*, to reboil ; which notwithstanding their irregularity of changing the *o* into *ue*, they do not admit a *s* before the *c* ; but change the *o* into *s*, before *o* and *u*, as exhibited in the following conjugation.

*Indicative Present.*

Cuézo, cuéces, cuéce, — — — — — cuécen.

*Subjunctive Present.*

Cuéza, cuézas, cuéza, cozámos, cozáis, cuézan.

*Imperative.*

cuéce, cuéza, cozámos, — — — — — cuézan.

This Verb has a regular and an irregular past Participle, the latter is *cócho*.

*List of Verbs conjugated like ABORRECER.*

Abastecer,	to furnish, to provide.	entullecer,	to become a cripple.
acaecer,	to happen.	entumecer,	to swell.
adolecer,	to become infirm.	entristecer,	to sadden.
adormecer,	to become sleepy.	envegecer,	to grow old.
agradecer,	to be thankful.	enverdecer,	to become green.
amanecer,	to dawn.	escarnecer,	to scoff.
anohecer,	to grow dark.	esclarecer,	to illuminate.
apetecer,	to long for.	establecer,	to establish.
canecer,	to become grey-headed.	fallecer,	to fail, to die.
		favorecer,	to favour.
carecer,	to be deficient.	fenecer,	to finish.
conocer,	to know.	fortalecer,	to fortify.
convalecer,	to be convalescent.	guarnecer,	to furnish.
crecer,	to grow.	humedecer,	to moisten.
empobrecer,	to impoverish.	merecer,	to deserve.
encallecer,	to render callous.	nacer,	to be born.
encalvecer,	to become bald.	obedecer,	to obey.
encarecer,	to enhance.	oscurecer,	to darken.
encruelecer,	to render cruel.	ofrecer.	to offer.
endurecer,	to grow hard.	pacer,	to graze.
enflaquecer,	to grow weak.	padecer,	to suffer.
engrandecer,	to enlarge.	parecer,	to appear.
enloquecer,	to become mad.	perecer,	to perish.
ennegrecer,	to blacken.	pertenecer,	to belong.
ennoblecer,	to ennoble.	placer,	to please.
enrarecer,	to rarify.	prevalecer,	to prevail.
enriquecer,	to enrich.	remanecer,	to remain.
ensoberbecer,	to grow proud.	restablecer,	to re-establish.
enternecer,	to move to pity.		

And all their compounds.

*ABSORVER, To absorb.*

This Verb changes the *o* of the root into *ue*, in the same modes, tenses and persons as the Verb *acostar* does; but from its being of a different termination, its irregularities are here exhibited.

*Indicative Present.*

Absuérvo,	absuérves,	absuérve,	—	—	absuérven.
-----------	------------	-----------	---	---	------------

*Subjunctive Present.*

Absuérva,	absuérvas,	absuérva,	—	—	absuérvan.
-----------	------------	-----------	---	---	------------

*Imperative.*

absuérve,	absuérva,	—	—	absuérvan.
-----------	-----------	---	---	------------

*Absorver* has a regular and an irregular past Participle, the latter is *absórtio*.

*List of Verbs conjugated like ABSORVER.*

Disolver,*	to dissolve.	moler,	to grind.	oler,	to smell.
doler,	to grieve, to be in pain.	morder,	to bite.	torcer,	to twist.
llover,	to rain.	mover,	to move.	volver*,	to return.

And all their compounds.

\* The past Participles of *disolver*, and *volver*, are *disuélto*, and *vuélto*; the rest of this list have regular past Participles.



## ASCENDER, To ascend.

This Verb takes an *i*, before the *e* of the root, in the same modes, tenses and persons as does the Verb *acertar*; but its conjugation is here exhibited from its being of a different termination.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Asciendo,	asciendes,	asciende,	—	—	ascienden.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Ascienda,	asciendas,	ascienda,	—	—	asciendan.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
	asciende,	ascienda,	—	—	asciendan.

*List of Verbs conjugated like ASCENDER.*

Atender,	to attend.	encender,	to kindle.	perder,	to lose.
cerner,	to sift.	heder,	to stink.	tender,	to spread.
defender,	to defend.	hender,	to split.	verter,	to spell.

And all their compounds.

## CABER, To be contained, or to be capable of containing.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Quépo,	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Perfect.</i>					
Cúpe,	cupiste,	cúpo,	cupimos,	cupisteis,	cupieron.
<i>Future.</i>					
Cabré,	cabrás,	cabrá,	cabrémos,	cabréis,	cabrán.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Quépa,	quépas,	quépa,	quepámos,	quepáis,	quépan.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Cupiera,	cupieras,	cupiera,	cupiéramos,	cupierais,	cupieran.
Cabría,	cabrias,	cabría,	cabriámos,	cabriais,	cabrían.
Cupiese,	cupieses,	cupiese,	cupiésemos,	cupieseis,	cupiesen.
<i>Future.</i>					
Cupiere,	cupieres,	cupiere,	cupiéremos,	cupiereis,	cupieren.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
	—	quépa,	quepámos,	—	quépan.

## CAER, To fall.

This Verb admits *yg* after the *a* in the root, when the termination begins with *a* or *o*.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Cáyo,	—	—	—	—	—

<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Cáyga,	cáygas,	cáyga,	caygámos,	caygáis,	cáygan.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
—	cáyga,	caygámos,	—	—	cáygan.

Observe that in the regular tenses of this Verb, it is preferable to change the *i* that precedes another vowel, into *y*: thus instead of *caió*, *caíere*, &c. say *cayó*, *cayére*, &c. See the note after Par. 4, Lec. 24. *Decaer*, to decay, and *recaer*, to fall back, are conjugated like *caer*.

**HABER**, To have.

See this Verb conjugated at full, page 112.

**PODER**, To be able.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Puéo,	puédes,	puéde,	—	—	puéden.
<i>Perfect.</i>					
Púde,	pudíste,	púdo,	pudímos,	pudísteis,	pudiéron.
<i>Future.</i>					
Podré,	podrás,	podrá,	podrémos,	podréis,	podrán.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Puéda,	puédas,	puéda,	—	—	puédan.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Pudiera,	pudieras,	pudiera,	pudiéramos,	pudierais,	pudieran.
Podría,	podrías,	podría,	podríamos,	podríais,	podrían.
Pudiese,	pudieses,	pudiese,	pudiésemos,	pudieseis,	pudiesen.
<i>Future.</i>					
Pudiere,	pudieras,	pudiere,	pudiéremos,	pudiereis,	pudieren.
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>					
<i>Participle Active,</i>		Pudiendo.			

**PONER**, To put, to place.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Pongo,	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Perfect.</i>					
Púse,	pusiste,	púso,	pusímos,	pusisteis,	pusieron.
<i>Future.</i>					
Pondré,	pondrás,	pondrá,	pondrémos,	pondréis,	pondrán.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Póngas,	póngas,	póngas,	pongámos,	pongáis,	pongan.

*Imperfect.*

Pusiéra,	pusiéras,	pusiéra,	pusiéramos,	pusiérais,	pusiéran.
Pondría,	pondrías,	pondría,	pondríamos,	pondrías,	pondrían.
Pusiése,	pusiéses,	pusiése,	pusiésemos,	pusiéseis,	pusiésen.

*Future.*

Pusiére,	pusiéres,	pusiére,	pusiéremos,	pusiéreis,	pusiéren.
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperative.*

pon,	póna,	pongámos,	—	pongan.
------	-------	-----------	---	---------

*Participle Past,*      *Puesto.*

The compounds of *Poner*, are conjugated in the same manner.

*QUERER*, To wish, to be willing, to love.*Indicative Present.*

Quiéro,	quieres,	quiere,	—	—	quieren.
---------	----------	---------	---	---	----------

*Perfect.*

Quise,	quisiste,	quiso,	quisimos,	quisisteis,	quisieron.
--------	-----------	--------	-----------	-------------	------------

*Future.*

Querré,	querrás,	querrá,	querrémos,	querréis,	querrán.
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Subjunctive Present.*

Quiéra,	quieras,	quiera,	querámos,	queráis,	quieran.
---------	----------	---------	-----------	----------	----------

*Imperfect.*

Quisiéra,	quisieras,	quisiera,	quisiéramos,	quisiérais,	quisieran.
Querría,	querrías,	querria,	querriamos,	querriais,	querrian.
Quisiése,	quisiéses,	quisiése,	quisiésemos,	quisiéseis,	quisiésen.

*Future.*

Quisiére,	quisiéres,	quisiére,	quisiéremos,	quisiéreis,	quisiéren.
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

*Imperative.*

quiere,	quiera,	—	—	quieran.
---------	---------	---	---	----------

*SABER*, To know.*Indicative Present.*

Sé,	—	—	—	—	—
-----	---	---	---	---	---

*Perfect.*

Súpe,	supiste,	supo,	supimos,	supisteis,	supieron.
-------	----------	-------	----------	------------	-----------

*Future.*

Sabré,	sabrás,	sabrás,	sabríamos,	sabréis,	sabrán.
--------	---------	---------	------------	----------	---------

*Subjunctive Present.*

Sépa,	sépas,	sépa,	sepámos,	sepáis,	sepan.
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Imperfect.*

Supiéra,	supieras,	supiéra,	supiéramos,	supiérais,	supieran.
Sabría,	sabrias,	sabría,	sabríamos,	sabríais,	sabrian.
Supiése,	supiéses,	supiése,	supiésemos,	supiéseis,	supiésen.

*Future.*

Supiere, supières, supiere, supiéremos, supiereis, supieren.

*Imperative.*

— sépa, sepámos, — sépan.

SER, To be.

See this Verb conjugated at full, Page 115.

TENER, To have.

See also this Verb conjugated at full, Page 113. Its compounds are conjugated in same manner.

TRAER, To bring, to fetch.

*Indicative Present.*

Tráyo, — — — —

*Perfect.*

Tráge, tragíste, trájó, tragímos, tragísteis, trageron.

*Subjunctive Present.*

Tráya, tráygaa, tráya, traygámos, traygáis, tráyan.

*Imperfect.*

Trágera, trágeras, trágera, trágeramos, trágerais, trágeran.  
Trácese, tráceses, trácese, trácesemos, tráceseis, trácesen.

*Future.*

Trágere, trágeres, trágere, trágeremos, trágeréis, trágeren.

*Imperative.*

— tráya, traygámos, — tráyan.

*Participle Active, Trayéndo.*

Its compounds are conjugated in the same manner.

VALER, To be worth.

*Indicative Present.*

Válgo, — — — —

*Future.*

Valdré, valdrás, valdrá, valdrémos, valdréis, valdrán.

*Subjunctive Present.*

Válga, válgas, válga, valgámos, valgáis, válgan.

*Imperfect.*

Valdría, valdrías, valdría, valdríamos, valdríais, valdrían.

*Imperative.*

válga, valgámos, — válgan.

*Equivaler*, to be equivalent, is conjugated in the same manner.

## VER, To see.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Véo,	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Veía,	veías,	veía,	veíamos,	veíais,	veían.
It has also a regular imperfect tense, as, <i>vía, vías, &amp;c.</i>					
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Véa,	véas,	véa,	veámos,	veáis,	véan.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
—	—	véa,	veámos,	—	véan.
Its compounds are conjugated in the same manner.					

## IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ASIR, To seize.

This Verb admits a *g* after the *s* in the root, when the termination begins with *a* or *o*.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Ásigo,	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Ásiga,	ásgas,	ásga,	aagámos,	asgáis,	ásgan.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
—	—	ásga,	asgámos,	—	ásgan.

## DECIR, To say, to tell.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Dígo,	díces,	díce,	—	—	dícen.
<i>Perfect.</i>					
Díge,	digíste,	díjo,	digímos,	digísteis,	digéron.
<i>Future.</i>					
Diré,	dirás,	diré,	dirémos,	diréis,	dirán.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Díga,	dígas,	díga,	digámos,	digáis,	dígan.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Digéra,	digéras,	digéra,	digéramos,	digérais,	digéran.
Diría,	dirías,	diría,	diríamos,	diríais,	dirían.
Digése,	digésas,	digése,	digésemos,	digésais,	digésen.

<i>Future.</i>					
Digére,	digéres,	digére,	digéremos,	digéreis,	digéren.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
	dí,	díga,	dígamos,	——	dígan.
<i>Participle Past.</i> Dicho.					

*Contradecir*, to contradict, and *prededir*, to predict, are conjugated like *decir*, except that the second person singular of the imperative is *contradíce* and *predíce*.

*Bendecir*, to bless, and *maldecir*, to curse, are also conjugated like *decir*, except that the future of the indicative, and the imperfect subjunctive of the termination *ria* are regular, and that the second person singular of the imperative is *bendíce*, *maldíce*. These two Verbs have each a regular and an irregular past Participle; the latter is *bendíto* and *maldíto*, and partake of the nature of Adjectives.

### DORMIR, To sleep.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Duérmo,	duérmes,	duérme,	——	——	duérmen.
<i>Perfect.</i>					
——	——	durmió,	——	——	durmiéron.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Duéрма,	duérmas,	duérma,	durmámos,	durmáis,	duérman.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Durmiéra,	durmiéras,	durmiéra,	durmiéramos,	durmiérais,	durmiéran.
Durmiése,	durmiéses,	durmiése,	durmiésemos,	durmiéseis,	durmiésen.
<i>Future.</i>					
Durmiére,	durmiéres,	durmiére,	durmiéremos,	durmiéreis,	durmiéren.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
	duérme,	duérma,	durmámos,	——	duérman.
<i>Participle Active.</i> Durmiendo.					

*Morir*, to die, is conjugated like *dormir*, except that its past Participle is *muerto*.

### INSTRUIR, To instruct.

When the root of Verbs of the third conjugation ends in *u*, (as in *instruir*), this vowel takes a *y* after it, before those terminations beginning with *e*, *a*, or *o*.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Instrúyo,	instrúyes,	instrúye,	——	——	instrúyen.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Instrúya,	instrúyas,	instrúya,	instruyámos,	instruyáis,	instrúyan.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
	instrúye,	instrúya,	instruyámos,	——	instrúyan.

*Note.*—In the tenses of this Verb, which are regular, most writers change the *i* of the termination into *y*; thus, *instruyó*, *instruyé*, &c., instead of *instruió*, *instruiera*. But this change is not considered an irregularity.

*List of Verbs conjugated like INSTRUIR.*

Argüir, to argue.	desminuir, to diminish.	luir, to wear by friction.
atribuir, to attribute.	destribuir, to distribute.	obstruir, to obstruct.
concluir*, to conclude.	fluir, to flow.	prostituir, to prostitute.
constituir, to constitute.	huir, to fly.	recluir, to cloister.
construir, to construe.	imbuir, to imbue.	restituir, to restore.
contribuir, to contribute.	incluיר, to include.	retribuir, to compensate.
destruir, to destroy.	instituir, to institute.	substituir, to substitute.

And all their compounds.

*IR, To go.*

This Verb is one of the most irregular ones in the Spanish Language. It is also remarkable for having the perfect tense of the indicative, and the terminations *ra* and *se* of the imperfect subjunctive, conjugated precisely like those of the Verb *ser*.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Voy,	vas,	va,	vámos,	vais,	van.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Íba,	ibas,	iba,	íbamos,	ibais,	iban.
<i>Perfect.</i>					
Fuí,	fuste,	fué,	fuímos,	fuísteis,	fuéron.
<i>Future.</i>					
Iré,	irás,	irá,	irémos,	iréis,	irán.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Váya,	váyas,	váya,	vayámos,	vayáis,	váyan.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Fuéra,	fuéras,	fuéra,	fuéramos,	fuérais,	fuéran.
Iría,	irías,	iría,	iríamos,	iríais,	irían.
Fuése,	fuéses,	fuése,	fuésemos,	fuéseis,	fuésen.
<i>Future.</i>					
Fuere,	fuéres,	fuere,	fuéremos,	fuereis,	fuéren.
<i>Participle Active.</i>			Yéndo.		
<i>Participle Past.</i>			Ido.		

*LUCIR, To shine.*

This Verb has the same irregularity as the Verb *aborracer*; but its conjugation is here exhibited from its being of a different termination.

\* This Verb has a regular and an irregular past Participle: the latter is *concluso*.

† This Verb has also, in addition to its regular past Participle, a regular one, which is *incluso*.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
Lúzco	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Lúzca,	lúzcás,	lúzca,	luzcámos,	luzcáis,	lúzcan.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
_____	lúzca,	luzcámos,	_____	lúzcan.	

Its compounds are conjugated in the same manner.

Verbs ending in *ducir*, as *CONducir*, to conduct, in addition to the irregularities in *lucir* have also the following:

<i>Indicative Perfect.</i>					
Condúge,	condugíste,	condújo,	condugímos,	condugísteis,	condugéron
<i>Subjunctive Imperfect.</i>					
Condugéra,	condugéras,	condugéra,	condugéramos,	condugérais,	condugéran
Condugése,	condugéses,	condugése,	condugésemos,	condugéseis,	condugésen
<i>Future.</i>					
Condugére,	condugéres,	condugére,	condugéremos,	condugéreis,	condugéren

The following are conjugated like *CONducir*.

Deducir,	to deduct.	producir,	to produce.
inducir,	to induce.	reducir,	to reduce.
introducir,	to introduce.	traducir,	to translate.

### *OIR*, To hear.

The irregularities in this Verb, are like those in the Verb *caer*; they are nevertheless here exhibited from its being of a different termination.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
ygo	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
yga,	óygas,	óyga,	oygámos,	oygáis,	óygan.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
óye,	óyga,	oygámos,	_____	óygan.	

*Entreoir*, to hear imperfectly, is conjugated in the same manner.

### *PEDIR*, To ask, to beg.

<i>Indicative Present.</i>					
do,	pídes,	píde,	_____	_____	píden.
<i>Perfect.</i>					
_____	_____	pidió,	_____	_____	pidiéron.



*Subjunctive Present.*

Pída,	pídas,	pída,	pidámos,	pidáis,	pidan.
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Imperfect.*

Pidiéra,	pidieras,	pidiera,	pidiéramos,	pidiérais,	pidieran.
Pidiése,	pidieses,	pidiese,	pidiésemos,	pidiéseis,	pidiesen.

*Future.*

Pidiere,	pidieres,	pidiere,	pidiéremos,	pidiereis,	pidieren.
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperative.*

píde,	pída,	pidámos,	——	pidan.
-------	-------	----------	----	--------

*Participle Active.* Pidiendo.*List of Verbs conjugated like PEDIR.*

Ceñir, to girdle, to bind.	engreirse, to adorn one-	rendir, to subject, to
colegir, to collect.	self.	render.
competir, to rival.	freir*, to fry.	reñir, to quarrel, to
concebir, to conceive.	gemir, to groan.	repetir, to repeat. [scold.
constreñir, to constrain.	heñir, to knead.	seguir, to follow.
derretir, to melt.	medir, to measure.	servir, to serve.
desleir, to dilute.	regir, to rule.	teñir, to dye.
elegir, to elect.	reir, to laugh.	vestir, to dress.

And all their compounds.

*PODRIR, To rot.**Indicative Present.*

Púdo,	púdes,	púde,	——	——	púden.
-------	--------	-------	----	----	--------

*Perfect.*

Pudrí,	pudriste,	pudrí,	pudrímos,	pudristeis,	pudrieron.
--------	-----------	--------	-----------	-------------	------------

*Subjunctive Present.*

Púdra,	púdras,	púdra,	pudrámos,	pudráis,	púdran.
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Imperfect.*

Pudriéra,	pudrieras,	pudriéra,	pudriéramos,	pudrierais,	pudrieran.
Pudriése,	pudrieses,	pudriése,	pudriésemos,	pudriéseis,	pudriesen.

*Future.*

Pudriere,	pudrieres,	pudriere,	pudriéremos,	pudriereis,	pudrieren.
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

*Imperative.*

púde,	púdra,	pudrámos,	——	púdran.
-------	--------	-----------	----	---------

*Participle Active.* Pudriendo.*SALIR, To go out.*

This Verb has the same irregularities as *valer*, except the second person singular of the imperative; and it is here exhibited from its being of a different termination.

\* The Participle past of *freir* is *frito*.

*Indicative Present.*

Sálgo,	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Future.</i>					
Saldré,	saldrás,	saldrá,	saldrémos,	saldréis,	saldrán.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Sálga,	sálgas,	sálga,	salgámos,	salgáis,	sálgan.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Saldría,	saldrían,	saldría,	saldríamos,	saldríais,	saldrían.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
	sal,	sálga,	salgámos,	_____	sálgan.

Its compound *sobresalir*, to excel, is conjugated in the same manner.

*SENTIR*, To feel, to regret, to perceive.*Indicative Present.*

Siénto,	siéntes,	siénte,	_____	_____	siénten.
<i>Perfect.</i>					
_____	_____	sintió,	_____	_____	sintieron.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Siénta,	siéntas,	siénta,	sintámos,	sintáis,	siéntan.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Sintiera,	sintieras,	sintiera,	sintiéramos,	sintiérais,	sintieran.
Sintiese,	sintieses,	sintiese,	sintiésemos,	sintiéseis,	sintiesen.
<i>Future.</i>					
Sintiere,	sintieres,	sintiere,	sintiéremos,	sintiéreis,	sintieren.
<i>Participle Active.</i> <i>Sintiéndo.</i>					

*List of Verbs conjugated like SENTIR.*

Adherir,	to adhere.	convertir,	to convert.	hervir,	to boil.
advertir,	to warn.	deferir,	to defer, to	invertir*,	to invert.
arrepentirse,	to repent.		delay.	ingerir†,	to ingraft.
conferir,	to confer.	diferir,	to differ.	mentir,	to lie.
controvertir,	to contro-	digerir,	to digest.	referir,	to refer.
vert.		herir,	to wound.	requerir,	to require.

And all their compounds.

*VENIR*, To come.*Indicative Present.*

Véngo,	viénes,	viéne,	_____	_____	viénen.
--------	---------	--------	-------	-------	---------

\* *Invertir* has a regular and an irregular Participle past, the latter is *inverso*.

† *Ingerir* has also a regular and an irregular Participle past, the latter is *ingérto*.

<i>Perfect.</i>					
Vine,	viniste,	vino,	vinimos,	vinisteis,	vinieron.
<i>Future.</i>					
Vendré,	vendrás,	vendrá,	vendremos,	vendréis,	vendrán.
<i>Subjunctive Present.</i>					
Venga,	vengas,	venga,	vengamos,	vengáis,	vengan.
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
Viniéra,	viniéras,	viniéra,	viniéramos,	viniérais,	viniéran.
Vendría,	vendrías,	vendría,	vendríamos,	vendríais,	vendrían.
Viniése,	viniéses,	viniése,	viniésemos,	viniéseis,	viniésen.
<i>Future.</i>					
Viniére,	viniéres,	viniére,	viniéremos,	viniéreis,	viniéren.
<i>Imperative.</i>					
ven,	venga,	vengamos,	———	vengan.	
<i>Participle Active.</i>					
Viniendo.					

All its compounds are conjugated in the same manner.

2. Participles past that do not terminate in *ado*, or in *ido*, are irregular : such are the following and their compounds.

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participle Past.</i>	
Abrir,	to open.	Abierto,	opened.
absolver,	to absolve.	absuelto,	absolved.
cubrir.	to cover.	cubierto,	covered.
decir,	to say, to tell.	dicho,	said, told.
disolver,	to dissolve.	disuelto,	dissolved.
escribir,	to write.	escrito,	written.
hacer,	to do, to make.	hecho,	done, made.
morir,	to die.	muerto,	dead.
poner,	to put, to place.	puesto,	put, placed.
resolver,	to resolve.	resuelto,	resolved.
ver,	to see, to look.	visto,	seen, looked.
volver,	to return.	vuelto,	returned.

3. The following is a list of regular and irregular Verbs that have two Participles past, the one regular, the other irregular : the former is employed with the Verb *haber*, to form the compound tenses ; the latter partakes of the nature of an Adjective, and is not employed to form the compound tenses of Verbs ; except, however, *preso*, *prescrito*, *provisto*, and *roto*, which are sometimes seen used with *haber*, instead of *prendido*, *prescrito*, *proveído*, and *rompido*.

<i>atives.</i>		<i>Reg. Past Part.</i>	<i>Irr. Past Part.</i>	
ar	to surfeit,	ahitado	ahito	surfeited.
lecir	to bless,	bendecido	bendito	blessed.
pelar	to compel,	compelido	compulso	compelled.
luir	to conclude,	concluido	concluso	concluded.
undir	to confound,	confundido	confuso	confused.
encer	to convince,	convencido	convicto	convinced.
ertir	to convert,	convertido	converso	converted.
ertar	to awake,	despertado	despierto	awaked.
r	to elect,	elegido	electo	elected.
gar	to dry,	enjugado	enjuto	dried.
uir	to exclude,	escluido	escluso	excluded.
ler	to expel,	espelido	espulso	expelled.
esar	to express,	espresado	espreso	expressed.
guir	to extinguish,	estinguuido	estinto	extinguished.
	to fix,	fijado	fijo	fixed.
ar	to satiate,	hartado	harto	satiated.
uir	to include,	incluido	incluso	included.
rir	to incur,	incurrido	incurso	incurred.
tar	to insert,	insertado	inserto	inserted.
tir	to invert,	invertido	inverso	inverted.
ir	to ingraft,	ingerido	ingerto	ingrafted.
ur	to join,	juntado	junto	joined.
ecir	to curse,	maldecido	maldito	cursed.
festar	to manifest,	manifestado	manifesto	manifested.
hitar	to wither,	marchitado	marchito	withered.
ir	to omit,	omitido	omiso	omitted.
air	to oppress,	oprimido	opreso	oppressed.
ccionar	to perfect,	perfeccionado	perfecto	perfected.
der	to seize,	prendido	preso	seized.
ribir	to prescribe,	prescrito	prescrito	prescribed.
er	to provide,	proveido	provisto	provided.
ir	to shut up,	recluido	recluso	shut up.
er	to break,	rompido	roto	broken.
r	to let loose,	soltado	suelto	let loose.
mir	to suppress,	suprimido	supreso	suppressed.

## CONJUGATION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

In Lec. 21, Par. 10, the meaning of impersonal Verbs explained : we will now proceed to their conjugations and loyment.

*HABER, To be.*

e Verb *haber*, used impersonally, is employed the same in both number and like all impersonal Verbs, it is used only in the third person of tense, as seen as follows :

*Infinitive.*

Haber, To be.

*Indicative Present.*

Hay, There is, or there are.

*Imperfect.*

Había, There was, or there were.

*Perfect.*

Húbo, There was, or there were.

*Future.*

Habr , There will be.

*Subjunctive Present.*

H ya, There may be.

*Imperfect.*

Hubiérga, habr a, hubiése, There should, might, or would be.

*Future.*

Hubiére, If there should be.

*Imperative.*

H ya, Let there be.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Hay un hombre que le espera,</i>	<i>There is a man waiting for you.</i>
<i>Hab�a muchos,</i>	<i>There were many.</i>
<i>Habr� gran cantidad,</i>	<i>There will be a great quantity.</i>
<i>Jamas ha habido cosa mas hermosa,</i>	<i>There never has been any thing more beautiful.</i>

*AMANECE*R, To dawn, and *ANOCHECE*R, To become night, are irregular in their conjugations like *aborracer*: the following are a few examples on them.

<i>Amanece ahora muy temprano,</i>	<i>Day breaks very early now.</i>
<i>Amaneci� (esta ma�ana) lloviendo,</i>	<i>It rained (this morning) at day break.</i>
<i>Anochece muy tarde,</i>	<i>It grows dark very late.</i>
<i>Presto anochecer� mas temprano,</i>	<i>It will soon be night earlier.</i>

The Verbs *amanecer* and *anochecer* are sometimes used with the three persons, and denote the situation or condition of the nominative at the time expressed by the Verb: Ex.

<i>Amanec� en Madrid, y anochece en Toledo,</i>	<i>I was at Madrid at the dawn of day, and at Toledo by night.</i>
<i>Amaneci� de mal humor,</i>	<i>He awoke this morning in a bad humour.</i>

*GRANIZAR*, To hail; *LLOVIZNAR*, To drizzle; and *RELAMPAGUEAR*, To lighten, are regular in their conjugations.

*HELAR*, To freeze, and *NEVAR*, To snow, are irregular like *acertar*.

*LLOVER*, To rain, and *TRONAR*, To thunder, are irregular like *absorver*: Examples.

<i>Graniza ahora, y quiz� helar� luego,</i>	<i>It hails now, and probably it may freeze presently.</i>
<i>Ha llovinado un poco,</i>	<i>It has drizzled a little.</i>
<i>Ayer tron� y relampague� repetidas veces,</i>	<i>It thundered and lightened yesterday repeatedly.</i>
<i>Habia nevado mucho,</i>	<i>It had snowed much.</i>
<i>No puedo ir porque llueve,</i>	<i>I cannot go because it rains.</i>

5. There are some Verbs which do not belong to the class of impersonal Verbs, but which are sometimes employed as such : Ex.

*Es tarde, será preciso ir,  
Es menester que se haga hoy.  
Hace buen tiempo, ha'e frío,  
Basta que vmd. lo diga,  
Conviene hacerlo,  
Sucedió conforme lo pensaba,  
Parece que no vendrá,*

*It is late, it will be necessary to go.  
It must be done to day.  
It is fine weather, it is cold.  
It is sufficient that you say so.  
It ought to be done.  
It happened as I thought.  
It appears that he will not come.*

6. When in English the Pronoun *it*, followed by any part of the Verb *to be*, comes before a Noun or Pronoun, the Verb always remains in the third person singular, whatever may be the number or person of the Noun or Pronoun that follows ; as, *It is I who* ; *It was they that* ; *It was the men that*. There must be taken however in the translation, to make the Verb agree in number and person with the Noun or Pronoun that follows it : Ex.

*It is I who say so,  
It was they that did it,  
It was the men that came,*

*Soy yo que lo digo,  
Eran ellos los que lo hicieron.  
Fueron los hombres los que vinieron.*

#### DEFECTIVE VERBS.

7. In Lec. 21, Par. 11, the meaning of defective Verbs is defined. The defective Verbs commonly in use in Spanish, are *Placer*, to please ; *Soler*, to be wont ; and *Yacer*, to lie.

*PLACER* is used only in the following tenses and persons.

##### *Indicative Present.*

*Pláce,* It pleases.

##### *Imperfect.*

*Placía,* It pleased.

##### *Perfect.*

*Plúgo,* It pleased.

##### *Subjunctive Present.*

*Plégué,* It may please.

##### *Imperfect.*

*Pluguiéra or pluguiése,* It should, might or would please.

##### *Future.*

*Pluguiére,* If it should please.

##### *Imperative.*

*Plégué,* May it please.

## EXAMPLES.

Mucho me place,	It <i>pleases</i> me much.
Plague á Dios que venga,	God <i>grant</i> that he may come.
Pluguiera á Dios que jamas no	Would to God that thou hadst never
hubieras venido,	come.

*SOLER* is used only in the two following tenses.

*Indicative Present.*

Suélo,	I am wont.
suéles,	thou art wont.
suéle,	he is wont.
solémos,	we are wont.
soléis,	you are wont.
suélen,	they are wont.

*Imperfect.*

Solía,	I was wont.
solías,	thou wast wont.
solía,	he was wont.
solíamos,	we were wont.
soliais,	you were wont.
solían,	they were wont.

Of *YACER*, only the third person singular and plural, of the present and imperfect of the indicative, are now in use, and generally in epitaphs, or figuratively: Ex.

Aquí yace or yacen,	Here lieth or lie.
Aquí yacia or yacian,	Here lay.

## OF VERBS USED NEGATIVELY.

8. In Spanish the negative *no*, invariably precedes the Verb, or its auxiliary, and should there be a Pronoun of the dative or accusative case before the Verb, the negative precedes both: Ex.

No puedo venir,	I cannot come.
No le veo,	I do not see him.
No le he hablado,	I have not spoken to him.

Two negatives do not destroy each other in Spanish, as they do in English; on the contrary, they add strength to one another: Ex.

No tengo nada que dar á vmd.	I have <i>nothing</i> to give you.
No lo sabe nadie,	<i>Nobody</i> knows it.
No lo he visto jamas,	I have <i>never</i> seen it.

These phrases, nevertheless, may with equal propriety, though perhaps with less energy, be expressed thus; *Nada tengo que dar á vmd. ; Nadie lo sabe ; Jamas lo he visto.*

## OF VERBS USED INTERROGATIVELY.

9. With regard to the order of construction preserved in interrogative sentences, no precise rule can be given; it is

the modulation of the voice that mostly determines, in speaking, when the Verb is used interrogatively; and in writing, the note of interrogation. However the nominative, when expressed, is generally placed after the Verb (though not always immediately after it, unless it be a Pronoun) in interrogative sentences, in the natural order; but this order may, for energy or elegance, be inverted. Observe, that the auxiliary *do*, used in English in negative and interrogative sentences, is not translated in Spanish.

## LECTURE XXVI.

### AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS NOMINATIVE.

1. In Lec. 21, Par. 21. something has been said respecting the agreement of the Verb in English with its agent or nominative: it remains now to be explained how this agreement is effected in Spanish; and first, the Verb agrees with its nominative case in *number* and *person*: Ex.

Yo leo,	I read.	Ellos estudian,	They study.
Ella canta,	She sings.	El sol luce,	The sun shines.

In the first example, we see the Verb *leo* is put in the first person and singular number, because *yo*, its nominative, is of that person and number: In the second, the Verb *canta*, agrees with its nominative *ella* in the third person singular; and so on with the rest.

2. When a Verb has several nominatives connected by the copulative Conjunction *y*, it agrees in number and person with the Pronoun understood, if it follows the subjects: Ex.

Mi hermano y él han salido,	My sister and he <i>are</i> gone out.
Tú y él seréis premiados,	Thou and he <i>will be</i> rewarded.

The Pronouns understood in these examples, will be *ellos* in the first, and *vosotros* in the second.

But when the Verb precedes the subjects, it is generally made to agree in number and person with the nearest: Ex.

Nunca <i>fué</i> tan espuesto su valor y constancia,	Never was his valor and constancy so much exposed.
Me <i>ha</i> gustado mucho la novela y los poemas,	I was much pleased with the novel and poems.
Me <i>parecieron</i> muy bien escritas las cartas y el episodio,	The letters and episode appeared to me to be very well written.



3. If the nominatives be connected by any other Conjunction than *y*, the Verb, whether it precede or follow the nominatives, is generally made to agree, in number and person, with the nearest : Ex.

No solamente vmd. y él, sino yo tambien Not only you and he, but I also  
lo sabia, knew it,  
No solamente yo y él, sino vmds. tambien Not only I and he, but you also  
lo sabian, knew it.

4. A Verb having a relative Pronoun for its nominative, agrees with the word, to which the relative refers : Ex.

Soy yo el que lo digo, It is I who said so.  
Los que lo dicen se engañan, Those that say so are deceived.

#### EXERCISE ON THE AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS NOMINATIVE.

Herodotus was the first writer of profane history. Plato was a  
Heródoto escritor profano Platon  
disciple of Socrates. You and he consented to it. We and they were  
discípulo \_\_\_\_\_ consentir en

appointed. Her modesty and her virtues were much extolled. It was  
nombrar. alabar.

Constantine who ordered that all the heathen temples should be destroyed.  
Constantino mandar gentil templo

It was the Arabians that introduced the figures of arithmetic into Europe.  
A'rábe introducir figura aritmética

It is we and they who say so. It is those two houses that [are to be sold.]  
lo. estan por vender.

#### GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

5. All active transitive Verbs have the power of governing other words ;—The word governed is called the *regimen* of the Verb ;—The regimen may be either a Noun, a Pronoun, or an Infinitive.

6. Active transitive Verbs, govern the word to which their energy or meaning is directed, in the accusative case, with or without a Preposition as the occasion may require. See observations on the employment of the Preposition *á* in the accusative case, Lec. 9, Par. 16 : Ex.

Amar á Dios, To love God.  
Despreciar la mentira, To despise falsehood.

7. Many neuter Verbs have not the power of conveying their meaning to another object, and have therefore no

government: such are *nacer*, to be born: *crecer*, to grow; and all those in which there is no apparent action in their meaning. There are, however, some neuter Verbs, that have an active signification, and convey their meaning to another object by means of Prepositions: Ex.

<i>Ir á Madrid,</i>	To go to Madrid.
<i>Venir de Segovia,</i>	To come from Segovia.
<i>Aprender á leer,</i>	To learn to read.

8. Reflective Verbs also govern their regimen in the accusative case; which regimen is the personal Pronoun annexed to them: Ex.

<i>Se aman,</i>	They love each other.
<i>Nos amamos,</i>	We love one another.
<i>Está vistiéndose,</i>	She is dressing herself.

*Note.*—If to the reflective Verb there follow a Noun, Pronoun, or an infinitive, these are preceded by the Preposition *de*: Ex.

<i>Se acuerda de su promesa,</i>	He remembers his promise.
<i>Me acordaré de vmd.,</i>	I well remember you.
<i>No se olvide vmd. de venir,</i>	Do not forget to come.

*Observation.* It may not be amiss to notice here that passive Verbs also, require *de*, before the word by which they are followed: Ex.

<i>Eloisa fué amada de Abelardo,</i>	Heloise was beloved by Abelard.
<i>Es aborrecido de todos,</i>	He is hated by everybody.

Sometimes however the Preposition *de* may be substituted by *por*, but it must nevertheless be observed, that these two Prepositions are not always indiscriminately used with passive Verbs:—for if the Verb denote an action of the body, *por* should be employed; as *Fué muerto por un asesino*, He was murdered by an assassin. But if the action expressed by the Verb denote a will, or an effect of the mind, then either *de* or *por* may be used; though the preference appears to be given to the former; as,

<i>La obra fué censurada de or por los críticos,</i>	The work was censured by the critics.
<i>Virginia fué amada de Pablo,</i>	Virginia was loved by Paul.

#### OF PREPOSITIONS EMPLOYED WITH VERBS.

9. The observations in Lec. 14. Par. 14, respecting the Prepositions employed with Adjectives, may be also applied to Prepositions used with Verbs; as the Spanish and English

Languages differ very materially as regards the Preposition to be employed: and in order to facilitate a subject of such importance to the learner, he is here again referred to the list of Verbs, and other words, that govern with Prepositions, in the Appendix, where, by looking for the Verb he may require, or one of nearly the same import, he will find annexed to it, the corresponding Preposition. He is also referred to Lec. 28, Par. 18 to 25, for all that is there mentioned respecting the government of Prepositions, which it is hoped will materially assist him in surmounting one of the most difficult obstacles in language.

#### GOVERNMENT OF VERBS AS RELATES TO MODES AND TENSES.

10. A Verb active transitive may govern another Verb, either in the infinitive, the indicative, or the subjunctive mode. The Verb that governs is called the *governing* Verb, and that which it governs, is called the Verb *governed*. Now, as the governed Verb is not always put in the same mode and tense in the Spanish and English languages, the student's attention is called to the following observations, which are intended to point out, in several cases, the difference that in this respect exists in the two languages.

##### I.

In Spanish the most part of the governed Verbs are generally put in the infinitive, when there is but one agent to both Verbs: that is, when the Verb governed, expresses something relative to the nominative of the governing Verb: Ex.

Yo queria *ver* á vmd,  
 Prometieron *hacerlo*,  
 El sabe *escribir*,

I wanted to see you.  
 They promised to do it.  
 He knows how to write.

##### II.

In these examples we see that both languages agree in the employment of the infinitive with the governed Verb. But if each Verb have a different agent, then the governed Verb in Spanish, is either put in the indicative, or the subjunctive mode, as the occasion may require, and preceded by the conjunction *que*: Ex.

Deseo *que* vmd. *le escriba*,  
 Mandó *que* (ellos) *fuesen*,  
 Me parece *que* (ellos) *están malos*,

I wish you to write to him.  
 He desired them to go.  
 They appear to me to be ill.

Here we see that the governed Verb in Spanish, is put in one of the tenses of either the indicative or subjunctive mode, while in either case it remains in the infinitive mode in English. The placing of the governed Verb in Spanish in the indicative or subjunctive mode, is not a matter of indifference; but one which mostly depends on the nature of the governing Verb, and greatly on taste, and which will be presently noticed.

It is not absolutely necessary that the governed Verb in the foregoing examples in English, should be placed in the infinitive: for we may give their corresponding Spanish phrases a literal translation: thus, *I wish that you write to him, He desired that they should go, It appears to me that they are ill.*

These rules extend even to intransitive Verbs, the signification of which, does not pass over to the governed Verb, without the assistance of a Preposition: Ex.

Vendré á ver á vmd.,	I shall come to see you.
Nacemos para morir,	We are born to die.
He venido para que vmd. pueda ir,	I have come in order that you might go.

Reciprocal Verbs, likewise govern their regimen, as intransitive Verbs do: Ex.

Me acostumbro á trabajar,	I accustom myself to work.
Me alegro que lo sepa,	I am glad that he should know it.

It has just been observed, that when the governing Verb has a different agent to the Verb governed, the latter is placed either in the indicative or subjunctive mode, as the occasion may require: this also occurs sometimes when both Verbs have the same agent. The following rules may serve to direct the learner in many instances, in what mode and tense to employ the governed Verb.

### III.

Verbs that denote *will, desire, joy, fear, doubt, demand or pretension*, and such as are of the like import, when in the present or future tense of the indicative, govern their regimen with the conjunction *que*, in the present, or compound present of the subjunctive: Ex.

Me alegraré que vmd. se divierta,	I hope that you may be entertained.
Temo que lo hayan sabido,	I fear they may have known it.
Me admiro que vmd. lo haya dicho,	I am surprised at your having said so.
Deseo que vmd. me informe,	I wish you to inform me.
Dudo que venga,	I doubt that he will come.
El juez manda que venga,	The judge orders him to come.

## IV.

If the governing Verb be in any of the past tenses of the indicative, the governed Verb should be in the imperfect subjunctive with the terminations, *ra* or *se*, or its compound: Ex.

Le <i>pedí</i> que me <i>enviara</i> or <i>enviase</i> algunos libros.	I requested him to send me some books.
<i>Deseaba</i> , or <i>había deseado</i> que se <i>hubiesen</i> or <i>hubieran</i> ido,	I wished, or had wished that they had gone.

## V.

If the governing Verb be in the compound future indicative, the Verb governed is generally placed in the present subjunctive, or in the imperfect, with the termination *ra* or *se*: Ex.

Quizá le <i>habrá</i> ordenado que <i>venga</i> , or,	Perhaps he may have ordered him to come.
que <i>viniera</i> or <i>viniese</i> ,	

## VI.

A Verb in the indicative mode, that implies *saying*, *thinking*, *declaring*, *manifesting*, *conceiving* or such like, may govern another Verb in either of the tenses of the indicative mode, or in the imperfect subjunctive, simple or compound, in any of the terminations, as the occasion may require, provided the nominative of the governing Verb refer also to the Verb governed: Ex.

<i>Digo</i> que lo <i>sé</i> , que lo <i>supo</i> , que lo <i>sabré</i> ,	I say that I know it, knew it, or will know it.
<i>Declararon</i> que lo <i>vieron</i> , or que lo <i>habían visto</i> ,	They declared that they saw it, or had seen it.
<i>Creí</i> que <i>podría</i> venir,	I thought I could come.
<i>Digo</i> que se lo <i>diría</i> ,	I said that I would tell it to him.
<i>Temí</i> que no <i>fuera</i> capaz de hacerlo,	I thought I could not be able to do it.

## VII.

But if the nominative of the governing Verb, should not relate to the Verb governed, and the former be in the present of the indicative, the Verb governed may be put either in the future of the indicative or the present subjunctive, or the imperfect of the same mode with the termination *ria*.

<i>Imagino</i> or <i>pienso</i> que se <i>sentenciará</i> , or, que se <i>sentencie</i> , or que se <i>sentenciaria</i> la causa á mi favor,	I imagine or think that the case will be sentenced or would be sentenced in my favour.
--	--

### VIII.

And if the governing Verb be in any of the past tenses of the indicative, the Verb governed is generally put in the imperfect subjunctive (in either of the terminations), or its compounds : Ex.

*Creía, juzgaba que cantara, cantaría,* I believed or judged that she would  
or *cantase,* or, *que hubiera, habría,* sing, or would have sung.  
or *hubiese cantado,*  
*Habíamos juzgado que no cantara, &c.* We had judged that she would not  
sing, &c.

Sometimes however, for the sake of variety, we may put the governed Verb in such cases, in the imperfect indicative : as *creía que cantaba*.—And it may not be deemed improper to add, that notwithstanding these rules, which are chiefly extracted from the Grammar of the Academy, and which in many instances may serve as guides to the learner ; he is not to suppose that they are applicable in every case that may occur in the course of conversation ; nor is it practicable to lay down any set of fixed rules to apply to what admits of such endless variety of taste : The reading of good works will be of far greater assistance to him in such cases, than all the rules that could be given.

## LECTURE XXVII.

### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

1. The meaning of this part of speech has been explained in Lec. 4, Par. 9. We have now to observe that Adverbs, are either simple or compound. Those that constitute but one word, are simple, and the compound are formed by the addition of one or more syllables to the adverb in its simple form ; or they consist of more than one word. Thus *mas, menos,* (more, less) are simple ; and *ademas, asimismo,* (besides, in the same manner) are compound.

2. For the more correct application of Adverbs, Grammarians have divided them into different classes, according to their signification, as seen in the following lists. Those Adverbs marked with an asterisk, will be particularly noticed in Par. 11 to 16, of this lecture.

## ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Donde*,	Where.	arriba,	above, up.
adonde*,	whither.	abajo, debajo,	below, under.
de donde,	whence.	por debajo,	underneath.
aquí*, acá*,	here; hither.	delante,	before.
acullá,	yonder.	detrás,	behind.
allí*, ahí*, allá*,	there.	aparte,	aside.
de aquí,	hence.	cerca,	near.
de allí,	thence.	junto,	next, joining.
dentro,	within.	enfrente,	facing.
fuera,	out.	encima, por	
por fuera,	without.	encima,	upon.
hasta,	till, even.	lejos,	far.

## ADVERBS OF TIME.

Ahora,	Now.	amenudo,	often.
ayer,	yesterday.	presto,	quickly.
antes,	before.	cuando,	when.
mucho ha,	long since,	pronto,	soon.
poco ha,	lately.	antiguamente,	formerly.
miéntras,	whilst.	recientemente,	recently.
entónces,	then.	después,	afterwards, since.
hoy,	to-day.	hasta aquí,	hitherto.
mañana,	to-morrow.	hasta ahora,	till now.
luego,	presently, soon,	aun, todavía,	yet.
	then.	entretanto;	meanwhile.
nunca*, jamás*,	never.	frecuentemente,	frequently.
tarde,	late.	casi siempre,	almost always.
temprano,	early.	casi nunca,	never hardly.
siempre,	always.	rara vez,	seldom.
ya*,	already, now.		

## ADVERBS OF QUALITY AND MANNER.

Bien, buenamente,	Well.	justamente,	justly.
mal, malamente,	badly.	lindamente,	neatly.
admirablemente,	admirably.	abiertamente,	openly.
así,	thus.	injustamente,	wrongfully.
despacio,	slowly.	temerariamente,	rashly.
recio, fuertemente,	strongly.	enteramente,	entirely.
aprisa,	hastily.	voluntariamente,	voluntarily.
esactamente,	exactly.	negligentemente,	negligently.
alto,	loudly.	directamente,	directly.
bajo,	lowly.	quedo,	softly, quietly.
fácilmente,	easily.	tambien,	also.
sabiamente,	wisely.		

## ADVERBS OF ORDER.

Primeramente,	Firstly.	ordenadamente,	orderly.
últimamente,	lastly.	totalmente,	totally.
sucesivamente,	successively.	al revés,	topsy-turvy.
finalmente,	finally.	antes,	before.
al fin, al cabo,	at the end.	después,	after.
juntamente,	together.		

ADVERBS OF QUANTITY AND COMPARISON.

o,	Little.	tan,	so.
bo,	much.	tanto,	so much.
ante,	sufficient.	muy,	very.
	more.	cuanto,	as much.
as,	less.	cerca,	near, almost.
mas,	too much.	peor,	worse.
	almost.	mejor,	better.

ADVERBS OF DOUBT.

á, acaso,	Perhaps.	antes,	rather.
entura,	perchance.	probablemente,	probably.

ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION.

o,	yes.	realmente,	really.
mente,	truly.	indubitavelmente,	undoubtedly.
	certainly.	en verdad,	in truth.
	even.	de veras,	indeed.
deramente,	indeed.		

ADVERBS OF NEGATION.

No,	No.
tampoco,	nor.

In addition to the foregoing adverbs, several adverbial expressions may be added, of which an infinite number could be formed: The following are a few specimens.

Pasado mañana,	After to-morrow.
á la tarde,	in the evening.
de cuando en cuando,	now and then.
de aquí en adelante,	henceforth.
demasiado presto,	too soon.
poco á poco,	little by little.
á manos llenas,	plentifully.
á toda prisa,	with all speed.
de buena gana,	willingly.
de mala gana,	unwillingly.
con intencion,	on purpose.
á la mano,	at hand.
á la Española,	in the Spanish fashion.
á caballo,	on horseback.

OF ADVERBS ENDING IN *MENTE*.

Adverbs terminating in *mente*, for the most part denote *order*; though they sometimes denote *affirmation*, *order*, *time*: Ex.

Habla elegantemente,	He speaks elegantly.
Me recibió cortezmente,	He received me courteously.
Vendrán ciertamente,	They will certainly come.
Esto debe ir primeramente,	This must go first.
Ultimamente vendrán ellos,	They will come last.



This class of Adverbs is generally formed from Adjectives, by adding *mente* to the feminine termination of Adjectives that have two terminations; and to the common termination of those that have but one: Ex.

From <i>sabio</i> ,	wise,	is formed,	<i>sabiamente</i> ,	wisely.
<i>caro</i> ,	dear,		<i>caramente</i> ,	dearly.
<i>feliz</i> ,	happy,		<i>felizmente</i> ,	happily.

Most of the English Adverbs ending in *ly*, terminate in *mente*, in Spanish.

5. The greater part of these Adverbs in Spanish, may be expressed with the Preposition *con* and a substantive, instead of the Adjective with the termination *mente*: Thus instead of *felizmente*, we may say *con felicidad*; instead of *sabiamente*, *con sabiduría*, and so forth.

6. When several Adverbs formed from Adjectives, follow each other in succession, the termination *mente*, is preserved only with the last: Ex.

Discurrir *clara, sólida, y elegantemente*, He argues clearly, solidly and elegantly.

7. Adverbs are sometimes used in the place of Adjectives and *vice versá*. If the word in question has any agreement, it is used as an Adjective; if it has no agreement, it is used as an Adverb: Ex.

Era una noche muy clara, It was a very clear night.

In this example, *clara*, agrees with the Noun *noche*, and is therefore an Adjective; but in the following, it is an Adverb, because it refers to no Noun, but modifies the Verb *hablar*: Ex.

Aquella señora habla muy claro, That lady speaks very clearly.

The following are some words of this double meaning:—

*Mal*, bad, badly; *oscuro*, dark, obscurely; *bajo*, low, lowly; *alto*, high, highly; *recio*, strong, strongly; *presto*, quick, quickly.

8. There are some Adverbs also, that are used as Nouns: Ex.

Es necesario precaver el *mal*, It is necessary to guard against the evil.  
La mañana está fresca, The morning is cool.

In these expressions the words *mal*, and *mañana*, are employed as Nouns, but as Adverbs in the following: Ex.

Respondió *mal*, He answered wrong.  
Vendremos *mañana*, We will come to-morrow.

9. As Adverbs that end in *mente*, sometimes denote *manner*, at others *order*, *time*, &c. in a like manner do many other Adverbs belong to more than one class ; for instance, *luego* and *despues*, are Adverbs of *time* when we say, *Luego vendré*, I will come soon ; *Iré despues*, I will go afterwards : But they are Adverbs of *place* and *order*, in the expression, *El padre iba primero, despues la madre, y luego los hijos*, The father went first, then the mother, and next the children.

#### SITUATION OF THE ADVERB.

10. With regard to the situation of the Adverb in a sentence, no rule can be given, but what would be subject to many exceptions. It is a matter that depends much on taste : nevertheless, when no particular emphasis is intended to be laid on the Adverb, it is generally placed *after* the Verb ; and for energy or elegance, it is frequently placed *before*.

#### OBSERVATION ON CERTAIN ADVERBS.

11. *Aquí, Acá*. These two Adverbs are frequently used indiscriminately ; though there is this difference in their signification, that *aquí* means *here* ; and *acá*, *hither* ; as *Aquí está*, Here it is ; *Venga vmd. acá*, Come hither.

*Aquí*, is sometimes equivalent to *now*, and *hence* ; as *Hasta aquí hemos vivido en paz*, We have lived peaceably till now, or hitherto. *De aquí nacen muchos males*, Hence arise many evils.

*He Aquí*, signify *behold*, or *here is* ; as, *He aquí mi bolsa*, Behold, or here is my purse.

12. *Ahí, Allí, Allá*. *Ahí* generally denotes a place not very distant, from the speaker : it also alludes to the place, where the person addressed is ; as, *Ahí está mi casa*, There is my house. *Ahí donde está vmd.* There where you are.

*Allí* and *allá*, generally refer to a more distant place than *ahí* ; as, *Le dejé allí solo*, I left him there alone ; *Allá en aquellos países*, There, in those countries. — *Allá*, is also equivalent to *thither* ; as *Voy allá*, I am going thither.

13. *Mas Acá, Mas Allá*. These Adverbs of place, are always accompanied by the Preposition *de*, when followed by another word : — *Mas acá*, signifies, *on this side*, and *mas allá*, on that side, or beyond ; as, *Mas acá de Madrid*, On this side of Madrid. *Mas allá de los Alpes* ; On that side, or, beyond the Alps.

14. *Donde, Adonde.* The meaning of these two Adverbs is not exactly alike, yet they are sometimes confounded in common conversation. *Donde* signifies *where*, but *adonde* means *whither*, or *where to*; as, *Donde está?*—*Donde vmd. le dejó,* Where is he?—Where you left him. *¿Adonde ha ido?*—*Adonde vmd. le mando,* Whither is he gone?—Where you sent him to.

15. *Jamas, Nunca.* These two Adverbs may be used indiscriminately; as, *Jamas* or *nunca vi tal cosa*, I never saw such a thing. *Nunca* united to *jamás*, adds greater energy to the negation; as, *Nunca jamás vi tal cosa*, Never did I see such a thing.

*Jamas* is often used after the words *por siempre*, and *para siempre*, for ever; then instead of its negative signification, it means *eternally*; as, *Me acordaré de él para siempre jamás*, I will remember him all the days of my life, or for ever.

16. *Ya.* This Adverb has a variety of significations, as will be observed in the following examples:

¿Ha venido vmd. ya?	Are you come already?
Ya lo sé,	I already know it.
Vaya vmd. que ya voy yo,	Go you, I will go presently.
¿Me entiende vmd. ya?	Do you understand me now?
Sí, ya le entiendo,	Yes I do understand you, or, now I understand you.
¿Ha acabado vmd. ya de escribir?	Have you finished writing yet?
Ya no me quejo de mi suerte,	I no longer complain of my fate.
¿Me dicen de mí?—Ya lo sabrá vmd.,	What do they say of me?—You will soon know.
Ya quiere esto, ya aquello,	Sometimes he wants this, sometimes that.
Iré, ya que vmd. lo manda,	I will go, since you desire it.

#### EXERCISE ON ADVERBS.

You should first read books of instruction, and then you may proceed to pasar

those of entertainment. entretenimiento.	These letters are instructive, and consequently carta instructivo		
I will read them with care. cuidado.	He has very little wit.		I am much
satisfied.	Kind [de bondad]	actions seldom lose their reward. perder mérito.	He
was already at home.	We generally dine at three o'clock.		He
has disappointed me frequently. faltar	He came yesterday, but she came mas		
to-day.	Write to me soon.	Cæsar wrote clearly, concisely, and claro, conciso.	

elegantly.	Cicero spoke wisely and eloquently.	Where are you
	elocuente.	
going to?	Where is your brother?	He is here.
		Let him
come hither.	I am going there with him.	Put it there [by the side]
		al lado
of you.	I have never known him.	I never did such a thing.
I will love her for ever.	I have come already.	I will go since
	llegar	
there is no remedy.		
remedio.		

## LECTURE XXVIII.

### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. FOR the definition of this part of speech, see Lec. 4, Par. 10. We have now to observe, that Prepositions are of two kinds, namely, such as have no meaning but in the composition of other words, as, *inmortal*, *abstraer*, *suponer*, &c., *inmortal*, to abstract, to suppose, &c.; and such as have meaning both by themselves and in the composition of other words; as the following.

<i>a</i> , to, at.	<i>en</i> , in.	<i>por</i> , by, for, through.
<i>ante</i> , before.	<i>entre</i> , between.	<i>segun</i> , according.
<i>con</i> , with.	<i>hacia</i> , towards.	<i>sin</i> , without.
<i>contra</i> , against.	<i>hasta</i> , till, until.	<i>sobre</i> , upon.
<i>de</i> , of, from.	<i>para</i> , for, for the purpose of.	<i>tras</i> , behind.
<i>desde</i> , since, from.		

### EMPLOYMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

2. As Prepositions in Spanish have frequently other meanings than those given to them in English in the foregoing list, it will be necessary to treat on the various significations, and use of each separately.

3. *A*. This Preposition, besides its general signification of *to* and *at*, has other peculiar meanings, as will be seen as follows: it is employed before certain Adverbs, and adverbial expressions; as, *Andar á pié*, *á caballo*, To go on foot, on horseback. *Vestirse á la moda*, To dress in the fashion. It signifies *conformity*; as, *A' ley de Castilla*, In conformity

with the law of Castile. *A' fé de caballero*, On the word of a gentleman. *Instrumentality*; as, *Se hace á martillo*, It is done by the hammer. It is sometimes equivalent to the conditional *si*, if; as, *A' saber yo eso*, Had I known that, or, if I had known that. It sometimes signifies *in*; as, *Al principio, al fin*, In the beginning, in the end. It is frequently seen between two numbers of the same value, and denotes *order*; as, *Dos á dos*, Two by two. It sometimes means *within*; as, *A' tiro de pistola*, Within pistol shot; *A' veinte pasos de aquí*, Within twenty paces from this.

4. *Ante* means *before*, or *in the presence of*; as, *Compareció ante el juez*, He appeared before the judge. *Pasó ante mí*, He passed before me. It is used to denote *preference*; as, *Nuestro deber es ante todo*, Our duty is before every thing. When employed in the composition of other words, it denotes *priority of time and place*; as, *anteayer*, the day before yesterday; *antecámara*, antechamber; *anteponer*, to prefer, to place before.

5. *Con* denotes *conjunction and assemblage*; as, *Está casado con la Marquesa*, He is married to the Marchioness. When preceded by *para*, it signifies *towards*; as, *Es muy cortez para con todos*, He is very courteous towards, or to every body. It denotes *manner*; as, *Habla con gracia*, He speaks gracefully. It also denotes *means*, or *instrumentality*; as, *Le hirió con una espada*, He wounded him with a sword. In composition it denotes *union*; as, *concurrancia*, an assemblage; *confederacion*, a confederation.

6. *Contra*, in its most general signification, is *against*; as, *Habla contra mí*, He speaks against me; *Es contra la ley*, It is against the law; *La casa está contra el oriente*, The house faces the east. In composition it implies an opposite meaning to the word to which it is prefixed; as, *contradecir*, to contradict; *contrabando*, contraband trade.

7. *De*. Besides the most general signification of this Preposition of *belonging to* and *separation from*, it has several other meanings. It denotes the *materials* of which things are made; as, *casa de piedra*, a stone house; *caja de oro*, a gold box. It denotes also the *use* for which things are designed; as, *papel de escribir*, writing-paper; *caballo de coche*, coach-horse. It expresses different *divisions of time*; as, *de día*, by day, or in the day; *de noche*, by night, or in the night. It describes the *proper time* for doing any thing; as, *Es hora de comer*, It is dinner hour; *Es tiempo de salir*, It is time to go out. It is sometimes equivalent to *through*; as, *Lo hizo de miedo*, He did it through fear. At others, to *with*;

as, *Lo hizo de buena gana*, He did it with a good will. It is sometimes placed after *epithets*; as, *El picaro del muchacho*, The roguish boy. It is also used after certain interjections expressive of complaint; as, ¡ *Infeliz de mí!* Ah poor me! ¡ *Desdichada de ella!* Unhappy her!

8. *Desde* sometimes denotes the *beginning* of time and place; as, *Desde la creacion*, From the creation; *Desde Carthagena á Barcelona*, From Carthagena to Barcelona. It is frequently followed by certain Adverbs and Conjunctions; as, *Desde entonces acá*, From that time to this; ¡ *Desde cuando?* Since when? *Desde que vmd. vino*, Since you came.

9. *En*. This Preposition has various meanings besides its general signification of *in*, and *within*, such as *into*, *to*, as: Examples, *La hija de Tántalo se convirtió en estatua*, Tantalus's daughter was converted into a statue; *De puerta en puerta*, From door to door; *Sírvase admitir este anillo en señal de amistad*, Be pleased to accept of this ring as a token of friendship. *En* united to *cuanto* signify *with regard to*, as *En cuanto á mí*, With regard to myself; *En cuanto á lo que vmd. dijo*, As to, or with regard to what you say.

10. *Entre*. The general meaning of this Preposition is *between*; as, *Entre los dos*, Between the two; *Entre el padre y el hijo*, Between the father and son. It likewise signifies *amongst*; as, *Entre todos*, Amongst all.

11. *Hacia*, in its general signification, is *towards*; as, *Voy hacia casa*, I am going towards home; *Hacia allí vive*, He lives in that direction. It forms an adverbial expression when preceded by *de*; as, *Venia de hacia allí*, He came from that direction.

12. *Hasta* signifies *till*, *until*, *even*, *to*, *as many as*, and denotes the *end* of time, place or action; as, *Hasta ahora*, Till, or until now; *Hasta cuando*, Till when; *Hasta el mismo gobernador estaba allí*, Even the governor himself was there; *Tenia hasta mil*, He had as many as a thousand; *Voy hasta Segovia*, I am going as far as Segovia; *No volveré hasta Mayo*, I shall not return till May; *Hasta la vista*, Until we meet again.

13. *Por* and *para*. Each of these two Prepositions has its peculiar meaning; nevertheless, learners and even Spaniards themselves are sometimes apt to confound them: great care is therefore necessary in order not to misapply them. It is presumed that the following observations will furnish the learner with a correct knowledge of their import.

*Para* denotes the *end* or *motive* for doing a thing, and is equivalent to, *in order to*, or *for the purpose of*; as, *Estudio*

*para aprender*, I study in order to learn, or, for the purpose of learning. It denotes the *use*, *intention*, *benefit*, and *injury* of a thing; as, *La tinta es para escribir*, Ink is to write with; *Esto es para vmd.*, This is for you; *El perjuicio es para él*, The evil is for him. It expresses the *capacity* or *incapacity* of a thing; as, *Es hombre para mucho*, He is able to do much; *No es hombre para nada*, He is fit for nothing. It is sometimes equivalent to *considering*; as, *Para ser tan jóven no lee mal*, He does not read badly, considering his age. It sometimes denotes *disposition*; as, *No estoy para jugar*, I am not inclined to play. It points out the place *whither* a thing is *directed*; as, *Va para Almería*, He is going towards Almeria. It sometimes specifies a particular *time*; as, *Estaremos de vuelta para las pascuas*, We shall be on our return by the holidays. It sometimes denotes the *proximity* of an action; as, *El buque está para ponerse á la vela*, The vessel is about to set sail. *Para que* mean *what for*, and *in order that*; as, ¿ *Para que es bueno esto?* What is this good for? *Para que no fuese allí*, In order that he might not go there.

*Por* denotes *motive*, *cause*, or *reason*, also the *means* by which a thing is done; as, *Lo hice por favorecerle*, I did it to favour him; *Lo hizo por envidia*, He did it through envy; *Agrada por su cortesía*, He pleases by his courteous behaviour; *Lo alcanzó por su erudición*, He obtained it by his learning. It denotes *instrumentality*; as, *El libro fué escrito por él*, é *impreso por su hermano*, The book was written by him, and printed by his brother. It sometimes signifies, *for the sake of*; as, *Hagalo vmd. por caridad*, Do it for charity's sake. It is sometimes equivalent to *through*, and *by*; as, *Pasé por Cadiz*, I passed through Cadiz; *Pasó por mi ventana*, He passed by my window. It sometimes means *in the place of*; as, *Obro por él*, I act for him. It sometimes denotes *distribution*; as, *Tanto por docena, por ciento*, So much a dozen, per cent. *Price*; as, *Lo vendí por dos pesos*, I sold it for two dollars. Between two Nouns or infinitives it denotes *preference*; as, *Casa por casa, mejor quiero esta que aquella*, Of the two houses, I prefer this; *Vivir por vivir, prefiero vivir en mi país*, If it be for the sake of living only, I prefer to live in my own country. *Por* sometimes denotes *time*; as, *Salgo por una hora*, I am going out for an hour. *Manner*; as, *Lo hace por fuerza*, He does it through compulsion. It is often employed before other particles, and denotes *situation*; as, *por cima*, on the top; *por debajo*, underneath; *por fuera*, without; *por aquí*, this way, whereabouts; *por allí*, that way, whereabouts. *Por* with the Verb *estar*, denotes that a

thing is not quite accomplished ; as, *La casa está por acabar*, The house is not yet finished. It sometimes has the same meaning with the Verb *quedar* ; as, *Me quedan tres renglones por escribir*, I have still three lines to write. *Estar por*, denotes inclination ; as, *Estoy por decírselo*, I have a mind to tell it to him.

14. *Segun* denotes conformity ; as, *Segun mi parecer*, According to my opinion ; *Lo cuento segun me lo han contado*, I relate it as it was related to me ; *Segun eso vamos bien*, If that be the case we are well off.

15. *Sin* denotes privation or want ; as, *Estoy todavía sin comer*, I have not dined yet ; *Voy sin vmd.*, I am going without you. It also signifies besides ; as, *Llevaba joyas de diamantes, sin otras alhajas de oro*, She wore diamonds, besides other jewels. It must however be observed here, that there is an ellipsis in the Spanish phrase, to express which fully, we should say, *sin contar*, or *sin mencionar otras alhajas*, &c.

16. *Sobre* denotes superiority, either as regards locality or dignity ; as, *El sombrero está sobre la mesa*, The hat is upon the table ; *La caridad es sobre todas las virtudes*, Charity is above all virtues ; *Sobre todo*, Above all. It denotes the subject on which a work treats, or on which we are speaking ; as, *Tratado sobre las matemáticas*, A treatise on mathematics ; *Habló sobre la educación de los jóvenes*, He spoke on the education of youth. It likewise denotes time ; as, *Llegaron sobre el anochecer*, They arrived about dark. It is equivalent to besides ; as, *Sobre ser rico*, &c., Besides being rich, &c. It indicates security ; as, *Prestóme cien ducados sobre una prenda*, He lent me a hundred ducats on a pledge.

17. *Tras* denotes order of things ; as, *Fueron tras él*, They went after him ; *Tras la adversidad viene la fortuna*, Fortune succeeds adversity. It is also equivalent to besides ; as, *Tras ser pagado quiere que le premien*, Besides being paid, he wishes to be rewarded.

#### GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

18. Prepositions govern Nouns, Pronouns, and Verbs ; they govern Nouns and Pronouns in every case except the nominative : this subject has been fully discussed in Lec. 9, on case.

19. With respect to the government of Prepositions as relates to Verbs, we have to observe that the Prepositions *á*, *con*, *de*, *en*, *para*, *por*, *sobre*, and *tras*, govern the Verb in



the infinitive mode, in the same manner as they do Nouns; therefore, the rules which refer to the government of Prepositions as relates to Nouns, may also apply to infinitives. In addition to which, however, and to what has just been said on the employment of Prepositions, there remains the following observations to be made on Prepositions that govern Verbs.

20. *A*. This Preposition is sometimes found between two Verbs, governing the second in the infinitive, when we wish to notice the difference that exists between the two actions expressed by the Verbs : Ex.

Va mucho de decir *á* hacer,

There is a great difference between saying and doing.

21. *Con*. Infinitives that denote *manner* or *means*, are governed by this Preposition : Ex.

Nada se gana *con* enfadarse,

One derives no benefit from being enraged.

*Con* estudiar se logra el saber,

By study we obtain knowledge.

22. *De*. Infinitives are governed by *de*, when the *time* or *season* proper for doing any thing, is intended to be expressed by the Noun which precedes them : Ex.

Es día *de* ayunar,  
Es tiempo *de* sembrar,

It is fast day.  
It is the season for sowing.

23. *En*. This Preposition governs infinitives when they do not express *motion*, but *rest* : Ex.

Se ocupa *en* leer,  
Se esmera *en* hablar bien,

He occupies himself in reading.  
He endeavours to speak well.

24. *Para*. Infinitives that denote the *end* for which the action is done, are governed by this Preposition : Ex.

Trabajan *para* ganar,  
Pelean *para* conquistar,

They work to gain.  
They fight to conquer.

25. *Por*. Infinitives that denote the *reason* or *motive* of the action, are governed by this Preposition : Ex.

Lo hizo *por* favorecerme,  
Murio *por* faltarle la asistencia,

He did it to oblige me.  
He died for want of assistance.

It is sometimes used in the place of *para* when the infinitive denotes the *end* for which the act is done ; as, *Estudio por saber*, I study to learn.

26. *Sobre* and *Tras*. When these Prepositions are used in

the sense of *besides*, they govern the Verb in the infinitive :  
Ex.

*Sobre* or *tras* *ser rico*, es muy avaro, Besides being rich, he is a great miser.

### PLACE OF PREPOSITIONS.

27. Prepositions in Spanish must always precede the word which they govern, wherever their situation may be in English : Ex.

¿ *A* quien escribió vmd. ?

Whom did you write to? or to whom did you write?

Este es el hombre *de* quien hablamos,

This is the man *whom* we spoke of, or of *whom* we spoke.

28. Prepositions are frequently repeated in Spanish before every word they govern : Ex.

Fueron *a* Francia, *a* España, y *a* Italia.

They went to France, Spain, and Italy.

Le hablé *de* vmd. y *de* su hermano,

I spoke to him of you and your brother.

Hemos estado *en* Madrid, *en* Sevilla, y *en* Valladolid,

We have been in Madrid, Seville, and Valladolid.

### EXERCISE ON PREPOSITIONS.

The hat was carried to the hatter's in a box by my servant. This  
llevar sombrero caja criado.

cap is for me, and that is for you. He does not write badly for a  
gorro

beginner. I shall remain here until the summer. I was  
principiante. permanecer

travelling towards Madrid. I passed through Segovia.  
caminar pasar

[He is waiting for] an answer on that subject. The boy that you  
aguarda la respuesta asunto.

saw between the two men passed by me with his mother. He is one

of the deputies that spoke against the subject. He comes from the  
diputados

capital. He is out of place since you saw him last. After  
[la última vez.]

this time there will come a better one. We will fight till we  
tiempo pelear

conquer or die. He wears a coat in the French fashion. Our  
llevar casaca

duty is before every thing. He goes much against my ideas. I  
deber

shall commence from to-morrow to come very early, and shall remain  
 empezar temprano quedar  
 until dark. Why do you inquire? Whom do you enquire for?  
 anochece. preguntar  
 We arrived at our [journey's end] towards the evening. I am going  
 jornada  
 to walk. By study we gain knowledge. This is very good to  
 pasear. alcanzar saber.  
 eat. There is much to say on that. He went, as I believe,  
 merely to please him. Besides being ignorant, he is very  
 únicamente [dar gusto]  
 vain. I am going hence to London, and thence to Scotland. We  
 Escocia.  
 will leave it for to-morrow. However much he may study, he will  
 dejar por  
 never know [any thing.] I have given it to the man whom we spoke  
 nada.  
 of yesterday. That is what I referred to. Does he know  
 referirse saber  
 whom to direct himself to? They have been in Amsterdam,  
 dirigirse Amsterdam,  
 Brussels, and Copenhagen. They are gone to Granada, Murcia, and  
 Bruselas, Copenhagen.  
 Navarre. They come from Warsaw and Vienna. She devotes  
 Navarra. Varsovia Viena. dedicarse  
 herself much to music and drawing.  
 música dibujo.

## LECTURE XXIX.

### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

1. For the definition of this part of speech, see Lec. 4, Par. 11. Conjunctions are either simple or compound: simple Conjunctions consist of one word, and sometimes of one letter only; as, *y, si, ni, &c., and, if, nor, &c.* Compound Conjunctions are composed of two or more words; as, *usi que, fuera de que, &c., so that, besides, &c.* Gramma-

rians have generally divided Conjunctions into various classes :  
Ex.

COPULATIVE.		CASUATIVE.	
Y or é, que,	And. that.	Porque, pues, pues que,	because. } since.
DISJUNCTIVE.		RESTRICTIVE.	
ó or ú, ni,	or, either. nor, neither.	sino,	only, except, but.
ADVERSATIVE.		CONTINUATIVE.	
mas, pero, cuando, aunque, bienque, dado que,	moreover, but. when. } though. although.	pues, así que, puesto que, supuesto que,	then, since. so that. } since.
no obstante que, sin embargo,	nevertheless, al- though, yet, how- ever, notwith- standing.	COMPARATIVE.	
		como, así, así como,	as. thus. just as.
CONDITIONAL.		CONCLUSIVE.	
si, como, con tal que.	if. as. provided.	á fin de que, para que, por que,	} that, in order that.

2. *Copulative Conjunctions* are those which unite the several words or members of a sentence together : Ex.

Yo y él iremos, I and he will go.  
Es cierto que es así, y él lo sabe, It is certain that it is so, and he knows it.

*Note.*—The Conjunction *y* changes into *é*, before a word beginning with *i* or *hi* : Ex.

Es malo é ingrato, He is wicked and ungrateful.  
Mató á uno é hirió al otro, He killed one, and wounded the other.

*Que* serves to connect the sense of the *governing* Verb with the Verb *governed* : Ex.

Dice que ellas venian, He says that they were coming.  
Quiere que yo vaya, He wishes that I should go.

3. The disjunctive conjunction *ó*, denotes an alternative or distinction between things : *ni* marks the second or subsequent branch of a negative proposition : Ex.

El libro ó la carta, The book or the letter.  
No es bueno para mí ni para vmd., It is neither good for me nor for you.

*Ni* is sometimes used in the *first* branch in the sense of *neither* ; as,

Yo ni me amo ni te amo, I neither love myself nor thee.

*Note.*—The Conjunction *ó* is changed into *ú*, when the following word begins with *o*; as, *Uno ú otro*, One or the other; *Siete ú ocho*, Seven or eight.

4. *Adversative* Conjunctions denote some opposition or contradiction in the second proposition, as regards the first: Ex.

Me dijo que vendria, *pero* or *mas*  
no vino,

He told me that he would come,  
but he did not come.

Salió, *no obstante* que estaba in-  
dispuesto,

He went out, *although* he was un-  
well.

5. *Conditional* Conjunctions are those which denote some condition or necessity: Ex.

Iré con tal que no llueva,

I will go *provided* it should not rain.

Como venga vmd. á la hora ci-  
tada le daré lo que le prometí,

If, or *provided* you come at the ap-  
pointed hour, I will give you  
what I promised you.

6. *Casulative* Conjunctions express the cause or reason of a thing: Ex.

No leo, *porque* no tengo libros,

I do not read, *because* I have no  
books.

Lo haré, *pues* que vmd. me lo  
manda,

I will do it *since* you order it.

7. *Restrictive* Conjunctions confine the proposition to certain limits: Ex.

No traiga vmd. *sino* dos,  
Ninguno lo haria *sino* vmd.

Bring *only* two.  
None *but* you would do it.

8. *Continuative* Conjunctions point out the continuation of a sentence: Ex.

Ya podemos proceder sin recelo,  
*supuesto* que el enemigo se ha  
retirado.

We may now proceed without fear,  
*since* the enemy has retired.

9. *Comparative* Conjunctions denote a relation or parity between two objects: Ex.

Así como el alma anima al cuer-  
po, así la imitación da alma á  
la poesía,

As the soul animates the body, so  
imitation gives life to poetry.

10. *Conclusive* Conjunctions denote the object, or end, or motive of an action: Ex.

Lo hizo á fin de que conociesen su  
determinación,

He did it *in order that* they should  
know his determination.

Le he dado el libro para que  
aprenda su lección,

I have given him the book *that* he  
might learn his lesson.

11. Besides the foregoing Conjunctions, there may be formed a variety of expressions that answer the same end as Conjunctions ; as, *como quiera que*, however ; *fuera de que*, besides ; *amenos que*, unless, &c.

12. The English Conjunction *but*, preceded by a negative, is generally translated *sino* : Ex.

She *never* goes out *but* in fine weather,      Nunca sale *sino* cuando hace buen tiempo.

When *but* is used in the place of *yet*, it is translated *pero* or *mas* : Ex.

I did not walk very fast, *but* or *yet* I arrived in time,      No caminaba muy de prisa, *pero* or *mas* llegué á tiempo.

*But* is also translated *pero* or *mas*, when it is not preceded by a negative : Ex.

I will go, *but* I cannot stay long,      Iré, *pero* or *mas* no puedo quedarme mucho tiempo.

13. There are several Conjunctions in English that are frequently used as substitutes for other words : these Conjunctions are generally rendered in Spanish by the words which they stand for, as will appear in the following examples.

*As*, meaning *when*, is translated *cundo* ; as, We saw them as we were going out, *Los vimos cuando salíamos*.

*But*, meaning *when*, is likewise translated *cundo* ; as, We scarcely went out *but* we saw them, *Apenas salimos cuando los vimos*.

*But*, meaning *if it were not*, is translated *sino fuera* ; as, *But* for me, he might have been killed, *Si no fuera por mí, le habrían matado*.

*But*, meaning *only*, is translated *solo*, or, *no mas que* ; as, I have *but* two to finish, *Solo me quedan dos para acabar*. I go *but* once a day, *No voy mas que, una vez al día*.

*But what*, meaning *that does not*, or *that do not*, may be translated *que no* ; as, There is no man *but what* likes flattery, *No hay hombre que no ame la lisonja*.

*Whether*, meaning *if*, is translated *si* ; as, Say *whether* you will come or not, *Diga vmd. si quiere venir ó no*.

#### GOVERNMENT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

14. Conjunctions govern Verbs in different modes and tenses, as already noticed. The Conjunctions that govern the infinitive mode, are generally those that are followed by



the various affections of the mind, or to call the attention. Some grammarians have divided them into different classes, according to the various emotions which they are intended to express : but as the same interjection very frequently expresses different affections, they cannot with any degree of precision be reduced to determined classes. Some of them, however, which are more limited in their meaning, have a more fixed use.

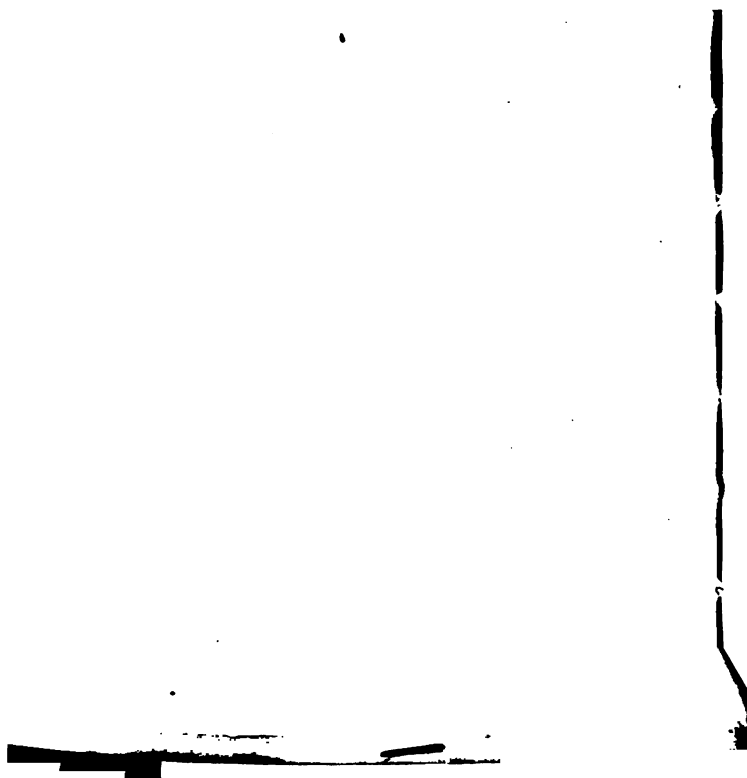
*Ah, ay, O*, are employed indifferently to denote the emotions of *grief, joy, indignation, jest, or admiration* : Ex.

¡ Ay que pena !	Oh sad !
¡ Ah que desgracia !	Alas, what misfortune !
¡ O desdichado de mí !	Alas, unhappy me !
¡ Ay que gozo !	Ha, how delightful !
¡ Ah que alegría !	Oh what joy !
¡ O felices de nosotros !	Oh happy we !
¡ O cielos !	Oh heavens !

2. *Ce, ha, he, ola*, are used to call the attention : *he*, is however sometimes used to denote that we have not understood what has been said to us, and means, *what did you say ?* *Ha!* besides being used to call the attention, denotes that one has recollected what had been forgotten ; as, *Ha! ya me acuerdo*, Oh ! now I recollect. *Chito!* means *hush! silence!* *Ea* and *sus* are used to excite courage ; as, *¡ Ea vamos!* Come ! cheer up !

3. There are a variety of other terms and expressions that may be used as Interjections, such as, *¡ Que lastima!* What a pity ! *¡ Bien!* well ! *¡ Valgame Dios!* Good God ! *¡ Ay Dios!* My God ! *¡ Hola, poco á poco!* Stop, gently ! *¡ Que verguenza!* Fie ! for shame ! *¡ Cuidado!* Take care ! *¡ Otra, otra!* Encore ! *¡ Etene aquí!* Here am I !





# APPENDIX,

CONTAINING

AN ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS

AND

OTHER WORDS THAT GOVERN WITH PREPOSITIONS:

*IDIOMS IN CERTAIN VERBS:*

*Titles used in Spanish:*

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS,

AND A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.



AN

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS

AND

R WORDS, THAT ADMIT CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS AFTER THEM.

---

### A.

izarse *á* los peligros,  
narse *á* la suerte,  
se *con* alguno,  
narse *de* algo,  
por alguno,  
r (una nave) *á*, *con*, otra,  
sible *á* las gentes,  
ido *de* todos,  
se *en* deseos,  
*á*, *con*, los amigos,  
se *de* la fruta,  
ur *de*, *en*, riquezas,  
lo *de* las desgracias,  
*de* la amistad,  
*de* venir,  
r *á* alguno,  
r *en* tal tiempo,  
se *en*, *con*, la disputa,  
r *á* la opinion de otro,  
le *á* todos,  
*á*, *con*, la casa,  
e *á* sagrado,  
larse *á*, *con*, otro dictámen,  
narse *con* otros,  
arse *con*, *de*, sabios,  
er *á* los incautos,  
se *de* lo pasado,  
se *con* los contrarios,  
brarse *á* trabajos,  
genio,  
arse *de* necio,  
arse *con*, *para con*, alguno,  
r *á*, *de*, la confianza,  
e *de*, *en*, los negocios,  
(*á* alguno) *de* algun delito,  
e *de* las culpas,  
arse *á* otros,

To rush *into* danger.  
to abandon oneself *to* chance.  
to confer *with* any one.  
to be irritated *at* any thing.  
to plead *for* any one.  
to run (one ship) *along-side* another.  
hateful *to* the people.  
detested *by* all.  
to be inflamed *with* desires.  
to open oneself *to* one's friends.  
to abstain *from* fruit.  
to abound in riches.  
wearied *by* misfortunes.  
to abuse friendship.  
to be just come.  
to happen *to* any one.  
to happen *at* such a time.  
to grow warm *in* debate.  
to accede *to* another's opinion.  
accessible *to* all.  
to hit *upon* the house.  
to take refuge *in* a church.  
to conform *to* another's opinion.  
to associate *with* others.  
to consult *with* learned men.  
to happen *to* the unwary.  
to remember the past.  
to agree *with* one's opponents.  
to accustom oneself *to* labour.  
of a sour temper.  
to prove one's own folly.  
to justify oneself *to* any one.  
worthy *of* confidence.  
to be active *in* business.  
to accuse (any one) *of* a crime.  
to accuse oneself *of* faults.  
to take the lead *of* others.

R

adherirse á otro dictámen,  
 adolecer *de* alguna enfermedad,  
 aferrarse *en, con,* su opinion,  
 aferrarse (una nave) *con* otra,  
 aficionarse *á, de,* alguna cosa,  
 afirmarse *en* lo dicho,  
 ageno *de* verdad,  
 agradable *al* paladar,  
 agradecido *á* los beneficios,  
 agravarse *de* alguno,  
 agravarse *de* la sentencia,  
 agregarse *á* otros,  
 agrio *al* gusto,  
 agudo *de* ingenio,  
 ahitarse *de* manjares,  
 ahogarse *en* el mar,  
 ahorcarse *en* las espaldas,  
 ahorrar *de* razones,  
 no ahorrarse *con* ninguno,  
 airarse *con* alguno,  
 ajustarse *á* la razon,  
 ajustarse *con* alguno,  
 alabarse *de* valiente,  
 alargarse *á* la ciudad,  
 alegrarse *de* algo,  
 alejarse *de* su tierra,  
 alimentarse *de, con,* yerbas,  
 alimentarse *de* esperanzas,  
 alindar *con* otra heredad,  
 allanarse *á* lo justo,  
 alto *de* cuerpo,  
 amable *á* todos,  
 amable *de* genio,  
 amancebarse *con* los libros,  
 amante *de* alguno,  
 amañarse *á* escribir,  
 amoroso *con* los suyos,  
 ampararse *de* algo, *de* alguna cosa,  
 ancho *de* boca,  
 andar *con* el tiempo,  
 andar *de* capa,  
 andar *en* pleytos,  
 andar *á* gatas,  
 andar *por* tierra,  
 angosto *de* manga,  
 anhelar *á, por,* mayor fortuna,  
 anticiparse *á* otro,  
 aoar *en* la ribera,  
 aparar *en* la mano,  
 aparecerse *á* alguno,  
 aparecerse *en* el camino,  
 aparejarse *para* el trabajo,  
 apartarse *de* la ocasion,  
 apartarse *á* un lado,  
 apasionarse *á, de, por,* alguno,  
 apearse *de* su opinion,  
 apechugar *con* alguna cosa,  
 apechugar *por* los peligros,  
 apedrar *con* las palabras,  
 apegarse *con* alguna cosa,  
 apelar *de* la sentencia,

to adhere *to* another's opinion.  
 to labour *under* any disease.  
 to persist *in* one's opinion.  
 to moor (one ship) *to* another.  
 to devote oneself *to* any thing.  
 to affirm what has been said.  
 foreign *to* truth.  
 pleasant *to* the taste.  
 grateful *for* kindness.  
 to be vexed *with* any one.  
 to be aggrieved *by* the sentence.  
 to unite oneself *with* others.  
 sour *to* the taste.  
 acute *in* intellect, witty.  
 to surfeit oneself *with* food.  
 to be drowned *in* the sea.  
 to get *upon* one's back.  
 to be sparing *of* words.  
 to spare no one.  
 to be angry *with* any one.  
 to conform *to* reason.  
 to agree *with* any one.  
 to boast *of* one's bravery.  
 to set off *to* the city.  
 to be rejoiced *at* any thing.  
 to depart *from* one's country.  
 to feed *on* herbs.  
 to feed oneself *with* hopes.  
 to be contiguous *to* another's estate  
 to abide *by* what is just.  
 tall *in* stature.  
 amiable *to* every one.  
 of an amiable disposition.  
 to be fond *of* books.  
 a lover *of* some one.  
 to be clever *at* writing.  
 affectionate *to* one's relations.  
 to take possession *of* any thing.  
 wide *in* the mouth.  
 to accommodate oneself *to* the time  
 to wear a cloak.  
 to be litigious.  
 to go *on* all fours.  
 to be humbled *to* the ground.  
 narrow *in* the sleeves.  
 to sigh *for* better fortune.  
 to anticipate another.  
 to lay eggs *on* the shore.  
 to receive or catch *in* the hand.  
 to appear suddenly *before* any one.  
 to appear suddenly *on* the road.  
 to prepare oneself *for* work.  
 to neglect *the* opportunity.  
 to retire *on* one side.  
 to be fond *of* any one.  
 to alter one's opinion.  
 to undertake a thing *with* spirit.  
 to brave danger.  
 to abuse *with* words.  
 to adhere *to* any thing.  
 to appeal *from* the sentence.

tro medio,	to have recourse to other means.
de armas,	to provide oneself <i>with</i> arms.
de, para, la batalla,	to prepare <i>for</i> battle.
al gusto,	pleasant to the taste.
de, por, todas,	desired <i>by</i> all.
de los pobres,	to pity <i>the</i> poor.
los estudios,	to apply oneself to study.
de la hacienda,	to possess oneself <i>of</i> the property.
correr,	to bet <i>on</i> a race.
de venir,	to make haste to come.
por alguna cosa,	to make haste <i>about</i> any thing.
en alguna facultad,	to be versed <i>in</i> any science.
de cirujano,	approved <i>as</i> a surgeon.
para el oficio,	adapted to the office.
de sí,	to appropriate to oneself.
de alguno,	to approach any one.
en la virtud,	to improve <i>in</i> virtue.
de la ocasion,	to avail oneself <i>of</i> the opportunity.
el empleo,	fit <i>for</i> the employment.
de medios,	exhausted <i>of</i> means.
en la disputa,	to grow calm <i>in</i> the dispute.
eseos,	to burn <i>with</i> desires.
quimeras,	to be heated <i>in</i> disputes.
paciencia,	to arm oneself <i>with</i> patience.
con algo,	to muffle oneself up <i>in</i> any thing.
de frio,	to be numbed <i>with</i> cold.
de las leyes,	to conform oneself to the laws,
de alguna cosa,	to relish any thing.
de, con, contra el muro,	to assault the wall.
de sus culpas,	to repent <i>of</i> one's sins or faults.
de todo,	to be enterprising <i>in</i> every thing.
tierra,	to arrive at land.
de la pared,	to lean <i>against</i> the wall.
en casa,	to keep <i>within</i> doors.
(algo) de sí mismo,	to arrogate (any thing) to oneself.
pelear,	to rush <i>into</i> battle.
con la capa,	to wrap oneself up <i>in</i> a cloak.
con, los peligros,	to face danger.
calor,	to be scorched <i>by</i> heat.
otro empleo,	to be promoted to another employment.
de su contrario,	to secure oneself <i>from</i> one's adversary.
dictámen,	to assent to another's opinion.
con letrados,	to seek counsel <i>of</i> the learned.
de enfermos,	to assist <i>the</i> sick.
al casa,	to attend <i>at</i> such a house.
de, con, otro,	to associate oneself <i>with</i> another.
de, por, la ventana,	to look out <i>at</i> the window.
gritos,	to roar vehemently.
de alguna cosa,	to torment oneself <i>about</i> any thing.
de gusto,	rough to the taste.
de las palabras,	rude <i>in</i> speech.
de mayor fortuna,	to aspire to better fortune.
de una sola cosa,	to bind oneself to one thing.
de, por, algo,	to be frightened <i>at</i> any thing.
de la conversacion,	to attend to the conversation.
de lo seguro,	to keep <i>on</i> the safe side.
de sus mayores,	attentive to one's superiors.
en la casa,	to find out the house.
en los caminos,	to stick fast <i>in</i> the road.
	to draw to oneself.

atreverse á cosas grandes,  
atreverse *con* todos,  
atribuir á otro,  
atribularse *en, con*, los trabajos,  
atropellarse *con* las acciones,  
atufarse *en* la conversacion,  
atufarse *por* poco,  
aunarse *con* otro,  
ausentarse *de* Madrid,  
avercindarse *en* algun pueblo,

avenerse *con* todos,  
aventajarse á otros,  
avergonzarse á pedir,  
avergonzarse *de* algo,  
aviarse *de* ropa,  
avocar (alguna cosa) á sí,  
avocarse *con* alguno,

Balancear á tal parte,  
balancear *en* la duda,  
balar *por* dinero,  
bañarse *en* agua,  
barar *en* tierra,  
barbear *con* la pared,  
bastardear *de* su naturaleza,  
bastardear *en* sus acciones,  
batallar *con* los enemigos,  
bajar á la cueva,  
bajar *de* la torre,  
bajar *hacia* el valle,  
bajo *de* cuerpo,  
benéfico á, *para*, la salud,  
blanco *de* cutis,  
blando *de* corteza,  
blasfemar *de* la virtud,  
blasonar *de* valiente,  
bordar (algo) *de, con*, plata,  
bordar (algo) *al* tambor,

bordar *de* pasados,  
bostezar *de* hambre,  
boto *de* punta,  
boyante *en* la fortuna,  
bramar *de* corage,  
brear á chasco,  
bregar *con* alguno,  
brindar *con* regalos,  
brindar á la salud *de* alguno,  
bueno *de, para*, comer,  
bufar *de* ira,  
bullir *en, por*, todas partes,  
burlarse *de* algo,

Caber *de* pies,  
caber *en* la mano,  
caer á, *hacia*, tal parte,

to venture *on* great things.  
to brave every one.  
to attribute *to* another.  
to be afflicted *by* misfortunes.  
to be hurried *in* one's actions.  
to be peevish *in* conversation.  
to be affronted *at* trifles.  
to unite oneself *with* another.  
to absent oneself *from* Madrid.  
to take up one's residence *in* any town.  
to agree *with* every one.  
to gain advantage *over* others.  
to be ashamed *of* asking.  
to be ashamed *of* any thing.  
to provide oneself *with* clothes.  
to remove a law-suit.  
to confer *with* any one.

## B.

To incline *to* such a side.  
to waver.  
to thirst after money.  
to bathe oneself *in* water.  
to run aground.  
to reach the wall *with* the chin.  
to degenerate *from* one's nature.  
to degenerate *in* one's actions.  
to fight *against* the enemy.  
to descend *into* the cave.  
to descend *from* the tower.  
to descend *towards* the valley.  
low *in* stature.  
beneficial *to* the health.  
*of* a fair complexion.  
*of* a soft exterior.  
to blaspheme *against* virtue.  
to boast *of* bravery.  
to embroider (any thing) *in* silver.  
to embroider (any thing) *in* tam-bour.  
to interweave.  
to gape *with* hunger.  
blunt *in* the point.  
fortunate.  
to roar *with* passion.  
to plague *with* tricks.  
to contend *with* any one.  
to offer presents.  
to drink *to* another's health.  
good *to* eat.  
to swell *with* anger.  
to be stirring *on* all sides.  
to jest *at* any thing.

## C.

to have room *to* stand.  
to be capable *of* being contained *in* the hand.  
to fall *on* such a side.

o alto,	to fall <i>from</i> on high.
ierra, <i>en</i> cuenta, <i>en</i> error, <i>en</i>	to fall <i>on</i> the ground, to comprehend,
mpo, <i>en</i> lo que se dice.	to fall <i>into</i> error, to fall <i>on</i> such
pascua,	a time, to understand what is said.
los enemigos,	to happen about Easter.
la agua,	to fall <i>upon</i> the enemy.
se á la lumbre,	to be wet through <i>with</i> water.
verdad) á otro,	to warm oneself at the fire.
por, miedo,	to conceal (the truth) <i>from</i> another.
ir (á alguno) <i>de</i> , <i>por</i> , injusto,	to be silent <i>from</i> fear.
á alguno,	to accuse (any one) falsely <i>of</i> being
(alguna cosa) <i>con</i> , <i>por</i> ,	unjust.
á para, Sevilla,	to manage <i>any</i> person.
á pié,	to exchange (any thing) <i>for</i> an-
por el monte,	other.
de, <i>con</i> , el trabajo,	to travel <i>to</i> Seville.
de pretender,	to travel <i>on</i> foot.
en el camino,	to walk <i>along</i> the mountain.
cien arrobas,	to be tired <i>with</i> labour.
para, el empleo,	to be weary <i>of</i> pretending.
con el enemigo,	to be tired <i>on</i> the road.
de razon,	capable <i>of</i> holding 100 arrobas (or
a persona, ó cosa) <i>con</i> otra,	quarters).
ir (á alguno) <i>para</i> alguna	fit <i>for</i> the employment.
perjuicio) á alguno,	to capitulate <i>with</i> the enemy.
(á alguno) <i>con</i> , <i>por</i> , benefi-	to insist <i>on</i> one's opinions.
imaginacion) <i>en</i> alguno,	to couple or match (one person or
la imaginacion) <i>en</i> alguna	thing) <i>with</i> another.
de una parte á otra,	to suborn (any one) <i>for</i> any thing.
tro á la autoridad,	to cause (prejudice) <i>to</i> any one.
beneficio <i>de</i> alguno,	to overcome (any one) <i>by</i> kindness.
alguna cosa <i>de</i> mala,	
lo posible,	to fix (the attention) <i>on</i> any one.
se <i>con</i> alguno,	to fix (the attention) <i>on</i> any thing.
algo <i>en</i> el agua,	
uerpo,	to be running <i>from</i> one place <i>to</i>
alguno,	another.
n otro,	to yield <i>to</i> another the authority.
Dios,	to resign <i>in</i> favour of any one.
er dinero,	to censure any thing <i>as</i> wicked.
por los muertos,	to keep <i>within</i> bounds.
facultad) á alguno,	to joke <i>with</i> any one.
inero) <i>de</i> los deudores,	to plunge any thing <i>into</i> water.
por, los antecedentes,	small <i>in</i> stature.
con alguno,	to provoke any one.
rse <i>en</i> el ayre,	to strike <i>against</i> another.
con, <i>contra</i> , el enemigo,	to invoke God.
(una cosa) <i>con</i> otra,	to ask <i>for</i> money.
decir,	to toll <i>for</i> the dead.
le envidia,	to restrict any one.
le <i>con</i> la justicia,	to receive (money) <i>from</i> debtors.
ir (una cosa) <i>con</i> otra,	to infer <i>from</i> precedents.
	to form an alliance <i>with</i> any one.
	to swing <i>in</i> the air.
	to fight <i>against</i> the enemy.
	to combine (one thing) <i>with</i> another.
	to begin <i>to</i> speak.
	to pine <i>with</i> envy.
	accordant <i>with</i> justice.
	to compensate (one thing) <i>by</i> another.



competir *con* alguno,  
complacerse, *de, en*, alguna cosa,  
componerse *con* los deudores,  
componerse *de* bueno y malo,  
comprar (algo) *al, del*, vendedor,

comprehensible *al* entendimiento,  
comprobar (algo) *con* instrumentos,  
comprometerse *con* alguno,  
comprometerse *en* jueces arbitros,  
comunicar (luz) *a* alguna parte,  
comunicar (uno) *con* otro,  
concebir (alguna cosa) *de* tal modo,

concebir (algo) *en* el ánimo,  
concebir (una cosa) *por* buena,  
conceder (algo) *a* otro,  
conceptuar (*a* alguno) *de, por*, sabio,  
concertar (una cosa) *con* otra,  
concordar (la copia) *con* el original,

concurrir *a* algun fin,  
concurrir *a* alguna parte,  
concurrir *con* otros,  
concurrir (muchos) *en* un dictamen,  
condenar (*a* uno) *a* galeras,  
condenar (*a* uno) *en* las costas,  
condescender *a* los ruegos,  
condescender *con* la instancia,  
condolerse *de* los trabajos,  
conducir (algo) *a* tal parte,  
conducir (una cosa) *al* bien *de* otro,

confabularse *con* los contrarios,  
confederarse *con* alguno,  
conferir (una cosa) *con* otra,  
conferir (un negocio) *con, entre*, los amigos,  
confesar el delito *al* juez,  
confesarse *a* Dios,  
confesarse *con* alguno,  
confesarse *de* sus culpas,  
confirmar (una cosa) *a* una persona,  
confiar *en, de*, alguno,  
confinar (*a* alguno) *a* tal parte,  
confinar (España) *con* Francia,  
confirmarse *en* su dictamen,  
conformarse *con* el tiempo,  
conforme *a, con*, su opinion,  
confrontar *con* alguno,  
confrontar (una cosa) *con* otra,  
confundirse *de* lo que se vé,  
confundirse *en* sus juicios,  
congeniar *con* alguno,  
congraciarse *con* otro,

congratularse *con* los suyos,

congratularse *de* alguna cosa,  
conjecturar (algo) *de, por*, señales,  
conmutar (algo) *con* otra cosa,

to vie *with* any one.  
to take a delight *in* any thing.  
to compound *with* debtors.  
to be composed *of* good and bad.  
to purchase (something) *from* the seller.

comprehensible *to* the understanding.  
to prove (any thing) *by* instruments.  
to compromise *with* any one.  
to compromise *by* arbitration.  
to introduce (light) *to* any part.  
to communicate (one) *with* another.  
to conceive (any thing) *in* such a manner.

to conceive (something) *in* the mind.  
to conceive (a thing) *as* good.  
to concede (any thing) *to* another.  
to regard (any one) *as* wise.  
to concert (a thing) *with* another.  
to make (the copy) agree *with* the original.

to conduce *to* some end.  
to meet *at* some place.  
to concur *with* others.  
to concur (many) *in* an opinion.  
to condemn (one) *to* the galleys.  
to condemn (one) *in* the costs.  
to condescend *to* entreaties.  
to consent *to* the petition.  
to be grieved *by* troubles.  
to conduct (any thing) *to* such a place.  
to conduce (any thing) *to* another's good.

to converse *with* one's adversaries.  
to confederate *with* any one.  
to compare (one thing) *with* another.  
to deliberate (on business) *with* one's friends.

to confess the crime *to* the judge.  
to confess *to* God.  
to confess *to* any one.  
to confess one's faults.  
to entrust (a thing) *to* any person.  
to confide *in* any one.  
to confine (any one) *to* such a place.  
(Spain) *to* border *on* France.  
to be confirmed *in* one's opinion.  
to conform oneself *to* times.  
conformable *to* his opinion.  
to confront *with* any one.  
to compare (one thing) *with* another.  
to be confounded *at* what one sees.  
to be undecided *in* one's judgment.  
to be congenial *to* any one.  
to ingratiate oneself *into* another's favour.

to congratulate oneself *with* one's own people.  
to congratulate oneself *upon* any thing.  
to conjecture (any thing) *from* signs.  
to barter (any thing) *for* another.

ir (un voto) <i>en</i> otra cosa,	to commute (one wish) <i>into</i> another thing.
irse á Dios,	to consecrate oneself to God.
ir <i>en</i> algo,	to agree <i>to</i> something.
se <i>con</i> sus parientes,	to console oneself <i>with</i> one's relations.
ir <i>contra</i> alguno,	to conspire <i>against</i> any one.
ir <i>en</i> un intento,	to enter <i>into</i> a conspiracy.
(el todo) <i>de</i> partes,	(the whole) <i>to be</i> comprised <i>in</i> parts.
por escrito,	to appear <i>in</i> writing.
ir á alguno para un empleo,	to apply to any one <i>for</i> an employment.
ir <i>con</i> letrados,	to consult <i>with</i> the learned.
ido <i>en</i> una facultad,	skilled <i>in</i> any faculty.
narse <i>con</i> los viciosos,	to be contaminated <i>by</i> the vicious.
orizar <i>con</i> alguno,	to temporize <i>with</i> any one.
or <i>con</i> alguno,	to contend <i>with</i> any one.
er <i>sobre</i> alguna cosa,	to contend <i>about</i> any thing.
rse <i>en</i> su obligacion,	to hold <i>to</i> one's contract.
ir á la pregunta,	to answer <i>to</i> the question.
(algo) á un asunto,	to apply (something) <i>to</i> a subject.
asrar (una cosa) <i>con</i> otra,	to counterpoise (one thing) <i>with</i> another.
oner (una cosa) á otra,	to put (one thing) <i>against</i> another.
untarse <i>con</i> alguno,	to wrangle <i>with</i> another.
untarse <i>de</i> palabras,	to wrangle <i>with</i> words.
mir á la ley,	to transgress <i>against</i> the law.
ir á tal cosa,	to contribute <i>to</i> such a thing.
ir <i>con</i> dinero,	to contribute money.
ar <i>de</i> la enfermedad,	to recover <i>from</i> illness.
erse <i>de</i> la razon,	to be convinced <i>of</i> what is right.
ir <i>con</i> otro,	to agree <i>with</i> another.
ir <i>en</i> alguna cosa,	to agree <i>upon</i> something.
ir <i>con</i> alguno,	to converse <i>with</i> any one.
ir <i>en</i> materias de estado,	to converse <i>on</i> state affairs.
ir (la hacienda) <i>en</i> dinero,	to convert (the property) <i>into</i> money.
rse á Dios,	to be converted <i>to</i> God.
ir (á alguno) á comer,	to invite (any one) <i>to</i> dine.
ir (á alguno) <i>con</i> dinero,	to offer (money) <i>to</i> any one.
rse á los trabajos,	to offer one's services <i>in</i> any work.
ir á junta,	to convene <i>an</i> assembly.
ir (con otro) á alguna cosa,	to co-operate (with another) <i>in</i> any thing.
de verguenza,	to blush <i>from</i> shame.
nder á los beneficios,	to be grateful <i>for</i> kindnesses.
nderse <i>con</i> los amigos,	to correspond <i>with</i> friends.
(la copia) <i>con</i> el original,	to compare (the copy) <i>with</i> the original.
de virtudes,	to increase <i>in</i> virtues.
de cuerpo,	grown <i>in</i> stature.
Dios,	to believe <i>in</i> God.
de alguna cosa,	to be convinced <i>of</i> any thing.
tear <i>en</i> todo,	to intermeddle <i>in</i> every thing.
de algo, <i>de</i> alguno,	to take care <i>of</i> any thing— <i>of</i> any body.
á uno) <i>de</i> omiso,	to blame (any one) <i>for</i> being negligent.
con alguno,	to discharge one's duty <i>towards</i> any one.
con su obligacion,	to comply <i>with</i> one's duty.
de alguna enfermedad,	to be cured <i>of</i> any disorder.
en salud,	to recover one's health.
al ayre,	to be browned <i>by</i> the air.
del sol,	tanned <i>by</i> the sun.

## D.

Dar (algo) á alguno,  
 dar (á alguno) *de* palos,  
 dar *de* blanco,  
 dar *en* manías,  
 dar *por* visto,  
 darse á estudiar,  
 darse *al* diantre,  
 darse *por* vencido,  
 deber (dinero) á alguno,  
 decir (algo) á otro,  
 decir (bien) *con* una cosa,

decir (bien) *de* alguno,  
 declararse á alguno,  
 declararse *por* un partido,  
 declinar á, *hacia*, tal parte,  
 declinar *en* baja,  
 dedicar (tiempo) *al* estudio,  
 dedicarse á la virtud,  
 defender (á uno) *de* sus contrarios,

deferir (al parecer) *de* otro,  
 defraudar (algo) *de* la autoridad *de*  
 otro,  
 degenerar *de* su nacimiento,  
 delante *de* alguno,  
 delatarse *al* juez,  
 deleytarse *con* la vista,  
 deleytarse *en* oír,  
 deliberar *sobre* tal cosa,  
 dentro *de* casa,  
 depender *de* alguno,  
 deponer (á alguno) *de* su empleo,

depositar (algo) *en* alguna parte,  
 derivar *de* otra autoridad,  
 derrengar *de* alguna cosa,  
 desabrirse *con* alguno,  
 desabrocharse *con* alguno,  
 desagradecido á algun beneficio,  
 desahogarse (con alguno) *de* su pena,  
 desapropiarse *de* algo,  
 desavenirse *con* alguno,  
 desavenirse (uno) *de* otros,  
 desayunarse *de* alguna noticia,  
 descabezarse *en*, *con*, alguna cosa,  
 descalabazarse *en* alguna cosa,  
 descansar *de* la fatiga,  
 descantillar (algo) *de* alguna cosa,  
 descargarse *de* alguna cosa,  
 descartarse *de* algun encargo,  
 descender á los valles,  
 descender *de* buen linaje,  
 descolgarse *de*, *por*, la muralla,  
 descollar *sobre* otras,  
 descomponerse *con* alguno,  
 desconfiar *de* alguno,  
 desconocido á los beneficios,  
 descontar (algo) *de* alguna cosa,

To give (something) *to* any body.  
 to beat (any one) *with* a stick.  
 to hit the mark.  
 to be given *to* extravagancies.  
 to suppose any thing seen.  
 to apply oneself *to* study.  
 to despair.  
 to surrender.  
 to owe (money) *to* any one.  
 to tell (something) *to* another.  
 one thing *to* agree (well) *with* an other.  
 to speak (well) *of* any one.  
 to declare oneself *to* any body.  
 to decide *in* favour *of* any party.  
 to lean *on* such a side.  
 to incline *to* meanness.  
 to devote (time) *to* study.  
 to dedicate oneself *to* virtue.  
 to defend (any body) *from* his adversaries.  
 to adopt another's opinion.  
 to detract (something) *from* another's authority.  
 to degenerate *from* one's birth.  
 before any body.  
 to accuse oneself *to* a judge.  
 to be delighted *at* seeing.  
 to be delighted *at* hearing.  
 to deliberate *on* such a thing.  
 within doors.  
 to depend *upon* any one.  
 to remove (any one) *from* his employment.  
 to deposit (any thing) *in* any place.  
 to derive *from* another authority.  
 to have an aversion *for* any thing.  
 to have a difference *with* any one.  
 to unbosom oneself *to* any one.  
 ungrateful *for* any kindness.  
 to communicate one's grief *to* another  
 to deprive oneself *of* any thing.  
 to disagree *with* any one.  
 (some) *to* disagree *with* others.  
 to receive the first intelligence.  
 to apply oneself *with* vehemence *to*  
 any thing.  
 to rest *from* fatigue.  
 to break *off* a corner *of* any thing.  
 to clear oneself *from* any thing.  
 to excuse oneself *from* any charge.  
 to descend *to* the valleys.  
 to descend *from* a good family.  
 to let oneself down *the* wall.  
 to surpass others.  
 to disagree *with* any one.  
 to distrust any one.  
 ungrateful *for* favours.  
 to deduct (something) *from* another.

e con alguno,	to disclose oneself to any one.
e de, en, su obligacion,	to neglect one's duty.
de su carácter,	to deviate from one's character.
de lo dicho,	to retract what one has said.
de alguna cosa,	to disdain any thing.
zarse de estorbos,	to get rid of obstacles.
ar de la nave,	to disembark from the ship.
ar en el puerto,	to land in the harbour.
rse en vicios,	to deliver oneself up to vices.
las banderas,	to desert the colours.
de la pretension,	to despair of one's pretensions.
algo) de alguna cosa,	to take (something) away from another.
de los montes,	to fall from the mountains.
á trabajar,	to work with anxiety.
de alguna cosa,	to get rid of any thing.
en llanto,	to weep excessively.
á alguno,	to contradict any one.
(una cosa) de otra,	(one thing) to be unlike another.
de pasiones,	to master one's passions.
de alguna cosa,	to take leave of any thing.
de un monte,	to precipitate oneself from a mountain.
de un vicio en otro,	to rush from one vice into another.
á alguno,	to awake any one.
del sueño,	to awake from sleep.
de la ofensa,	to be revenged for an affront.
e de gente,	to become depopulated.
con alguno,	to be betrothed to any one.
se de algo,	to get rid of something.
llegar, de alguno, de al-	after arriving, after any one, after something.
a,	to deprive (any one) of his power.
(á alguno) de su poder,	to make up for one's loss.
de la pérdida,	to banish (any one) from his country.
á uno) de su patria,	to consume oneself with weeping.
á llorar,	to consume oneself with anger.
de enfado,	to be insolent to any body.
arse con alguno,	to lose one's way.
el camino,	to be anxious about any thing.
por algo,	to be detained by difficulties.
n dificultades,	to resolve to depart.
se á partir,	behind the church.
la iglesia,	to send back (the cause) to the judge.
a causa) al juez,	to bequeath (a legacy) to any one.
manda) á alguno,	to discontinue (or to fail) to write.
tribir,	to deposit (something) in another's hands.
) en manos de otro,	to defer (any thing) to another time.
o) á, para, otro tiempo,	to condescend to grant any thing.
conceder algo,	(one thing) to spring from another.
una cosa) de otra,	to distinguish (one thing) from another.
una cosa) de otra,	to be disgusted with any thing.
de con alguna cosa,	to dispose of property.
los bienes,	to prepare oneself to travel.
á caminar,	to dispute about any thing.
sobre alguna cosa,	to dissent from another's opinion.
otro dictámen,	(one town) to be distant from another.
pueblo) de otro,	to distinguish (one thing) from another.
una cosa) de otra,	to be absent in conversation.
e, en, la conversacion,	

disuadir (á alguno) *de alguna cosa*,  
dividir (una cosa) *de otra*,  
dividir *en partes*,  
dividir *entre muchos*,  
dividir *por mitad*,  
dolerse *de los pecados*,  
dotado *de ciencia*,  
dudar *de alguna cosa*,  
durar *hasta el invierno*,  
durar *por mucho tiempo*,  
duro *de corteza*,

to dissuade (one) *from any thing*.  
to separate (one thing) *from another*.  
to divide *into parts*.  
to divide *among many*.  
to divide *into halves*.  
to grieve *for one's sins*.  
endowed *with learning*.  
to doubt *any thing*.  
to last *till winter*.  
to last *a long time*.  
of a hard exterior.

## E.

Echar (algo) *d, en, por*, tierra,  
echar olor *de sí*,  
elevarse *d, hasta*, el cielo,  
elevarse *de la tierra*,  
embarcarse *en negocios*,  
embobarse *con, de, en*, alguna cosa,  
emboscarse *en el monte*,  
empaparse *en agua*,  
emparejar *con* alguno,  
emparentar *con* alguno,  
empeñarse *en una cosa*,  
empeñarse *por* alguno,  
emplearse *en alguna cosa*,  
enagenarse *de alguna cosa*,  
enamorarse *de* alguno,  
enamorarse *de* alguno,  
encallar (la nave) *en arena*,  
encaminarse *d alguna parte*,  
encaramarse *en, por, sobre*, la pared,  
encararse *d, con*, alguno,  
encargarse *de* algun negocio,  
encasquetarse (algo) *en la cabeza*,  
encastillarse *en alguna parte*,  
encojar *en, por*, alguna parte,  
encenagarse *en vicios*,  
encenderse *en ira*,  
encerrarse *en su casa*,  
encharcarse *en agua*,  
encomendarse *d Dios*,  
enconarse *con* alguno,  
enfermar *del pecho*,  
enfrascarse *en la disputa*,  
engolfarse *en cosas graves*,  
engreirse *con la fortuna*,  
enlazar (alguna cosa) *con otra*,  
ennmendarse *con la correccion*,  
enmendarse *de, en*, alguna cosa,  
enredarse (una cosa) *con, en*, otra,  
ensayarse *d, para*, alguna cosa,  
ensayarse *en* alguna cosa,  
entender *de* alguna cosa,  
entender *en sus negocios*,  
enterarse *de* alguna cosa,  
enterarse *en* algun negocio,  
entrar *en* alguna parte,  
entregar (algo) *d alguno*,  
entremeterse *en cosas de otro*,

To throw (any thing) *on the ground*.  
to exhale an odour.  
to be exalted *to the skies*.  
to be elevated *above the earth*.  
to enter *into business*.  
to be stupefied *at any thing*.  
to be in ambush *on a hill*.  
to be drenched *with rain or water*.  
to be equal *to another*.  
to be related *to any one*.  
to pledge oneself *to do any thing*.  
to interest oneself *for any one*.  
to be employed *in any thing*.  
to alienate *any thing*.  
to be enamoured *of any one*.  
to be slightly in love *with any one*.  
to run (a ship) *on the sand*.  
to direct one's course *towards any part*.  
to climb *up the wall*.  
to face *any one*.  
to take charge *of any business*.  
to be stubborn *in any thing*.  
to fortify oneself *in any place*.  
to thrust oneself *into any place*.  
to wallow *in vice*.  
to be inflamed *with anger*.  
to shut oneself up *at home*.  
to paddle *in water*.  
to commend oneself *to God*.  
to be irritated *with any one*.  
to be diseased *in the breast*.  
to be warm *in dispute*.  
to be absorbed *in important things*.  
to be elated *with fortune*.  
to bind (one thing) *to another*.  
to amend *by correction*.  
to correct oneself *in any thing*.  
to entangle (one thing) *with another*.  
to learn *any thing*.  
to become expert *in any thing*.  
to understand *any thing*.  
to understand one's business.  
to be well informed *of any thing*.  
to acquaint oneself *with any business*.  
to enter *any part*.  
to deliver (something) *to any one*.  
to intermeddle *with another's affairs*.

o) á alguno,	to send (something) to any one.
:( una cosa) con otra,	to mistake (one thing) for another.
:( en algo,	to mistake in any thing.
le la prision,	to escape from prison.
por la ventana,	to escape through the window.
ir de, con, alguna cosa,	to take warning from any thing.
ir en cabeza agena,	to take warning at another's expense.
en alguna parte,	to hide oneself in any place.
de alguno,	to hide from any one.
medios,	limited in means.
cartas) á alguno,	to write (letters) to any one.
bronce,	to engrave in bronze.
en alguna cosa,	to aim at eminence in any thing.
de algo,	to be frightened at any thing.
en papel,	to print on paper.
orden de otro,	to be under another's orders.
age,	to be on a voyage or journey.
una parte,	to be in any place.
modo de,	to have a mind for.
que se hace,	to understand what is doing.
salir,	to be on the point of departing.
(una cosa) por suceder,	(something) to be about to take place.
con alguno,	to become intimate with any one.
:( en los gastos,	to reduce one's expenses.
con alguno,	to speak harshly to, or to oppose any one.
en, contra, alguna cosa,	to dash against any thing.
alguna cosa,	to rest on any thing.
(una cosa) á otra,	(one thing) to exceed another.
na cantidad) en mil reales,	(an amount) to exceed (another) by a thousand reals.
(á alguno) de alguna cosa,	to except (any one) from any thing.
alguno) de alguna parte ó	to exclude (any one) from any place or thing.
con alguno,	to apologize to any one.
de hacer alguna cosa,	to excuse oneself from doing any thing.
á alguno) á tal cosa,	to exhort (any one) to such a thing.
alguno) de alguna cosa,	to exempt (any one) from any thing.
á alguno) de su empleo,	to dismiss (any one) from his employment.
alguno) de alguna parte,	to expel (any one) from any place.
las artes,	skilled in the arts.
na cosa) de otra,	to extract (one thing) from another.
de la carrera,	to go out of one's course, or to deviate from one's purpose.

## F.

igerir,	Easy to digest.
palabra,	to fail in one's word.
alguna parte,	to be absent from any place.
icio,	to be deficient in judgment.
:( de manjares,	to loathe food.
le, en, por, alguna cosa,	to fatigue oneself about any thing.
á, para, alguno,	favourable to any one.
de de alguno,	to avail oneself of any one.
en, alguno,	to confide in any one.
) á alguno,	to trust (any thing) to any one.
, sus amigos,	faithful to one's friends.
:( en la pared,	to fix (any thing) against the wall.
la razon,	flexible to reason.
en, entre, dudas,	to fluctuate in doubts.

fortificarse en alguna parte,	to fortify oneself in any place.
franquearse á, con, alguno,	to open oneself to any one.
frisar (una persona, ó cosa) con otra,	(one person or thing) to resemble another.
fuera de casa,	out of doors.
fuerza de condicion,	of a lofty temper.
fundarse en razon,	to be founded on reason.

## G.

Girar (una letra) á cargo de otro,	To draw (a bill) to the order of another.
girar de una parte á otra,	to reel about.
girar por tal parte,	to turn on such a side.
girar sobre una casa de comercio,	to draw upon a commercial house.
gloriarse de alguna cosa,	to boast of any thing.
gordo de tal,	of a stout figure.
gozar de alguna cosa,	to enjoy any thing.
graduar (una cosa) de, por, buena,	to pronounce any thing good,
grangear (la voluntad) á, de, alguno,	to gain any one's affections.
guardarse (alguno) de alguna cosa,	to guard against any person.
guarecerse de alguna persona, ó cosa,	to take shelter from any person or thing.
guarecerse en alguna parte,	to take shelter in any place.
guarnecer (una cosa) con, de, otra,	to deck one thing with another.
guiado de alguno,	led by any one.
guiarse por alguno,	to guide oneself by any one.
guindarse por la pared,	to descend by the wall.
gustar de alguna cosa,	to relish any thing.

## H.

Hábil en papeles,	Skilful in documents.
hábil para el empleo,	qualified for the employment.
habilitar (á uno) en, para, alguna cosa,	to enable any body to do any thing.
habitar con alguno,	to dwell with any body.
habitar en tal parte,	to dwell in such a place.
habituarse á, en, alguna cosa,	to habituate oneself to any thing.
hablar con, por, alguno,	to speak with or for any one.
hablar de, en, sobre, alguna cosa,	to speak on any thing.
hablar en griego,	to talk unintelligibly.
hacer de valiente,	to pretend to courage.
hacer para sí,	to do for oneself.
hacer por alguno,	to do for any one.
hacerse á todo,	to be ready at any thing.
hacerse de buenos libros,	to furnish oneself with good books.
hallar (alguna cosa) en tal parte,	to find (something) in such a place.
hallarse á, en, la fiesta,	to be present at the feast.
hartarse de comida,	to cram oneself with food.
henchir (el cántaro) de agua,	to fill (the pitcher) with water.
herir (á alguno) en la estimacion,	to hurt any one's reputation,
herido de la injuria,	wounded by calumny.
hermanar (una cosa) con otra,	to match (one thing) with another.
hervir (un lugar) de, en, gente,	(a town) to be very populous.
hincarse de rodillas,	to kneel down.
hincar en alguna cosa,	to stumble against any thing.
holgarse con, de, alguna cosa,	to rejoice at any thing.
huir de alguna persona ó cosa,	to fly from any person or thing.
humanarse á alguna cosa,	to familiarize oneself with any thing.
humanarse con los inferiores,	to be condescending to inferiors.

irse á alguna persona ó cosa,	to humble oneself to any person or thing.
(alguna cosa) en el agua,	to sink (any thing) in the water.
se en un pantano,	to sink into a bog.

## I.

para alguna cosa,	Fit for any thing.
, con, otro,	equal to another.
, fuerzas,	equal in strength.
(una cosa) á, con, otra,	to make one thing equal to another.
(á alguno) de, en, alguna	to instruct (any one) in any thing.
lo de la necesidad,	impelled by necessity.
trable á los mas perspicaces,	impenetrable to the most discerning.
trable en el secreto,	impenetrable in the secret.
ir (algo) de alguno,	to obtain (any thing) of any one.
ree con, en, alguna cosa,	to be involved in any thing.
r (pena) á alguno,	to impose (a penalty) on any one.
ree en alguna cosa,	to make oneself acquainted with any thing.
ir á alguno,	to concern any one.
inadado de, por, otro,	importuned by another.
inar (á alguno) con preten-	to importune (any one) with preten-
s,	sions.
onar (á alguno) contra otro,	to impress (any one) against another.
onar (á alguno) de, en, al-	to impress any thing on any one.
cosa,	
ir (alguna cosa) en el ánimo,	to impress (any thing) on the mind.
io de, en, para, su edad,	improper for his age.
ado de, por, muchos,	impugned by many.
r (la culpa) á otro,	to impute (the fault) to another.
ible á los pretendientes,	inaccessible to the pretenders.
ile de su opinion,	obstinate in his opinion.
ble en el trabajo,	unwearied in labour.
de remedio,	incapable of remedy.
te en sus tareas,	indefatigable in one's labours.
en culpa,	to fall into an error.
(á alguno) á su defensa,	to incite (any one) to his defence.
(á alguno) contra otro,	to incite (any one) against another.
r (á alguno) á la virtud,	to incline (any one) to virtue.
en el número,	to include in the number.
atible con el mando,	incompatible with the command.
rehensible á los hombres,	incomprehensible to men.
cuenta en alguna cosa,	to be wavering in a thing.
ante en su proceder,	inconstant in his proceeding.
rar (uná cosa) á, con, en otra,	to incorporate (one thing) with another.
le á, para, muchos,	incredible to many.
ir (una cosa) á alguno,	to impose (any thing) on any one.
en delitos,	to fall into crimes.
o en resolver,	undecided in resolution.
ree con, contra, alguno,	to be indignant at any one.
ner (á uno) con otro,	to set (one person) against another.
(á alguno) á pecar,	to tempt (any one) to sin.
vo de error,	productive of error.
r (á alguno) de la pena,	to remit the punishment of any one.
ible en el trabajo,	indefatigable in labour.
de heregía,	infected with heresy.
á otro,	inferior to another.
en alguna cosa,	inferior in something.



inferir (una cosa) <i>de, por, otra,</i>	to infer (one thing) <i>from</i> another.
infectado <i>de</i> peste,	infected <i>with</i> the plague.
infiel <i>á</i> su amigo,	unfaithful <i>to</i> one's friend.
infecible <i>á</i> la razon,	inflexible <i>to</i> reason.
infecible <i>en</i> su dictámen,	inflexible <i>in</i> one's opinion.
induir <i>en</i> alguna cosa,	to have influence <i>in</i> any thing.
informar ( <i>á</i> alguno) <i>de, sobre, alguna cosa,</i>	to inform (any one) <i>of</i> any thing.
infundir (ánimo) <i>á, en, alguno,</i>	to encourage any one.
ingrato <i>á</i> los beneficios,	ungrateful <i>for</i> favours.
ingrato <i>con</i> los amigos,	ungrateful <i>to</i> friends.
inhábil <i>para</i> el empleo,	unfit <i>for</i> the employment.
inhabilitar ( <i>á</i> alguno) <i>para</i> alguna cosa,	to unfit one <i>for</i> any thing.
inhibir al juez <i>de, en, el</i> conocimiento,	to prevent the judge <i>from</i> taking cognizance.
insensible <i>á</i> las injurias,	insensible <i>to</i> injuries,
inseparable <i>de</i> la virtud,	inseparable <i>from</i> virtue.
insertar una cosa <i>en</i> otra,	to insert one thing <i>in</i> another.
insinuar (una cosa) <i>á</i> alguno,	to insinuate (any thing) <i>to</i> any one.
insinuarse <i>con</i> los poderosos,	to insinuate oneself <i>into</i> the favour of the great.
insípido <i>al</i> gusto,	insipid <i>to</i> the taste.
insistir <i>en, sobre, alguna cosa,</i>	to insist <i>on</i> any thing.
inspirar (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguno,	to inspire (any thing) <i>in</i> any one.
instruir ( <i>á</i> alguno) <i>de, en, sobre</i> alguna cosa,	to instruct (any one) <i>in</i> any thing.
interceder <i>con</i> alguno, <i>por</i> otro,	to intercede <i>with</i> any one, <i>for</i> another.
interceder <i>por</i> otro, <i>con</i> alguno,	to intercede <i>for</i> another, <i>with</i> any one.
interesarse <i>con</i> alguno, <i>por</i> otro,	to interest oneself <i>with</i> any one, <i>for</i> another.
interesarse <i>por</i> otro, <i>con</i> alguno,	to interest oneself <i>for</i> another <i>with</i> any one.
interesarse <i>en</i> alguna cosa,	to interest oneself <i>in</i> any thing.
internarse <i>con</i> alguno,	to insinuate oneself <i>into</i> another's favour.
internarse <i>en</i> alguna cosa <i>ó</i> lugar,	to look <i>into</i> any thing or place.
interpolar (unas cosas) <i>con</i> otras,	to mingle (some things) <i>with</i> others.
interponer (su autoridad) <i>con</i> alguno,	to interpose: (one's authority) <i>with</i> any one.
intervenir <i>en</i> las cosas,	to intervene <i>in</i> things.
intervenir <i>por</i> alguno,	to interfere <i>for</i> any one.
introducirse <i>con</i> los que mandan,	to introduce oneself <i>to</i> the commanders.
introducirse <i>en, por, alguna parte,</i>	to introduce oneself <i>into</i> any place.
invadido <i>de, por, los</i> contrarios,	invaded <i>by</i> the enemies.
invernar <i>en</i> tal parte,	to pass the winter <i>in</i> such a place.
invertir (el caudal) <i>en</i> otro uso,	to invest (money) <i>for</i> another use.
ingerir (un árbol) <i>en</i> otro,	to ingraft (one tree) <i>on</i> another.
ir (de Madrid) <i>á, hácia</i> Cádiz,	to go (from Madrid) <i>towards</i> Cadiz.
ir <i>contra</i> alguno,	to go <i>against</i> any body.
ir <i>por</i> el camino,	to go <i>by</i> the road.
ir <i>por</i> pan,	to go <i>for</i> bread.
ir <i>tras</i> alguno,	to go <i>after</i> any one.

## J.

Jactarse <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	To boast <i>of</i> any thing.
jugar <i>á</i> tal juego,	to play <i>at</i> such a game.
jugar (unos) <i>con</i> otros,	to play <i>with</i> each other.

una cosa) *con* otra,

to move (one thing about) *with* another.

na cosa) *á* con otra,

to join (one thing) *with* another.

e *de* algun cargo,

to justify oneself *on* any charge.

alguna cosa,

to judge *of* any thing.

## L.

na cosa) *á* tal parte,

To lean (any thing) *on* such a side.

(alguno) *á* otro partido,

(any one) to side *with* another party.

se *de* la desgracia,

to lament the misfortune.

lgo) *á*, *contra*, alguno,

to dart (any thing) *at* any one.

cuerpo,

tall *in* stature.

nanos,

frank, liberal.

e *con* una piedra,

to hurt oneself *with* a stone.

e *de* algo,

to take pity *on* any thing.

pensamientos) *á* alguno,

to read any one's thoughts.

terra,

far *from* the land.

(las manos) *al* cielo,

to raise (one's hands) *to* heaven.

(alguna cosa) *del* suelo,

to raise (any thing) *from* the ground.

(alguna cosa) *en* alto,

to lift (any thing) *on* high.

*á* alguno) *de* peligro,

to rescue (any one) *from* danger.

alguno) *de* riesgos,

to deliver (any one) *from* risk.

alguno,

to dispute *with* any one.

a cosa) *con* otra,

to bind (one thing) *with* another.

pies,

light-footed.

as facultades) *á* alguno,

to limit any one's faculties.

de talentos,

of limited talents.

na posesion) *con* otra,

(one estate) to adjoin another.

lgo) *á* alguna parte,

to carry (something) *to* any place,

se alguna pasion,

to be led away *by* some passion.

n alguno,

to contend *with* any one.

a cosa) *con* otra,

to rub (one thing) *against* another.

## M.

arse *con* alguno,

To incur the hatred *of* any one.

agua) *de* una fuente,

(water) to spring *from* a fountain.

s una mano,

maimed *of* one hand.

unarse *con* otros,

to associate oneself *with* others.

(alguna cosa) *á* alguno,

to send (any thing) *to* any one.

ar (alguna cosa) *á* alguno,

to disclose (any thing) *to* any one.

r (conversacion) *á* alguno,

to carry on a conversation *with* any one.

rse *de* yerbas,

to maintain oneself *on* herbs.

rse *en* paz,

to keep oneself *in* peace.

r *contra* alguno,

to plot *against* any one.

arse *de* alguna cosa,

to wonder *at* any thing.

ien ducados,

more *than* a hundred ducats.

*á* trabajar,

to kill oneself *with* work.

por conseguir alguna cosa,

to kill oneself *in* the pursuit of any thing.

con, *de*, colores,

to embellish *with* colours.

de cuerpo,

of middling stature.

on, *por*, alguno,

to intercede *for* any one.

ntre los contrarios,

to mediate *between* adversaries.

con sus fuerzas,

to act according to one's strength.

en palabras,

to weigh one's words.

m la hacienda,

to thrive *in* one's estate.

de empleo,

to improve *in* one's employment.

(*á* alguno) *en* tercio y

to better another one's fortune.

),

e edad,

under age, or younger.

ménos de cien ducados,  
 merecer *á, de* alguno,  
 mesurarse en las acciones,  
 meter (dinero) en el cofre,  
 meter (á alguno) en empeño,  
 meter (una cosa) entre otras cosas,  
 meterse á gobernar,  
 meterse á caballero,  
 meterse con los que mandan,  
 meterse en los peligros,  
 mezclar (una cosa) con otra,  
 mezclarse en negocios,  
 mirar (la ciudad) á oriente,  
 mirar por alguno,  
 mirarse en alguna cosa,  
 moderarse en las palabras,  
 mofarse de alguno,  
 mojar (alguna cosa) en agua,  
 molerse á trabajar,  
 molido de andar,  
 molestar (á uno) con visitas,  
 molesto á todos,  
 montar á caballo,  
 montar en mala,  
 montar en cólera,  
 morar en poblado,  
 morir de poca edad,  
 morir de enfermedad,  
 morirse de frío,  
 morirse por lograr alguna cosa,  
 motejar (á alguno) de ignorante,  
 motivar (la providencia) con razones,  
 moverse de una parte á otra,  
 muchos de los presentes,  
 mudar (alguna cosa) á otra parte,  
 mudar de intento,  
 mudarse de casa,  
 murmurar de alguno,

less than a hundred ducats.  
 to deserve of any one.  
 to be cautious in one's actions.  
 to put (money) into the chest.  
 to lay (any one) under an obligation  
 to put (one thing) among other thing  
 to assume the government.  
 to affect the gentleman.  
 to interfere with those who govern.  
 to expose oneself to dangers.  
 to mix (one thing) with another.  
 to interfere in business.  
 (the city) to look to the east.  
 to look for any one.  
 to be careful in any thing.  
 to be moderate in words.  
 to mock any one.  
 to wet (any thing) in water.  
 to fatigue oneself with work.  
 fatigued with walking.  
 to molest (any one) with visits.  
 annoying to every one.  
 to get on horseback.  
 to get on a mule.  
 to get into a rage.  
 to live in a town.  
 to die young.  
 to die of disease.  
 to die from cold.  
 to pine after any thing.  
 to censure (any one) as ignorant.  
 to persuade (a measure) by reasons.  
 to move from one place to another.  
 many of the present.  
 to remove (any thing) to another place.  
 to change one's purpose.  
 to remove to another house.  
 to murmur against any one.

## N.

Nacer con fortuna,  
 nacer (alguna cosa) de alguna parte,  
 nacer en las malvas,  
 nacer para trabajos,  
 nadar en el río,  
 navegar á Indias,  
 negarse á la comunicacion,  
 nimio en su proceder,  
 ninguno de los presentes,  
 nivelarse á lo justo,  
 nombrar (á alguno) para el empleo,  
 notar (á alguno) de hablador,  
 notificar (alguna cosa) á alguno,

To be born to a fortune.  
 (something) to spring from any part  
 to be of low origin.  
 to be born to troubles.  
 to swim in the river.  
 to navigate to the Indies.  
 to refuse intercourse.  
 particular in one's conduct.  
 none of the present.  
 to abide by what is just.  
 to name (any one) for the employment.  
 to set one down for a prattler.  
 to notify (any thing) to any one.

## O.

Obligar (á alguno) á alguna cosa,  
 obstar (una cosa) á otra,  
 obstinarse en alguna cosa,  
 obtener (alguna gracia) de alguno,

to compel (one) to any thing.  
 (one thing) to oppose another.  
 to persist in any thing.  
 to obtain (any favour) from any one

alguna cosa) <i>á, de, alguno,</i>	to conceal (any thing) <i>from</i> any one.
<i>n</i> trabajar,	to be occupied <i>at</i> work.
<i>con, de, alguna cosa,</i>	to be offended <i>at</i> any thing.
alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguno,	to offer (any thing) <i>to</i> any one.
<i>los</i> peligros,	to face danger.
cosa) <i>á</i> otra,	(one thing) <i>to</i> smell <i>like</i> another.
<i>de</i> lo pasado,	to forget the past.
<i>sobre, alguna cosa,</i>	to hold an opinion <i>on</i> any thing.
alguno) <i>con</i> el poder,	to oppress (another) <i>by means of</i> power.
<i>empleos,</i>	to be a candidate.
<i>de</i> sacerdote,	to be ordained a priest.
una parte,	to draw <i>to</i> any side.

## P.

una cosa) <i>con</i> otro,	To bargain (for something) <i>with</i> any one.
palabras,	to pay <i>with</i> words.
inero,	to pay <i>in</i> cash.
buenas razones,	to be satisfied <i>with</i> good reasons.
<i>con</i> alguna cosa,	to please the palate <i>with</i> any thing.
una cosa) <i>con</i> otra,	to palliate (one thing) <i>with</i> another.
semlante,	of a pale complexion.
alguno,	to applaud any one <i>by</i> clapping hands.
puerta,	to stop <i>at</i> the door.
asa,	to stay <i>at</i> home.
descansar,	to stay <i>to</i> take rest.
<i>n</i> alguno,	to stop <i>with</i> any one.
alguna cosa,	to stop <i>at</i> any thing.
<i>a</i> comida,	sparing <i>at</i> meals.
alguna parte,	to appear <i>in</i> any place.
<i>á</i> otro,	to resemble another.
(algo) <i>á</i> alguno,	to participate (any thing) <i>to</i> any one.
<i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to partake <i>of</i> any thing.
izarse <i>con</i> alguno,	to be singular <i>with</i> any one.
izarse <i>en</i> alguna cosa,	to signalize oneself <i>in</i> any thing.
alia,	to set out <i>for</i> Italy.
<i>o</i> <i>con</i> otro,	to divide (any thing) <i>with</i> another.
edazos,	to divide <i>in</i> pieces.
<i>e</i> amigos,	to share <i>between</i> friends.
mitad,	to divide <i>by</i> halves.
entero,	to divide <i>by</i> two numbers, or by tens.
<i>España,</i>	to depart <i>from</i> Spain.
adrid,	to go <i>to</i> Madrid.
evilla,	to go <i>from</i> or <i>beyond</i> Seville.
<i>e</i> montes,	to pass <i>between</i> the mountains.
el camino,	to go <i>by</i> the road.
entre árboles,	to pass <i>between</i> trees.
cobarde,	to pass <i>for</i> a coward.
una cosa) <i>de</i> la memoria,	(any thing) <i>to</i> escape the memory.
fruta <i>de</i> madura,	fruit <i>to</i> be over ripe.
uno <i>de</i> letras,	to excel <i>in</i> learning.
<i>on</i> otro,	to take a walk <i>with</i> another,
<i>or</i> el campo,	to walk <i>in</i> the country.
<i>ra</i> la ley,	to sin <i>against</i> the law,
ignorante,	to sin <i>through</i> ignorance.
alguna cosa,	to sin <i>in</i> any thing.
'demasia,	to sin <i>by</i> excess.
una cosa) <i>á</i> alguno,	to ask (any thing) <i>of</i> any one.
justicia,	to ask <i>with</i> justice.
<i>re</i> alguno,	to bring an action <i>against</i> any one.
usticia,	to claim <i>by</i> law.

pedir en justicia,  
 pedir por Dios,  
 pedir por alguno,  
 pegar (una cosa) á otra,  
 pegar (una cosa) con otra,  
 pegar *contra*, *en*, la pared,  
 pelarse por alguna cosa,  
 peligrar en alguna cosa,  
 pelotearse con alguno,  
 penar en la otra vida,  
 penar por alguna persona ó cosa,  
 pender de alguna cosa,

penetrar hasta las entrañas,  
 penetrado de dolor,  
 pensar en, sobre, alguna cosa,  
 perder (algo) de vista,  
 perderse (alguno) de vista,

perderse en el camino,  
 perecer de hambre,  
 perecerse de risa,  
 perecerse por alguna cosa,  
 peregrinar por el mundo,  
 perfumar con incienso,  
 permanecer en alguna parte,  
 permitir (alguna cosa) á alguno,  
 permutar (una cosa) con, por, otra,  
 perseguido de enemigos,  
 perseverar en algun intento,  
 persuadir (alguna cosa) á alguno,  
 persuadirse á alguna cosa,  
 persuadirse de, por, las razones de otro,

pertenecer (una cosa) á alguno,  
 petrecharse de lo necesario,  
 pesarle (á alguno) de lo que ha hecho,

pesado en la conversacion,  
 pescar con red,  
 piar por alguna cosa,  
 picar de, en, todo,  
 picarse de alguna cosa,  
 pintiparado á alguno,  
 plagarse de granos,  
 plantar (á alguno) en alguna parte,  
 plantarse en Cádiz,  
 poblar de árboles,  
 poblar en buen parage,  
 poblarse de gente,  
 ponderar (una cosa) de grande,  
 poner (á uno) á oficio,  
 poner (alguna cosa) en alguna parte,  
 poner (á alguno) por corregidor,  
 ponerse á escribir,  
 porfiar con alguno,  
 portarse con decencia,  
 posar en alguna parte,  
 poseído de temor,  
 postrado de la enfermedad,  
 postrarse á los pies de alguno,

to sue by law.  
 to beg for God's sake.  
 to ask for any one.  
 to attach (one thing) to another.  
 to join (one thing) to another.  
 to fasten against the wall.  
 to be anxious about any thing.  
 to be in danger in any thing.  
 to scuffle with any one.  
 to be punished in a future life.  
 to suffer for any person or thing.  
 to depend upon, or to hang from any thing.

to penetrate into the bowels.  
 penetrated with grief.  
 to think on any thing.  
 to lose sight of any thing.  
 (any one) to excel in an eminent degree.

to lose one's way.  
 to perish with hunger.  
 to die with laughing.  
 to die for any thing.  
 to wander about the world.  
 to perfume with incense.  
 to remain in any place.  
 to permit (any thing) to any one.  
 to exchange (one thing) for another.  
 pursued by enemies.  
 to persevere in any intention.  
 to persuade any one (of any thing).  
 to be persuaded of any thing.  
 to be persuaded by another's reasons.

(any thing) to belong to any one.  
 to be provided with necessaries.  
 (any one) to be sorry for what he has done.

tiresome in conversation.  
 to fish with a net.  
 to whine for any thing.  
 to pretend to excel in every thing.  
 to be offended at any thing.  
 strongly resembling any one.  
 to be plagued with pimples.  
 to set (any one) in any place.  
 to settle in Cadiz.  
 to fill with trees.  
 to settle in a good spot or situation.  
 to be peopled.  
 to exaggerate any thing.  
 to set up (any one) in trade.  
 to put (any thing) somewhere.  
 to appoint (any one) a corregidor.  
 to sit oneself down to write.  
 to persist with any one.  
 to behave with decency.  
 to put up at any place.  
 possessed by fear.  
 weakened by disease.  
 to prostrate oneself at another's feet.

<i>en cama,</i>	to be confined to one's bed.
<i>en tierra,</i>	to prostrate oneself <i>on</i> the earth.
<i>de otro,</i>	preceded <i>by</i> another.
<i>de valiente,</i>	to boast <i>of</i> courage.
<i>irse de, por, alguna parte,</i>	to precipitate oneself <i>from</i> any place.
<i>á otro,</i>	preferred to another.
<i>de alguno,</i>	preferred <i>by</i> any one.
<i>r (alguna cosa) á alguno,</i>	to ask (any thing) <i>of</i> any one.
<i>e de alguno,</i>	to be taken <i>with</i> any one.
<i>(las plantas) en la tierra,</i>	(plants) to take root in the earth.
<i>irse de alguna cosa,</i>	to be prepossessed in <i>favour of</i> any thing.
<i>se á, para, alguna cosa,</i>	to prepare oneself <i>for</i> any thing.
<i>irar (una cosa) á otra,</i>	(one thing) to overbalance another.
<i>r (alguna cosa) á alguno,</i>	to present (any thing) <i>to</i> any one.
<i>r (á uno) para una prebenda,</i>	to prefer (one) <i>to</i> a prebendary.
<i>r (á alguno) de daño,</i>	to preserve (any one) <i>from</i> injury.
<i>á otros,</i>	to preside <i>over</i> others.
<i>en un tribunal,</i>	to preside <i>in</i> a tribunal.
<i>de otro,</i>	presided <i>over by</i> another.
<i>(dinero) á alguno,</i>	to lend (money) <i>to</i> any one.
<i>la dieta para la salud,</i>	(the diet) to contribute <i>to</i> the health.
<i>obre prenda,</i>	to lend <i>on</i> security.
<i>de docto,</i>	to boast <i>of</i> learning.
<i>er (la verdad) sobre la men-</i>	(truth) to prevail <i>over</i> falsehood.
<i>(alguna cosa) á alguno,</i>	to warn (any one) <i>of</i> any thing.
<i>se de lo necesario,</i>	to provide oneself <i>with</i> necessities.
<i>se para un viage,</i>	to prepare <i>for</i> a journey.
<i>de, entre, todos,</i>	first <i>of</i> all.
<i>en alguna cosa,</i>	to interfere in any thing.
<i>á alguno) de lo suyo,</i>	to deprive (one) <i>of</i> his own.
<i>en alguno,</i>	to be intimate <i>with</i> any one.
<i>saltar,</i>	to try to leap.
<i>e todo,</i>	to taste <i>of</i> every thing.
<i>á la eleccion,</i>	to proceed <i>to</i> the election.
<i>con, sin, acuerdo,</i>	to proceed <i>with, without</i> circumspection.
<i>contra alguno,</i>	to proceed <i>against</i> any one.
<i>(una cosa) de otra,</i>	(one thing) to proceed <i>from</i> another.
<i>(á uno) por delitos,</i>	to proceed against (any one) <i>for</i> crimes.
<i>por alguno,</i>	to procure <i>for</i> any one.
<i>ontra las olas,</i>	to row <i>against</i> the waves.
<i>en religion,</i>	to profess in religion.
<i>r (alguna cosa) á alguno,</i>	to promise (any thing) <i>to</i> any one.
<i>r (á alguno) á algun encargo,</i>	to promote (any one) <i>to</i> any employment.
<i>se á, en, alguna cosa,</i>	to overstep oneself in any thing.
<i>(alguna cosa) á alguno,</i>	to propose (any thing) <i>to</i> any one.
<i>(á alguno) en primer lugar,</i>	to propose (any one) <i>for</i> the first place.
<i>onar (á alguno) para alguna</i>	to adapt (any one) <i>for</i> any thing.
<i>onarse á las fuerzas,</i>	to limit oneself <i>to</i> one's strength.
<i>onarse para alguna cosa,</i>	to fit oneself <i>for</i> any thing.
<i>ir (el plazo) á alguno,</i>	to prolong (the stipulated time) <i>for</i> any one.
<i>pir en lágrimas,</i>	to burst <i>into</i> tears.
<i>(la plaza) de víveres,</i>	to supply (the fortress) <i>with</i> provisions.
<i>(el empleo) en alguno,</i>	to confer (a situation) <i>on</i> any one.
<i>de otra cosa,</i>	to proceed <i>from</i> another thing.

provocar á ira,  
 provocar (á alguno) con malas palabras,  
 prójimo á morir,  
 pujar por alguna cosa,  
 purgarse de sospecha,

to provoke to anger.  
 to provoke (any one) by scurrilous language.  
 on the point of death.  
 to be eager in the pursuit of any thing.  
 to clear oneself from suspicion.

## Q.

Quadrar con el encargo,  
 quadrar (alguna cosa) á alguno,  
 qual de los dos,  
 quebrantar (los huesos) á alguno,  
 quebrar (el corazon) á alguno,  
 quedar de asiento,  
 quedar de pies,

To be fit for the employment.  
 (any thing) to suit a person.  
 which of the two.  
 to break any one's bones.  
 to break any one's heart.  
 to remain settled or established.  
 to remain standing, also to better one's fortune.

quedar en casa,  
 quedar (camino) por andar,  
 quedar por alguno,  
 quedar por cobarde,  
 quedar (una cosa) por mia,  
 quedarse en el sermón,  
 quejarse á alguno,  
 quejarse de alguno,  
 querellarse á, ante, el juez,  
 querrellarse de su vecino,  
 quemarse de alguna palabra,  
 quemarse por alguna cosa,  
 querido de sus amigos,  
 quien de ellos,  
 quitar (alguna cosa) á alguno,

to tarry at home.  
 to have further to go.  
 to be answerable for any one.  
 to remain as a coward.  
 (something) to remain as mine.  
 to stop short in a discourse.  
 to complain to any one.  
 to complain of any one.  
 to lay one's complaint before the judge.  
 to complain of one's neighbour.  
 to be insulted by any word.  
 to be enraged at any thing.  
 beloved by one's friends.  
 which of them.

quitar (alguna cosa) de alguna parte, to take (any thing) away from any place.  
 quitarse de quimeras, to refrain from dispute.

## R.

Rabiar de hambre,  
 rabiar por comer,  
 radicarse en la virtud,  
 raer de alguna cosa,  
 rallar (las tripas) á cualquiera,  
 rayar con la virtud,  
 razonar con alguno,  
 rebalzarse (el agua) en alguna parte,  
 rebatir (una cantidad) de otra,  
 rebajar (una cantidad) de otra,  
 recaer en la enfermedad,  
 recalcarse en lo dicho,  
 recatarse de alguno,  
 recavar (alguna cosa) de, con, alguno,  
 recetar (medecinas) á, para, alguno,  
 recetar contra alguno,  
 recibir (alguna cosa) de alguno,  
 recibir á cuenta,  
 recibir (á alguno) en casa,  
 recibirse de abogado,  
 recio de cuerpo,  
 reclinarse en, sobre, alguna cosa,

To rage with hunger.  
 to rage for food.  
 to establish oneself in virtue.  
 to scrape off from any thing.  
 to importune any one.  
 to excel in virtue.  
 to reason with any one.  
 (water) to stagnate in any place.  
 to deduct (one amount) from another.  
 to subtract (one sum) from another.  
 to relapse into sickness.  
 to be firm in what has been said.  
 to be cautious of any one.  
 to obtain (any thing) from any one.  
 to prescribe (medicines) for any one.  
 to make a charge against any one.  
 to receive (any thing) from any one.  
 to receive on account.  
 to receive (any one) at home.  
 to be admitted a counsellor.  
 of a strong body.  
 to lean upon any thing.

alguno) en alguna parte,	to shut up (any one) in any place.
de la enfermedad,	to recover from sickness.
á casa,	to retire home.
ar (alguna cosa) á alguno,	to recommend (any thing) to any one.
ar (agravios) con beneficios,	to recompense (wrongs) with benefits.
arse (el odio) en el corazón,	to harbour (hatred) in one's heart.
r (á uno) con otro,	to reconcile (one) to another.
r (á alguno) con, de, sobre,	to charge (any one) with any thing.
cosa,	
en, sobre, la silla,	to recline on a chair.
alguno) con el sueldo,	to pay (any one) his salary.
se de deudas,	to pay off one's debts.
lguna cosa) á la mitad,	to reduce (any thing) to the half.
en beneficio,	to conduce to one's benefit.
alguna cosa,	to refer to any thing.
con alguna cosa,	to refresh oneself with any thing.
á, en, sagrado,	to take refuge in a sacred place.
lo justo,	to conform to what is just.
en, con, alguna cosa,	to delight in any thing.
reajadas,	to laugh heartily.
lguno,	to laugh at any one.
en alguna cosa,	to examine oneself in any thing.
(á alguno) en su empleo,	to occupy another's situation.
la razón,	to submit to reason.
alguna cosa,	to apostatize from any thing.
lguna cosa) á entre algunos,	to share (any thing) among several.
se (alguna cosa) á la ima-	to represent (any thing) to the imagi-
nación,	nation.
de las manos,	to slip out of the hands.
de alguna cosa,	to resent any thing.
asiento en alguna parte,	to be settled in any place.
la corte,	to reside at the court.
á alguna cosa,	to resolve on any thing.
á la pregunta,	to answer to the question.
a cantidad) de otra,	(one sum) to remain from another.
á su casa,	to retire to one's home.
una cosa) de otra,	(one thing) to result from another.
la soledad,	to retire in solitude.
el mundo,	to retire from the world.
alguna parte,	to flee to some place.
alguna cosa,	to take refuge from any thing.
á, hacia, tal parte,	to recede towards such a place.
risa,	to burst with laughter.
hablar,	to have a strong desire to speak.
autoridad,	to be invested with authority.
en los vicios,	to wallow in vices.
ntra, hacia, sobre, el ene-	to return against the enemy.
tro) á alguno,	to steal (money) from any one.
alguno) por todas partes,	to surround (any one) on all sides.
a plaza) con, de, murallas,	to surround (a place) with walls.
una cosa) á alguno,	to request (any thing) of any one.
alguno,	to fall out with any one.
alguna parte,	to break into any place.
na cosa) con otra,	to rub (one thing) with another.
las palabras,	to stammer in one's speech.

## S.

so,	to taste of wine.
abajos,	to experience trouble.



re la mesa,	to get upon the table.
(una cosa) en lugar de otra,	to substitute (one thing) in place of another.
del auxilio ajeno,	to subsist by another's aid.
en el dictámen,	to be firm in opinion.
r á, por, alguno,	to substitute for any one.
ir (un poder) en alguno,	to substitute (a power) in any one.
rse de la obediencia,	to withdraw oneself from subordination.
(á alguno) en el empleo,	to succeed (any one) in the employment.
os trabajos con paciencia,	to suffer (troubles) with patience.
(alguna cosa) á alguno,	to suggest (any thing) to any one.
e á alguno, ó, á alguna cosa,	to subject oneself to any one, or, to any thing.
r (alguna cosa) en el agua,	to immerge (any thing) in the water.
en alguna parte,	to sink in any place.
f la voluntad,	submissive to the will.
ido de los contrarios,	suppressed by enemies.
á sus enemigos,	superior to one's enemies.
en luces,	superior in talents.
de la sentencia,	to petition against the sentence.
por alguno,	to supplicate for any one.
or alguno,	to act in any one's behalf.
la nave) en el puerto,	(the ship) to ride at anchor in the port.
s víveres,	to furnish provisions.
o de oficio,	suspended from the office.
por el mando,	to aspire to the command.
irse con yerbas,	to subsist on herbs.
irse de esperanzas,	to feed on hopes.

## T.

(á alguno) de ligero,	To accuse (any one) of levity.
de frío,	to tremble with cold.
de muchos,	fearful by many.
so de la muerte,	afraid of death.
á los contrarios,	dreadful to the enemy.
rse en comer,	to be temperate in eating.
á uno) por otro,	to take (one) for another.
en pie,	to remain standing.
azul,	to dye blue.
hacia, tal parte,	to draw on such a side.
r tal parte,	to draw towards such a side.
le frío,	to shiver with cold.
r en alguna cosa,	to waver in any thing.
la herencia) á alguno,	(the inheritance) to fall to any one.
n alguna parte,	to touch any where.
de enfermedad,	touched with disease.
con, en, las manos,	to take with or in the hands.
(una cosa) de tal modo,	to take (any thing) in such a manner.
de cuerpo,	deformed in body.
á alguna parte,	to turn to such a side.
de alguna parte,	to turn from such a side.
ir en alguna cosa.	to work at any thing.
ir por alguna cosa,	to work for any thing.
ir por otro,	to work for another.
de alguno,	to seize any one.
(una cosa) con otra,	to join one thing with another.
en alguna cosa,	to fall on any thing.

trabarse de palabras,	to quarrel.
trabucarse en las palabras,	to mistake one's words.
traer (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguna parte,	to bring (any thing) to any place.
traer (alguna cosa) <i>de</i> alguna parte,	to bring (any thing) from any place.
traficar en drogas,	to deal in drugs.
transferir (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> otro tiempo,	to put off (any thing) to another time.
transferirse <i>á</i> tal parte,	to transfer oneself to such a place.
transfigurarse en otra cosa,	to transform oneself into another thing.
transformar (una cosa) <i>en</i> otra,	to transform (one thing) into another.
transitar por alguna parte,	to pass through or by any place.
transpirar por todas partes,	to evaporate on all sides.
transportar (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguna parte,	to transport (any thing) to any place.
transportar (alguna cosa) <i>de</i> alguna parte,	to transport (any thing) from any place.
traspasar (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguno,	to transfer (something) to another.
traspasado de dolor,	pierced by grief.
trasplantar (de una parte) <i>á</i> otra,	to transplant or remove (from one place) to another.
tratar con alguno,	to treat with any one.
tratar de alguna cosa,	to treat of any thing.
tratar en lanas,	to deal in wool.
triunfar de los enemigos,	to triumph over the enemy.
trocar (una cosa) <i>por</i> otra,	to exchange (one thing) for another.
tropezar en alguna cosa,	to stumble on any thing.

## U.

Último de todos,	Last of all.
uncir (los bueyes) <i>al</i> carro,	to yoke (oxen) to the cart.
uniformar (una cosa) <i>á</i> , <i>con</i> , otra,	to make (one thing) uniform with another.
unir (una cosa) <i>á</i> , <i>con</i> , otra,	to unite (one thing) with another.
unirse en comunidad,	to unite in society.
unirse <i>entre</i> sí,	to be united together.
uno de, <i>entre</i> , muchos,	one amongst many.
útil <i>á</i> la patria,	useful to the country.
útil <i>para</i> tal cosa,	useful for such a thing.
utilizarse <i>en</i> , <i>con</i> , alguna cosa,	{ to make oneself useful in any thing.
	{ to turn any thing to one's advantage.

## V.

Vacar <i>al</i> estudio,	To suspend study.
vaciar <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to be emptied of any thing.
vaciar <i>por</i> la boca,	to babble.
vacilar <i>en</i> la elección,	to hesitate in one's choice.
vacilar <i>entre</i> la esperanza y el temor,	to hesitate between hope and fear.
vacío de entendimiento,	void of intellect.
vagar <i>por</i> el mundo,	to wander about the world.
valerse de alguno, <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to avail oneself of any one, or of any thing.
valuar (una cosa) <i>en</i> tal aprecio,	to value (any thing) at such a price.
vanagloriarse <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to be vain of any thing.
vecino <i>al</i> trono,	near the throne.
vecino <i>de</i> Antonio,	a neighbour of Anthony.
velar <i>á</i> los muertos,	to watch over the dead.
velar <i>sobre</i> alguna cosa,	to watch over any thing.
vencerse <i>á</i> alguna cosa,	to conquer oneself in any thing.
vencido <i>de</i> los contrarios,	conquered by the enemy.
venderse <i>á</i> alguno,	to sell oneself to any one.

<i>de otro,</i>	to be revenged <i>on</i> another.
<i>de, por, alguna parte,</i>	to come <i>to, from, or through</i> any place.
<i>alguno,</i>	to come <i>with</i> any one.
<i>alguno,</i>	to see or meet any one.
<i>altura,</i>	to be high <i>in</i> station, or to be <i>in</i> such a latitude.
<i>la moda,</i>	to dress <i>in</i> the fashion.
<i>de paño,</i>	to be dressed <i>in</i> cloth.
<i>sobre sus súbditos,</i>	to watch <i>over</i> one's subjects.
<i>irse á, en, alguna cosa,</i>	to be violent <i>in</i> any thing.
<i>, para, todos,</i>	visible <i>to</i> all.
<i>a gusto,</i>	to live <i>to</i> one's taste.
<i>alguno,</i>	to live <i>with</i> any one.
<i>limosna,</i>	to live <i>on</i> charity.
<i>milagro,</i>	to live <i>by</i> a miracle.
<i>re la haz de la tierra,</i>	to live <i>without</i> cares.
<i>cielo,</i>	to fly <i>to</i> heaven.
<i>el ayre,</i>	to fly <i>through</i> the air.
<i>, de, hácia, por, tal parte,</i>	to return <i>to, from, towards, by,</i> such a place.
<i>or la verdad,</i>	to defend the truth.
<i>el pleyto,</i>	to vote <i>in</i> the suit.
<i>alguno,</i>	to vote <i>for</i> any one.

## Z.

<i>se ó zambullirse en el agua,</i>	To plunge <i>into</i> the water.
<i>le alguna persona ó cosa,</i>	to avoid any person <i>or</i> thing.
<i>irse en alguna parte,</i>	to hide oneself <i>in</i> any place.
<i>irse en agua,</i>	to dive <i>into</i> the water.
<i>se con alguno,</i>	to retort <i>on</i> any one.
<i>en la tormenta,</i>	to be in dread of sinking <i>in</i> the storm.

## IDIOMS IN CERTAIN VERBS.

---

### ANDAR.

Andar á palos,  
 — á porfia,  
 — de gorra,  
 — con Dios,  
 — con segundas,  
 — en dimes y dirétes,  
 A mejor andar,  
 A peor andar,  
 A mas andar,

To fight with sticks.  
 to be stubborn.  
 to live at another's cost.  
 to go in peace.  
 to be ambiguous.  
 to deal in ifs and ands.  
 at best, at most.  
 at worst.  
 at full speed.

### CAER.

Caer bien á caballo,  
 — en gracia,  
 — a plomo,

To sit well on horseback.  
 to take one's fancy.  
 to fall flat : to lose one's situati  
 influence : to deviate from the  
 road.  
 to fall overboard.  
 to drive to leeward.  
 this colour is well matched with  
 other.

— al mar,  
 — á sotavento,  
 Este color cae bien con el otro,

to be dejected.  
 to burst out into laughter.  
 to die in the bloom of youth.  
 to blush with shame.

Caerse de ánimo,  
 — de risa,  
 — en flor,  
 Caersele á alguno la cara de ver-  
 guenza,

### DAR.

Dar á luz,  
 — á la vela,  
 — de sí,  
 — con algo,  
 — por supuesto,  
 — voces,  
 — lado,  
 — calle,  
 — guerra,  
 — el pésame,  
 — el sí.  
 Darse de algo,  
 — cuidado de algo,  
 — por culpado,  
 — á merced,  
 — las manos,  
 — á las manos,

To publish.  
 to set sail.  
 to stretch, to widen.  
 to find, or to hit upon any thing.  
 to take for granted.  
 to call out, to scream.  
 to side with, or favour any one.  
 to clear the way.  
 to wage war.  
 to condole.  
 to consent.  
 to care about any thing.  
 to be alarmed at any thing.  
 to acknowledge oneself guilty.  
 to surrender at discretion.  
 to shake hands,  
 to come to blows.

## ECHAR.

der,	To spoil.
unque) á pique,	to sink (a vessel).
guno) la culpa,	to blame (any one).
(á un niño),	to baptize (a child).
rra,	to land.
ciones—maldiciones,	to bless—to curse.
es,	to cast lots.
mpas,	to beat time.
s (á alguno),	to miss (any one).
,	to give assistance.
de,	to seize.
cama),	to lie down (in bed).
gocio),	to apply oneself to (business).

## ESTAR.

ae de,	To be within an ace of.
e,	to be standing.
e no vendrá,	to wait the issue of any thing.
	<i>I am inclined to think that he will not</i>
	<i>come.</i>
e está en treinta pesos,	this dress <i>stands</i> me in thirty dollars.

## GUARDARSE.

e no decirle nada,	<i>I took care not to say any thing to</i>
	<i>him.</i>
y bien de no venir,	<i>He took good care not to come.</i>

these and the like examples, the negative particle in Spanish is inserted with, without depriving the sentence of its negative

## HABLAR.

to,	To speak at random.
egundas,	to speak ambiguously or with a double
	meaning.
Dios,	to pray.
engua de plata,	to bribe.
dientes,	to mutter.
	to be on speaking terms.

## HACER.

a á,	to act in the capacity of.
de,	to have weight with.
	to take notice of.
	to endeavour.
e,	to boast.
z,	to put up for the night.

Hacer papel de,  
 — de las suyas,  
 — espalda,  
 — la vista larga,  
 — oídos de mercader,  
 Hacerse á la vela,

to act the character of.  
 to show off one's tricks.  
 to back any one.  
 to feign not to see.  
 to feign not to hear.  
 to set sail.

## IR.

Ir pasando,  
 — de mejor en mejor,  
 — de peor en peor,  
 — bien puesto,  
 — con Dios,  
 — con alguno,  
 Aquí van cien pesos,  
 Irse,  
 — de la memoria,  
 — á pique,

To make shift.  
 to grow better and better.  
 to grow worse and worse.  
 to be well attired.  
 to go in peace.  
 to agree in opinion with another.  
 I bet one hundred dollars.  
 to be dying, to evaporate.  
 to escape the memory.  
 to founder.

## LLEVAR.

Llevar á mal,  
 — (las cosas) con paciencia,  
 Me llevaron diez ducados por este  
 vestido,  
 Llevar en mucho,

To take amiss.  
 to bear (things) with patience.  
 they made me pay ten ducats for th  
 dress.  
 to excel.

## PERDONAR.

No perdonó gasto ninguno,  
 Le perdoné cinco pesos de la cuenta,

He spared no cost.  
 I deducted five dollars from his bill.

## QUERER.

Quiero decir que,  
 Eso quiere decir que,  
 Quiera Dios que,

I mean that.  
 That means that.  
 God grant that.

## SALIR.

El muchacho salió muy travieso,  
 Salir de sí,  
 Me sale á cinco pesos la vara,  
 La obra salió á luz el año pasado,

The boy turned out very unruly.  
 To be enraptured, to turn one's brain  
 It stands me in five dollars a yard.  
 The work came out or was published  
 last year.

## SERVIRSE.

Servase vmd. de sentarse,  
 Se sirvió hacerme este regal,

Be pleased to sit down.  
 He condescended to make me th  
 present.

## TENER.

ue hacer,	To be busy.
erguenza,	to be ashamed.
ambre, sed, frio, &c.	to be hungry, thirsty, cold, &c.
. bien,	to approve of.
on que,	to have means.
azon,	to be in the right.
a culpa,	to be to blame.
uidado,	to take care.
uidados,	to have cares.
iene que <i>hacer</i> , or que <i>ver</i>	That <i>has nothing to do</i> with what I say.
que yo digo,	

## VENIR.

vmd. en eso,	<i>I agree</i> with you in that.
las manos,	To come to blows.
ha venido ?	What has happened to him ?

provocar *á* ira,  
 provocar (á alguno) *con* malas pala-  
 bras,  
 prójimo *á* morir,  
 pujar *por* alguna cosa,  
 purgarse *de* sospecha,

to provoke to anger.  
 to provoke (any one) *by* scurrilous  
 language.  
 on the point of death.  
 to be eager in the pursuit of any thing.  
 to clear oneself *from* suspicion.

Quadrar *con* el encargo,  
 quadrar (alguna cosa) *á* alguno,  
 qual *de* los dos,  
 quebrantar (los huesos) *á* alguno,  
 quebrar (el corazon) *á* alguno,  
 quedar *de* asiento,  
 quedar *de* pies,

quedar *en* casa,  
 quedar (camino) *por* andar,  
 quedar *por* alguno,  
 quedar *por* cobarde,  
 quedar (una cosa) *por* mia,  
 quedarse *en* el sermón,  
 quejarse *á* alguno,  
 quejarse *de* alguno,  
 querellarse *á*, *ante*, el juez,  
 querellarse *de* su vecino,  
 quemarse *de* alguna palabra,  
 quemarse *por* alguna cosa,  
 querido *de* sus amigos,  
 quien *de* ellos,  
 quitar (alguna cosa) *á* alguno,

quitar (alguna cosa) *de* alguna parte,  
 quitarse *de* quimeras,

Q.

To be fit *for* the employment.  
 (any thing) to suit a person.  
 which of the two.  
 to break any one's bones.  
 to break any one's heart.  
 to remain settled or established.  
 to remain standing, *also* to better one's  
 fortune.  
 to tarry *at* home.  
 to have further to go.  
 to be answerable *for* any one.  
 to remain *as* a coward.  
 (something) to remain *as* mine.  
 to stop short *in* a discourse.  
 to complain to any one.  
 to complain of any one.  
 to lay one's complaint *before* the judge.  
 to complain of one's neighbour.  
 to be insulted *by* any word.  
 to be enraged *at* any thing.  
 beloved *by* one's friends.  
 which of them.  
 to take (any thing) away *from* any  
 one.  
 to take (any thing) away *from* any  
 place.  
 to refrain *from* dispute.

Rabiar *de* hambre,  
 rabiar *por* comer,  
 radicarse *en* la virtud,  
 raer *de* alguna cosa,  
 rallar (las tripas) *á* cualquiera,  
 rayar *con* la virtud,  
 razonar *con* alguno,  
 rebalzarse (el agua) *en* alguna parte,  
 rebatir (una cantidad) *de* otra,  
 rebajar (una cantidad) *de* otra,  
 recaer *en* la enfermedad,  
 recalcar *en* lo dicho,  
 recatarse *de* alguno,  
 recavar (alguna cosa) *de*, *con*, alguno,  
 recetar (medecinas) *á*, *para*, alguno,  
 recetar *contra* alguno,  
 recibir (alguna cosa) *de* alguno,  
 recibir *á* cuenta,  
 recibir (á alguno) *en* casa,  
 recibirse *de* abogado,  
 recio *de* cuerpo,  
 reclinarse *en*, *sobre*, alguna cosa,

R.

To rage *with* hunger.  
 to rage *for* food.  
 to establish oneself *in* virtue.  
 to scrape off *from* any thing.  
 to importune any one.  
 to excel *in* virtue.  
 to reason *with* any one.  
 (water) to stagnate *in* any place.  
 to deduct (one amount) *from* another.  
 to subtract (one sum) *from* another.  
 to relapse *into* sickness.  
 to be firm *in* what has been said.  
 to be cautious of any one.  
 to obtain (any thing) *from* any one.  
 to prescribe (medicines) *for* any one.  
 to make a charge *against* any one.  
 to receive (any thing) *from* any one.  
 to receive *on* account.  
 to receive (any one) *at* home.  
 to be admitted a counsellor.  
 of a strong body.  
 to lean *upon* any thing.



recluir (á alguno) en alguna parte,	to shut up (any one) in any place.
recobrar de la enfermedad,	to recover from sickness.
recogerse á casa,	to retire home.
recomendar (alguna cosa) á alguno,	to recommend (any thing) to any one.
recomensar (agravios) con beneficios,	to recompense (wrongs) with benefits.
reconcentrarse (el odio) en el corazón,	to harbour (hatred) in one's heart.
reconciliar (á uno) con otro,	to reconcile (one) to another.
reconvenir (á alguno) con, de, sobre,	to charge (any one) with any thing.
alguna cosa,	
recostarse en, sobre, la silla,	to recline on a chair.
recudir (á alguno) con el sueldo,	to pay (any one) his salary.
redondearse de deudas,	to pay off one's debts.
reducir (alguna cosa) á la mitad,	to reduce (any thing) to the half.
redundar en beneficio,	to conduce to one's benefit.
referirse á alguna cosa,	to refer to any thing.
refocilarse con alguna cosa,	to refresh oneself with any thing.
refugiarse á, en, sagrado,	to take refuge in a sacred place.
reglarse á lo justo,	to conform to what is just.
regodearse en, con, alguna cosa,	to delight in any thing.
reírse á carcajadas,	to laugh heartily.
reírse de alguno,	to laugh at any one.
remirarse en alguna cosa,	to examine oneself in any thing.
remplazar (á alguno) en su empleo,	to occupy another's situation.
rendirse á la razón,	to submit to reason.
renegar de alguna cosa,	to apostatize from any thing.
repartir (alguna cosa) á entre algunos,	to share (any thing) among several.
representarse (alguna cosa) á la ima-	to represent (any thing) to the imagi-
ginación,	nation.
resbalar de las manos,	to slip out of the hands.
resentirse de alguna cosa,	to resent any thing.
residir de asiento en alguna parte,	to be settled in any place.
residir en la corte,	to reside at the court.
resolverse á alguna cosa,	to resolve on any thing.
responder á la pregunta,	to answer to the question.
restar (una cantidad) de otra,	(one sum) to remain from another.
restituirse á su casa,	to retire to one's home.
resultar (una cosa) de otra,	(one thing) to result from another.
retirarse á la soledad,	to retire in solitude.
retirarse del mundo,	to retire from the world.
retraerse á alguna parte,	to flee to some place.
retraerse de alguna cosa,	to take refuge from any thing.
retroceder á, hacia, tal parte,	to recede towards such a place.
reventar de risa,	to burst with laughter.
reventar por hablar,	to have a strong desire to speak.
revestirse de autoridad,	to be invested with authority.
revolcarse en los vicios,	to wallow in vices.
revolver contra, hacia, sobre, el ene-	to return against the enemy.
migo,	
robar (dinero) á alguno,	to steal (money) from any one.
redear (á alguno) por todas partes,	to surround (any one) on all sides.
rodear (una plaza) con, de, murallas,	to surround (a place) with walls.
rogar (alguna cosa) á alguno,	to request (any thing) of any one.
romper con alguno,	to fall out with any one.
romper por alguna parte,	to break into any place.
rozarse (una cosa) con otra,	to rub (one thing) with another.
rozarse en las palabras,	to stammer in one's speech.

## S.

Saber á vino,  
saber de trabajos,

to taste of wine.  
to experience trouble.

sacar (una cosa) <i>á</i> la plaza,	to carry (any thing) <i>to</i> market.
sacar <i>de</i> alguna parte,	to draw out <i>from</i> any place.
sacar <i>en</i> limpio,	to draw out fairly.
sacrificar (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> Dios,	to sacrifice (any thing) <i>to</i> God.
sacrificarse <i>por</i> alguno,	to sacrifice oneself <i>for</i> any one.
salir <i>á</i> alguna cosa,	to co-operate in any thing.
salir <i>con</i> la pretension,	to succeed in one's pretension.
salir <i>contra</i> alguno,	to go <i>against</i> any one.
salir <i>de</i> alguna parte,	to go out of any place.
salir <i>por</i> fiador,	to stand security.
saltar (una cosa) <i>á</i> la imaginacion,	(any thing) <i>to</i> strike the imagination.
saltar <i>del</i> suelo,	to leap <i>from</i> the ground.
saltar <i>de</i> gozo,	to leap <i>with</i> joy.
saltar <i>en</i> tierra,	to jump <i>on</i> shore.
salvar (á alguno) <i>del</i> peligro,	to protect (any one) <i>from</i> danger.
sanar <i>de</i> la enfermedad,	to recover <i>from</i> sickness.
satisfacer <i>por</i> las culpas,	to expiate faults.
satisfacerse <i>de</i> la duda,	to be satisfied <i>of</i> the doubt.
segregar (á alguno) <i>de</i> alguna parte,	to separate (any one) <i>from</i> any place.
segregar (una cosa) <i>de</i> otra,	to separate (one thing) <i>from</i> another.
seguirse (una cosa) <i>de</i> otra,	(one thing) <i>to</i> follow <i>from</i> another.
semejar <i>ó</i> semejarse (una cosa) <i>á</i> otra,	(one thing) <i>to</i> resemble another.
sentarse <i>á</i> la mesa,	to sit <i>at</i> table.
sentarse <i>en</i> la silla,	to sit <i>in</i> a chair.
sentenciar (á uno) <i>á</i> destierro,	to condemn (one) <i>to</i> banishment.
sentirse <i>de</i> algo,	to feel or be sorry <i>for</i> any thing.
separar (una cosa) <i>de</i> otra,	to separate (one thing) <i>from</i> another.
ser (una cosa) <i>á</i> gusto de todos,	(any thing) <i>to</i> be <i>to</i> every one's taste.
ser (una cosa) <i>de</i> , <i>para</i> , alguno,	(any thing) <i>to</i> belong <i>to</i> , or <i>to</i> be <i>for</i> any one.
servir <i>de</i> mayordomo,	to serve <i>as</i> steward.
servir <i>en</i> palacio,	to serve <i>in</i> a palace.
servirse <i>de</i> alguno,	to make use of another's services.
sincerarse <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to clear oneself <i>from</i> any thing.
sisar <i>de</i> la compra,	to purloin <i>from</i> the purchase.
sitiado <i>de</i> enemigos,	besieged <i>by</i> enemies.
sitiar <i>por</i> hambre,	to besiege <i>with</i> hunger.
situarse <i>en</i> alguna parte,	to be stationed <i>in</i> any place.
sobrellevar (los trabajos) <i>con</i> paciencia,	to bear (misfortune) <i>with</i> patience.
sobrellevar (á alguno) <i>en</i> sus trabajos,	to assist (any one) <i>in</i> misfortune.
sobrepujar (á alguno) <i>en</i> autoridad,	to excel (any one) <i>in</i> authority.
sobresalir <i>en</i> galas,	to surpass <i>in</i> dress.
sobresalir <i>entre</i> todos,	to excel <i>amongst</i> all.
sobresaltarse <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to be startled <i>at</i> any thing.
sojuzgado <i>de</i> enemigos,	overcome <i>by</i> enemies.
someterse <i>á</i> alguno,	to submit <i>to</i> any one.
sonar (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> hueca,	(any thing) <i>to</i> sound hollow.
sonar (alguna cosa) <i>hacia</i> tal parte,	(any thing) <i>to</i> sound <i>towards</i> such a side.
sordo <i>á</i> las voces,	deaf <i>to</i> the cries.
sordo <i>de</i> un oído,	deaf <i>of</i> one ear.
sorprender (á alguno) <i>con</i> alguna cosa,	to surprise (any one) <i>with</i> any thing.
sorprenderle <i>en</i> alguna cosa,	to surprise him <i>in</i> any thing.
sorprendido <i>de</i> la bulla,	startled <i>at</i> the noise.
sospechar (alguna cosa) <i>de</i> alguno,	to suspect (any thing) <i>of</i> any one.
sospechoso <i>á</i> alguno,	suspected <i>by</i> any one.
subdividir <i>en</i> partes,	to subdivide <i>in</i> parts.
subir <i>á</i> alguna parte,	to go up <i>to</i> any place.
subir <i>de</i> alguna parte,	to go up <i>from</i> any place.

obre la mesa,	to get upon the table.
ar (una cosa) en lugar de otra,	to substitute (one thing) in place of another.
ir del auxilio ageno,	to subsist by another's aid.
ir en el dictámen,	to be firm in opinion.
uir <i>á</i> , por, alguno,	to substitute for any one.
uir (un poder) en alguno,	to substitute (a power) in any one.
erse de la obediencia,	to withdraw oneself from subordination.
r (á alguno) en el empleo,	to succeed (any one) in the employment.
(los trabajos) con paciencia,	to suffer (troubles) with patience.
: (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguno,	to suggest (any thing) to any one.
rse <i>á</i> alguno, <i>ó</i> , <i>á</i> alguna cosa,	to subject oneself to any one, or, to any thing.
gir (alguna cosa) en el agua,	to immerge (any thing) in the water.
se en alguna parte,	to sink in any place.
o <i>á</i> la voluntad,	submissive to the will.
itado de los contrarios,	suppressed by enemies.
or <i>á</i> sus enemigos,	superior to one's enemies.
or en luces,	superior in talents.
ar de la sentencia,	to petition against the sentence.
ar por alguno,	to supplicate for any one.
por alguno,	to act in any one's behalf.
(la nave) en el puerto,	(the ship) to ride at anchor in the port.
de víveres,	to furnish provisions.
nso de oficio,	suspended from the office.
ar por el mando,	to aspire to the command.
itarse con yerbas,	to subsist on herbs.
itarse de esperanzas,	to feed on hopes.

## T.

ar ( <i>á</i> alguno) de ligero,	To accuse (any one) of levity.
ar de frio,	to tremble with cold.
lo de muchos,	feared by many.
oso de la muerte,	afraid of death.
le <i>á</i> los contrarios,	dreadful to the enemy.
larse en comer,	to be temperate in eating.
( <i>á</i> uno) por otro,	to take (one) for another.
se en pie,	to remain standing.
de azul,	to dye blue.
<i>á</i> , hacia, tal parte,	to draw on such a side.
por tal parte,	to draw towards such a side.
r de frio,	to shiver with cold.
ear en alguna cosa,	to waver in any thing.
(la herencia) <i>á</i> alguno,	(the inheritance) to fall to any one.
en alguna parte,	to touch any where.
lo de enfermedad,	touched with disease.
r con, en, las manos,	to take with or in the hands.
r (una cosa) de tal modo,	to take (any thing) in such a manner.
do de cuerpo,	deformed in body.
r <i>á</i> alguna parte,	to turn to such a side.
r de alguna parte,	to turn from such a side.
jar en alguna cosa,	to work at any thing.
jar por alguna cosa,	to work for any thing.
jar por otro,	to work for another.
r de alguno,	to seize any one.
r (una cosa) con otra,	to join one thing with another.
r en alguna cosa,	to fall on any thing.

trabarse <i>de</i> palabras,	to quarrel.
trabucarse <i>en</i> las palabras,	to mistake one's words.
traer (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguna parte,	to bring (any thing) <i>to</i> any place.
traer (alguna cosa) <i>de</i> alguna parte,	to bring (any thing) <i>from</i> any place.
traficar <i>en</i> drogas,	to deal <i>in</i> drugs.
transferir (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> otro tiempo,	to put off (any thing) <i>to</i> another time.
transferirse <i>á</i> tal parte,	to transfer oneself <i>to</i> such a place.
transfigurarse <i>en</i> otra cosa,	to transform oneself <i>into</i> another thing.
transformar (una cosa) <i>en</i> otra,	to transform (one thing) <i>into</i> another.
transitar <i>por</i> alguna parte,	to pass <i>through</i> or <i>by</i> any place.
transpirar <i>por</i> todas partes,	to evaporate <i>on</i> all sides.
transportar (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguna parte,	to transport (any thing) <i>to</i> any place.
transportar (alguna cosa) <i>de</i> alguna parte,	to transport (any thing) <i>from</i> any place.
traspasar (alguna cosa) <i>á</i> alguno,	to transfer (something) <i>to</i> another.
traspasado <i>de</i> dolor,	pierced <i>by</i> grief.
trasplantar (de una parte) <i>á</i> otra,	to transplant or remove (from one place) <i>to</i> another.
tratar <i>con</i> alguno,	to treat <i>with</i> any one.
tratar <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to treat <i>of</i> any thing.
tratar <i>en</i> lanas,	to deal <i>in</i> wool.
triunfar <i>de</i> los enemigos,	to triumph <i>over</i> the enemy.
trocar (una cosa) <i>por</i> otra,	to exchange (one thing) <i>for</i> another.
tropezar <i>en</i> alguna cosa,	to stumble <i>on</i> any thing.

## U.

Último <i>de</i> todos,	Last <i>of</i> all.
uncir (los bueyes) <i>al</i> carro,	to yoke (oxen) <i>to</i> the cart.
uniformar (una cosa) <i>á</i> , <i>con</i> , otra,	to make (one thing) uniform <i>with</i> another.
unir (una cosa) <i>á</i> , <i>con</i> , otra,	to unite (one thing) <i>with</i> another.
unirse <i>en</i> comunidad,	to unite <i>in</i> society.
unirse <i>entre</i> sí,	to be united together.
uno <i>de</i> , <i>entre</i> , muchos,	one <i>amongst</i> many.
útil <i>á</i> la patria,	useful <i>to</i> the country.
útil <i>para</i> tal cosa,	useful <i>for</i> such a thing.
utilizarse <i>en</i> , <i>con</i> , alguna cosa,	{ to make oneself useful <i>in</i> any thing.
	{ to turn any thing <i>to</i> one's advantage.

## V.

Vacar <i>al</i> estudio,	To suspend study.
vaciarse <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to be emptied <i>of</i> any thing.
vaciarse <i>por</i> la boca,	to babble.
vacilar <i>en</i> la eleccion,	to hesitate <i>in</i> one's choice.
vacilar <i>entre</i> la esperanza y el temor,	to hesitate <i>between</i> hope and fear.
vacio <i>de</i> entendimiento,	void <i>of</i> intellect.
vagar <i>por</i> el mundo,	to wander <i>about</i> the world.
valerse <i>de</i> alguno, <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to avail oneself <i>of</i> any one, or <i>of</i> any thing.
valuar (una cosa) <i>en</i> tal aprecio,	to value (any thing) <i>at</i> such a price.
vanagloriarse <i>de</i> alguna cosa,	to be vain <i>of</i> any thing.
vecino <i>al</i> trono,	near the throne.
vecino <i>de</i> Antonio,	a neighbour <i>of</i> Anthony.
velar <i>á</i> los muertos,	to watch <i>over</i> the dead.
velar <i>sobre</i> alguna cosa,	to watch <i>over</i> any thing.
vencerse <i>á</i> alguna cosa,	to conquer oneself <i>in</i> any thing.
vencido <i>de</i> los contrarios,	conquered <i>by</i> the enemy.
venderse <i>á</i> alguno,	to sell oneself <i>to</i> any one.

<i>rse de otro,</i>	to be revenged <i>on</i> another.
<i>i, de, por, alguna parte,</i>	to come <i>to, from, or through</i> any place.
<i>con alguno,</i>	to come <i>with</i> any one.
<i>con alguno,</i>	to see or meet any one.
<i>en altura,</i>	to be high <i>in</i> station, or to be <i>in</i> such a latitude.
<i>á la moda,</i>	to dress <i>in</i> the fashion.
<i>de paño,</i>	to be dressed <i>in</i> cloth.
<i>sobre sus súbditos,</i>	to watch <i>over</i> one's subjects.
<i>tarse á, en, alguna cosa,</i>	to be violent <i>in</i> any thing.
<i>á, para, todos,</i>	visible <i>to</i> all.
<i>á su gusto,</i>	to live <i>to</i> one's taste.
<i>con alguno,</i>	to live <i>with</i> any one.
<i>de limosna,</i>	to live <i>on</i> charity.
<i>por milagro,</i>	to live <i>by</i> a miracle.
<i>sobre la haz de la tierra,</i>	to live <i>without</i> cares.
<i>al cielo,</i>	to fly <i>to</i> heaven.
<i>por el ayre,</i>	to fly <i>through</i> the air.
<i>á, de, hácia, por, tal parte,</i>	to return <i>to, from, towards, by,</i> such a place.
<i>por la verdad,</i>	to defend the truth.
<i>en el pleyto,</i>	to vote <i>in</i> the suit.
<i>por alguno,</i>	to vote <i>for</i> any one.

## Z.

<i>irse ó zambullirse en el agua,</i>	To plunge <i>into</i> the water.
<i>de alguna persona ó cosa,</i>	to avoid any person <i>or</i> thing.
<i>ocarse en alguna parte,</i>	to hide oneself <i>in</i> any place.
<i>zarse en agua,</i>	to dive <i>into</i> the water.
<i>zarse con alguno,</i>	to retort <i>on</i> any one.
<i>zar en la tormenta,</i>	to be in dread of sinking <i>in</i> the storm.

## IDIOMS IN CERTAIN VERBS.

---

### ANDAR.

Andar á palos,  
 — á porfía,  
 — de gorra,  
 — con Dios,  
 — con segundas,  
 — en dimes y dirétes,  
 A mejor andar,  
 A peor andar,  
 A mas andar,

To fight with sticks.  
 to be stubborn.  
 to live at another's cost.  
 to go in peace.  
 to be ambiguous.  
 to deal in ifs and ands.  
 at best, at most.  
 at worst.  
 at full speed.

### CAER.

Caer bien á caballo,  
 — en gracia,  
 — a plomo,  
 — al mar,  
 — á sotavento,  
 Este color cae bien con el otro,

To sit well on horseback.  
 to take one's fancy.  
 to fall flat : to lose one's situation or influence : to deviate from the right road.  
 to fall overboard.  
 to drive to leeward.  
 this colour is well matched with the other.  
 to be dejected.  
 to burst out into laughter.  
 to die in the bloom of youth.  
 to blush with shame.

Caerse de ánimo,  
 — de risa,  
 — en flor,  
 Caersele á alguno la cara de vergüenza,

to be dejected.  
 to burst out into laughter.  
 to die in the bloom of youth.  
 to blush with shame.

### DAR.

Dar á luz,  
 — á la vela,  
 — de sí,  
 — con algo,  
 — por supuesto,  
 — voces,  
 — lado,  
 — calle,  
 — guerra,  
 — el pésame,  
 — el sí.  
 Darse de algo,  
 — cuidado de algo,  
 — por culpado,  
 — á merced,  
 — las manos,  
 — á las manos,

To publish.  
 to set sail.  
 to stretch, to widen.  
 to find, or to hit upon any thing.  
 to take for granted.  
 to call out, to scream.  
 to side with, or favour any one.  
 to clear the way.  
 to wage war.  
 to condole.  
 to consent.  
 to care about any thing.  
 to be alarmed at any thing.  
 to acknowledge oneself guilty.  
 to surrender at discretion.  
 to shake hands,  
 to come to blows.

## ECHAR.

r á perder,	To spoil.
— (un buque) á pique,	to sink (a vessel).
— (á alguno) la culpa,	to blame (any one).
— agua (á un niño),	to baptize (a child).
— en tierra,	to land.
— bendiciones—maldiciones,	to bless—to curse.
— suertes,	to cast lots.
— el compas,	to beat time.
— ménos (á alguno),	to miss (any one).
— mano,	to give assistance.
— mano de,	to seize.
rse (en cama),	to lie down (in bed).
— á (negocio),	to apply oneself to (business).

## ESTAR.

: á pique de,	To be within an ace of.
— en pie,	to be standing.
— á ver,	to wait the issue of any thing.
/ en que no vendrá,	<i>I am inclined to think that he will not come.</i>
trage me está en treinta pesos,	this dress <i>stands</i> me in thirty dollars.

## GUARDARSE.

uardé de no decirle nada,	<i>I took care not to say any thing to him.</i>
uardó muy bien de no venir,	<i>He took good care not to come.</i>

each of these and the like examples, the negative particle in Spanish be dispensed with, without depriving the sentence of its negative ring.

## HABLAR.

ar á bulto,	To speak at random.
— con segundas,	to speak ambiguously or with a double meaning.
— con Dios,	to pray.
— con lengua de plata,	to bribe.
— entre dientes,	to mutter.
arse,	to be on speaking terms.

## HACER.

er de,	to act in the capacity of.
— fuerza á,	to have weight with.
— caso de,	to take notice of.
— por,	to endeavour.
— alarde,	to boast.
— noche,	to put up for the night.

Hacer papel de,  
 — de las suyas,  
 — espalda,  
 — la vista larga,  
 — oídos de mercader,  
 Hacerse á la vela,

to act the character of.  
 to show off one's tricks.  
 to back any one.  
 to feign not to see.  
 to feign not to hear.  
 to set sail.

## IR.

Ir pasando,  
 — de mejor en mejor,  
 — de peor en peor,  
 — bien puesto,  
 — con Dios,  
 — con alguno,  
 Aquí van cien pesos,  
 Irse,  
 — de la memoria,  
 — á pique,

To make shift.  
 to grow better and better.  
 to grow worse and worse.  
 to be well attired.  
 to go in peace.  
 to agree in opinion with another.  
 I bet one hundred dollars.  
 to be dying, to evaporate.  
 to escape the memory.  
 to founder.

## LLEVAR.

Llevar á mal,  
 — (las cosas) con paciencia,  
 Me *llevaron* diez ducados por este  
 vestido,  
 Llevar en mucho,

To take amiss.  
 to bear (things) with patience.  
 they made me pay ten ducats for this  
 dress.  
 to excel.

## PERDONAR.

No *perdonó* gasto ninguno,  
 Le *perdoné* cinco pesos de la cuenta,

He *spared* no cost.  
 I *deducted* five dollars from his bill.

## QUERER.

Quiero decir que,  
 Eso quiere decir que,  
 Quiera Dios que,

I mean that.  
 That means that.  
 God grant that.

## SALIR.

El muchacho *salió* muy travieso,  
 Salir de sí,  
 Me *sale* á cinco pesos la vara,  
 La obra *salió* á luz el año pasado,

The boy turned out very unruly.  
 To be enraptured, to turn one's brain.  
 It *stands me* in five dollars a yard.  
 The work *came out* or *was published*  
 last year.

## SERVIRSE.

*Sírvase* vmd. de sentarse,  
 Se *sirvió* hacerme este regal,

*Be pleased* to sit down.  
 He *condescended* to make me this  
 present.



## TENER.

r que hacer,	To be busy.
- verguenza,	to be ashamed.
- hambre, sed, frio, &c.	to be hungry, thirsty, cold, &c.
- á bien,	to approve of.
- con que,	to have means.
- razon,	to be in the right.
- la culpa,	to be to blame.
- cuidado,	to take care.
- cuidados,	to have cares.
lo <i>tiene</i> que <i>hacer</i> , or que <i>ver</i>	That <i>has nothing to do</i> with what I say.
lo que yo digo,	

## VENIR.

on vmd. en eso,	I <i>agree</i> with you in that.
: á las manos,	To come to blows.
le ha venido ?	What has happened to him ?

## OF THE TITLES

COMMONLY

### USED IN SPANISH IN ADDRESSING PERSONS.

**SEÑOR and DON.** These titles are prefixed to persons' names, as a mark of respect, and are employed as follows.

*Señor* admits of a feminine and a plural termination, 'with their diminutives, and is employed before baptismal or surnames: as *Señor Carlos*, *La señora de Gomez*, *Los señoritos Perez*, *La señorita Perez*.

*Don*, has a feminine termination, which is *Doña*; but no plural termination. It is never prefixed immediately before surnames; but is used either before baptismal names alone, or before these employed together with the surname. It is politely used either singly, or coupled with *Señor* in our addresses to, or in speaking of persons whom we respect, as, *Don Juan*, *Señor Don Andrés*, *El Señor Don Francisco Alvarez*, *Doña María*, *La Señora Doña Francisca*.

In addressing young ladies, we use *Doña* with their baptismal names, giving a diminutive termination to them; as *Doña Clarita*, *Doña Isabelita*.

In polite society, *Señor* is not used alone, either before baptismal or surnames; but *Don* should be employed before baptismal names as above described:—and with regard to surnames, if we address, or speak of a gentleman, instead of *Señor* we prefix the word *Caballero*; as *Caballero Hernandez*, *El caballero Ramirez*.

*Don* and *Caballero* are titles of rank, equivalent to *Sir* or *Knight*, nevertheless we employ them in polite conversation with persons who have no distinguishing rank.

### THE FOLLOWING ARE THE TITLES USED WITH PERSONS OF RANK.

<i>Su Majestad</i> ,	His or Her Majesty.	<i>Vuestra Majestad</i> ,	Your Majesty.
<i>Su Alteza</i> ,	His or Her Highness.	<i>Vuestra Alteza</i> ,	Your Highness.
<i>Su Señoría</i> ,	His Lordship, or Her Ladyship.	<i>Vuestra Señoría</i> ,	Your Lordship, or Ladyship.
<i>Su Santidad</i> ,	His Holiness.	<i>Vuestra Santidad</i> ,	Your Holiness.
<i>Su Ilustrísima</i> ,	His or Her Grace or Honor.	<i>Vuestra Ilustrísima</i> ,	Your Grace or Honor.
<i>Su Excelencia</i> ,	His or Her Excel- lency.	<i>Vuestra Excelencia</i> ,	Your Excellency.
		or <i>Vucencia</i> ,	

# LIST

OF

## THE MOST COMMON ABBREVIATIONS USED

### IN SPANISH.

---

Those marked with an asterisk will be particularly noticed at the end of the list.

A. C.	Año Cristiano <i>or</i> comun.	Anno Christi <i>or</i> Christian year.
A°.	Arrobas,	Q <sup>rs</sup> . <i>or</i> 25 pounds.
AA.	Autores,	Authors.
Adm <sup>er</sup> .	Administrador,	Administrator.
Ag <sup>to</sup> .	Agosto,	August.
A. M.	Año Mundo,	Anno Mundi, <i>or</i> The year of the world.
Am°.	Amigo,	Friend.
Ant°.	Antonio,	Anthony.
App <sup>co</sup> .	Apostólico,	Apostolic.
Art°.	Artículo,	Article.
Arzbp <sup>o</sup> .	Arzobispo,	Archbishop.
B.	Beato,	Blessed.
B. <i>or</i> V.	Vuelta,	Turn over.
B <sup>r</sup> .	Bachiller,	Bachelor of arts.
B. L. M *.	Beso <i>or</i> besa las manos,	I kiss <i>or</i> he kisses the hands.
B. L. P.	Beso los pies,	I kiss the feet.
B <sup>mo</sup> . P <sup>e</sup> .	Beatísimo Padre,	Most blessed Father.
C. M. B *.	Cuyas manos beso <i>or</i> besa,	Whose hands I kiss <i>or</i> he kisses.

C. P. B.	Cuyos pies beso,	Whose feet I kiss.
Cám <sup>ra</sup> .	Cámara,	Chamber.
Cap.	Capítulo,	Chapter.
Cap <sup>a</sup> .	Capitan,	Captain.
Capp <sup>a</sup> ,	Capellan,	Chaplain.
Col.	Columna,	Column.
Comis <sup>o</sup> .	Comisario,	Commissary.
Comp <sup>a</sup> .	Compañía,	Company.
Corr <sup>te</sup> .	Corriente,	Current <i>or</i> Ins <sup>t</sup> .
Conse.	Consejo,	Council.
C <sup>ta</sup> .	Cuenta,	Account.
D <sup>a</sup> . <i>or</i> D.	Don,	Mr.
D <sup>ña</sup> . <i>or</i> D <sup>a</sup> .	Dofia,	Mrs.
D <sup>r</sup> .	Doctor <i>or</i> Deudor,	Doctor <i>or</i> Debtor.
D. D.	Doctores,	Doctors.
dh <sup>o</sup> . dh <sup>a</sup> .	dicho, dicha,	said, <i>or</i> ditto.
Dr <sup>o</sup> .	Derecho,	Right <i>or</i> duty.
Diz <sup>re</sup> . <i>or</i> 10 <sup>re</sup> .	Diciembre,	December.
Dom <sup>o</sup> .	Domingo,	Sunday.
Ecc <sup>o</sup> .	Eclesiástico,	Ecclesiastic.
En <sup>o</sup> .	Enero,	January.
Es <sup>mo</sup> . Es <sup>ma</sup> .	Escelentísimo—ma,	Most Excellent.
Es <sup>cia</sup> .	Escelencia,	Excellency.
Fh <sup>a</sup> . Fh <sup>a</sup> .	Fecho, fecha,	Dated.
Feb <sup>o</sup> .	Febrero,	February.
Fol <sup>o</sup> .	Follo,	Folio.
Fr.	Fray <i>or</i> Frey,	Brother of a religious order.
Franc <sup>o</sup> .	Francisco,	Francis.
Frnz.	Fernandez,	A Spanish surname.
G <sup>de</sup> . <i>or</i> gue.	Guarda,	Preserve.
Q. D. G.	Que Dios guarde,	Whom God preserve.
Gra.	Gracia,	Grace.
Gen <sup>l</sup> .	General,	General.
H <sup>r</sup> .	Haber,	Cr. ( <i>i. e.</i> Creditor).
Ill <sup>o</sup> .	Ilustre,	Illustrious.
Ill <sup>mo</sup> . Ill <sup>ma</sup> .	Ilustrísimo—ma,	Most Illustrious.
Inqu <sup>er</sup> .	Inquisidor,	Inquisitor.
Jhs.	Jesus,	Jesus.
Jph.	Joseph,	Joseph.
J <sup>a</sup> .	Juan,	John.
Lib.	Libro,	Book.
Lib <sup>a</sup> .	Libras,	Pounds.
Lin.	Linea,	Line.

	Licenciado,	Licentiate.
. S.	Muy poderoso señor,	Most powerful lord.
	Madre,	Mother.
	Monsieur,	Master.
	Mayor,	Eldest.
. A.	Muchos años,	Many years.
.	Magestad,	Majesty.
.	Manuel,	Emanuel.
10.	Mayordomo,	Steward.
	Miguel,	Michael.
D.	Ministro,	Minister.
	Merced.	Grace.
	Martin.	Martin.
2.	Martinez,	A Spanish surname.
	Maestro,	Master.
	Maravedis,	Maravedis.
	Manuscrito,	Manuscript.
S.	Manuscritos,	Manuscripts.
	Nuestro Señor,	Our Lord.
.	Nuestra Señora,	Our Lady.
n <sup>ra</sup> .	Nuestro -tra,	Our.
. or 9 <sup>re</sup> .	Noviembre,	November.
	Obispo,	Bishop.
. or 8 <sup>bre</sup> .	Octubre,	October.
n <sup>a</sup> .	Onza, Onzas,	Ounce, ounces.
orñs.	Orden, órdenes,	Order, orders.
	Posdata,	Postscript.
	Para,	For.
	Padre,	Father,
	Pedro,	Peter.
	Por,	For, by, per.
	Plata,	Silver or plate.
	Parte,	Part.
	Puerto,	Port.
	Página,	Page.
	Público,	Public.
	Próximo pasado.	Last past.
	Principal,	Principal.
	Procurador,	Solicitor or proctor.
	Provisor.	Vicar-general.
.	Que,	That.
	Quando,	When.
	Quintal,	Hundred weight.
	Quien,	Who.

Q <sup>to</sup> .	Quanto,	How much.
Q. S. M. B *.	Que sus manos beso <i>or</i>	Whose hands I kiss <i>or</i> he-
	bessa,	kisses.
R <sup>l</sup> . R <sup>l</sup> .	Real, Reales,	Royal, Royals ( <i>or</i> real,
		reals, a twentieth part of
		a Spanish Dollar).
Rev <sup>mo</sup> .	Reverendísimo,	Most Reverend.
R <sup>do</sup> .	Reverendo,	Reverend.
R <sup>bi</sup> .	Recibí,	I received.
S., Sn., S <sup>ta</sup> .	San, Santo, Santa,	Saint.
S. A.	Su Alteza,	His <i>or</i> Her Highness.
S. E.	Su Escelencia,	His <i>or</i> Her Excellency.
S. I.	Su Ilustrísima,	His Grace <i>or</i> Lordship, Her
		Grace <i>or</i> Ladyship.
S. M.	Su Magestad,	His <i>or</i> Her Majesty.
S. S <sup>d</sup> .	Su Santidad,	His Holiness.
S <sup>r</sup> ., S <sup>ra</sup> .	Señor, Señores,	Sir, Sirs, Messieurs <i>or</i>
		Gentlemen.
S <sup>ra</sup> .	Señora,	Mrs. <i>or</i> Madam.
Seb <sup>a</sup> .	Sebastian,	Sebastian.
S <sup>ria</sup> .		
Secret <sup>a</sup> .	Secretaría,	Secretaryship.
Secret <sup>ria</sup> .		
Secret <sup>co</sup> .	Secretario,	Secretary.
S <sup>rio</sup> .		
Secret <sup>rio</sup> .		
Set <sup>ra</sup> . <i>or</i> 7 <sup>bre</sup> .	Setiembre.	September.
S <sup>mo</sup> .	Serenísimo,	Most Serene.
Serv <sup>o</sup> .	Servicio,	Service.
Serv <sup>or</sup> .	Servidor,	Servant.
Sig <sup>te</sup> .	Siguiente,	Following.
SS <sup>mo</sup> . P <sup>e</sup> .	Santísimo padre,	Most holy father.
SS <sup>oo</sup> .	Escribano,	Notary.
S. S. S *.	Su Seguro Servidor,	Your faithful servant.
Sup <sup>ca</sup> .	Súplica,	Entreaty <i>or</i> petition.
Sup <sup>te</sup> .	Suplicante,	Petitioner.
Super <sup>te</sup> .	Superintendente,	Superintendent.
Ten <sup>te</sup> .	Teniente,	Lieutenant.
Tom.	Tomo,	Volume.
Tp <sup>o</sup> .	Tiempo,	Time.
V., V <sup>e</sup> . <i>or</i> Ven <sup>a</sup> .	Venerable,	Venerable.
V. A.	Vuestra Alteza,	Your Highness.
V. A. R.	Vuestra Alteza Real,	Your Royal Highness.
V. B <sup>d</sup> .	Vuestra Beatitud,	Your Blessedness.

	Vuecelencia,	Your Excellency.
	Verbi gracia,	For example.
1. or Vmd.	Vuestra merced, or Usted,	You, Your Honor.
	Ustedes,	Your Honors.
	Vuestra Paternidad,	Your Paternity.
	Vuesenoría or Usia,	Your Lordship.
	Vuestra Santidad,	Your Holiness,
S.	Vuesenorías,	Your Lordships.
I.	Vuesenoría Ilustrísima,	Your Grace or Lordship.
	Vellon,	Bullion.
	Volúmen,	Volume.
Vr <sup>a</sup> .	Vuestro -tra,	Your.
	Diezmo,	Tithe.
.no.	Cristiano,	Christian.
	Cristo,	Christ.
bal.	Cristobal,	Christopher.

3. L. M.—C. M. B.—Q. S. M. B.—S. S. S. These initials are  
y used at the conclusion of Letters in Spanish, whether fami-  
r on business; as,

repetimos á la disposicion  
vmds. C. M. B.

We reiterate our services to  
you, *whose hands we kiss.*

len vmds. en cualquiera  
ia á S. S. S. Q. S. M. B.

Command at pleasure *your  
faithful servant who kisses  
your hands.*

ando cuanto se me ofrece  
r lo presente, mandeme  
d. sin reserva; interin  
B. L. M. de vm.

And this being all that offers  
for the present, I beg you  
will command me freely,  
meanwhile *I kiss your hands.*





## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

---

### EXERCISE ON THE AGREEMENT OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

*Lec. 5, Par. 1 to 3.*

**El** muchacho, la muchacha, el sombrerero, la costurera.

**El** sol, la luna, los planetas y las estrellas.

**El** cuchillo, el tenedor, la carne, la sal, los platos, las copillas.

**Note 1.** La atrocidad del crimen.

**La** violencia del viento.

**De** la casa al jardín.

**Del** jardín á la casa.

**Llegaron** al meson.

**Note 2.** El ave cantó.

**Aquellas** son las aves.

**El** agua está fría.

**Las** aguas de los rios.

**El** águila es ave de rapiña.

**La** astucia de la hazaña.

### EXERCISE ON THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

*Lec. 5, Par. 4 to 13.*

**La** hermosura del poema.

**La** delicadeza del estilo.

**Luego** que recibí la noticia de que los soldados habian ocupado el fuerte y la villa, mi zelo por el servicio, no me permitia mas tiempo quedarme en la capital.

**Entre** las ventajas que nuestras armas lograron en la gloriosa accion, una de las mas interesantes fué, la de haber completamente destruido el intento de los opresores.

**El** cuidado es amenudo el compañero de la grandeza.

**El** hombre es esclavo de sus pasiones.

**La** primavera, el verano, el otoño y el invierno son las cuatro estaciones del año.

**La** cobardía y la bajaesa, son cualidades de un hombre sin honor.

**La** crítica imparcial no debe ofender, al contrario, debiamos honrarnos con ella.

**El** General N. se ocupaba con feliz éscito, en mantener la tranquilidad, y en reprimir las sediciones.

#### A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

La felicidad de un hombre de sentimiento, es aliviar las necesidades de los pobres.  
El amor por la gloria anima á los valerosos.  
La Francia, la España, la Italia y la Germania, son países del continente de Europa.  
La Rusia es un Imperio vasto.  
La Europa, el Asia, el Africa, y la América, son las cuatro partes del mundo.  
Roma y Venecia, fueron Repúblicas antiguas.  
Intento proceder de Holanda á Francia, y de Francia á Inglaterra.  
El Señor A. vive en aquella calle.  
La Señora B. ha hablado ya, á la Señora C.  
Yo soy substituto del Doctor Sangredo.  
Gil Blas dijo el Capitan Rolando.  
La inocencia, la virtud y el honor, debian ser apreciados.  
Hombres, mugeres y niños, todos fueron apresados.  
Jamás seas esclavo de la avaricia ni del vicio.  
Saldrémos de Londres el Miércoles á las cuatro y cuarto, y llegarémos á nuestro destino el Viernes á la una, ó á las dos.  
Luis Felipe primero, fué proclamado rey de los Franceses en el año 1830.  
Leon nono, fué el primer Papa que mantuvo un ejército en sus dominios.  
Aquí está un libro intitulado "Guerras civiles de Granada."  
El segundo párrafo dice así.  
Hércules hijo de Júpiter.  
Aquí está el papel que he comprado.  
Esta es la llave del jardin.  
Los Pirineos dividen la Francia de España.  
El Tajo desagua en el Atlántico.  
El Jupiter de Fidia.  
Leopoldo Gran Duque de Toscana.  
Nicolas Emperador de Rusia.  
Las disputas muchas veces atraen consecuencias fatales.  
Tome Vmd. del vino que le mandé.  
Son de las manzanas de mi huerto.  
He recibido algunas cartas.  
Necesito algun papel y algunas plumas.  
Tengo algunos documentos que contestar.  
¿Ha recibido Vmd. algun vino?—Sí, he recibido alguno.  
Las riquezas amenudo nos grangean crédito, poder, amigos y respeto.

#### EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

##### Lec. 6.

La fortuna es una deidad caprichosa.  
Una conciencia criminal es un tormento perpétuo.  
Compré un libro, una salvadera, y un tintero.  
¿A como la vara?  
Dos pesos la libra.  
Seis pesos el ciento.  
Caminámos á razon de diez leguas por dia.  
El buque anda dos leguas por hora.  
Deme vmd. una docena, de á dos guineas la docena.  
Deme vmd. nueve libras de á chelin la libra.  
El es encuadernador, y su hermano librero.  
Yo soy Aleman y él es Irlandés.  
Obró como traidor.  
El Parnaso, monte de la Focida, es famoso por ser la residencia de las Musas.

## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

El Capitan V. oficial en el servicio Holandés, dijo que habia visto al conde  
D. General Francés.  
Ogró tan completa victoria.  
Tiene tan bella casa, y tan hermoso jardin !  
Que bellissimo sugeto !  
Que hermoso caballo !  
Comprame vmd. mil plumas.  
Le daré á vmd. mil pesos.  
Este palacio costó un millon de pesos, y aquel, millon y medio.  
Deme vmd. dos pesos y medio.  
¿Qué hay onza y media de oro, y media onza de plata.  
Tratado de Filosofía.  
Historia del Mundo.  
¿Qué está una Señora y un Caballero.  
¿Habla con un conocido.

## EXERCISE ON THE NEUTER ARTICLE LO.

### Lec. 7.

¿Vmd. ignora lo hermoso que es.  
La obra trata sobre lo sublime.  
Preferamos lo sólido, á lo vano.  
Que se limite á lo justo.  
Lo mas apetecible no es siempre lo mas fácil de conseguir.  
Todo lo sé, por lo cual infiero que, &c.  
Lo que yo sé, no es lo que vmd. piensa.  
Todo lo que reluce, no es oro.

## EXERCISE ON THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL NUMBER IN NOUNS.

### Lec. 8, Par. 8 to 10.

La hermosura de las aves y la melodía de sus voces.  
Los bosques en aquellos países son muy espesos.  
Los rebaños en los prados.  
Las delicadezas de las lenguas.  
Los alefés y las rosas crecian en abundancia.  
Los hombres y las mugeres deben ser fieles unos con otros.  
Aquellos ministros formaron buenas leyes para sus pueblos.  
Los discípulos recibieron los libros y las plumas de sus maestros.  
Aquellos zaquizamies son muy espaciosos.  
Las flores de aquellos jardines son hermosas.

## EXERCISE ON THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

### Lec. 8, Par. 12 and 13.

El amor propio y el orgullo son hijos de la ignorancia.  
La inocencia, el honor, y el amor de la virtud, son prendas estimables.  
Las cimas de aquellos montes son muy agradables.  
Su conversacion es muy amena.  
El buen cultivo contribuye á la fertilidad de la tierra.  
Siguen el mismo sistema.  
La situacion del país.  
El tratado parece haber sido escrito por un historiador.  
Ella es criada de la Duquesa.

#### A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

La amplificación, ó sea la graduación, es una figura de retórica, que va subiendo de grado en grado las circunstancias de un objeto.  
Fué condecorado con la cruz de honor.  
Los síntomas de la enfermedad.  
Es la costumbre de los tiempos.

#### EXERCISE ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF NOUNS.

##### Lec. 10.

Compré una cadena de reloj.  
Las cortinas de cama eran de muselina de India.  
La frontera del edificio estaba adornada de columnas de mármel; en el interior se veían varias estatuas de bronce.  
Prefiero los guantes de cuero de ante.  
Muéstreme vmd. los sombreros de paja, y las cintas de seda.  
La casa de mi hermano, está situada cerca del jardín del gobernador.  
Está en casa del zapatero.  
Yo los ví en casa del sastre.  
Hablo de los criados del hermano del Duque.  
Anacreon floreció despues de la muerte de Homero, y de la derrota de Creso, Rey de Lidia.  
El hijo de Darío ascendió al trono de Persia, despues de la muerte de su padre.

#### EXERCISE ON THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN NUMBER AND GENDER.

##### Lec. 11.

El desinterés y el honor merecen ser alabados.  
Su virtud y su hermosura son universalmente admiradas.  
La modestia, la afabilidad y la bondad son estimables.  
Reflexionemos en las tristes consecuencias que son inseparables de las guerras dilatadas.  
Sus temores fueron vanos.  
Las calles y plazas de la ciudad, son espaciosas, y los palacios y edificios públicos, magníficos.  
Es una prueba convincente y palpable.  
Es un hombre bizarro y fiel.  
Es muy holgazana.  
Viven en una casita bonita, á orillas de un río caudaloso, cerca de una pequeña aldea.  
Poseen mucha fuerza moral, y heróica virtud; imaginaciones ardientes, y corazones nobles.  
Es una idea feliz.  
Es un hombre feliz.  
Un muchacho sagaz.  
Una muchacha sagaz.  
Una fragata Francesa y una goleta Española, han llegado de las colonias Dinamarquesas.  
Aquella es una capa Española.  
Aquellas Señoras son Portuguesas.  
La lana de España se considera la mejor.  
He comprado algunos géneros de Francia.  
El Plenipotenciario de Rusia, y el Embajador de Inglaterra se vieron con el Emisario de Francia.  
El honor y la virtud son sólidos.  
La fama y el valor son celebrados.

## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Tiene una hermosa casa y jardín.  
Su acostumbrada altivez y orgullo.  
Tales discusiones y argumentos son frívolos.  
Yo no presto oídos a cuentos é historias tan mal fundadas.  
Su Santidad y sus dignidades fueron escoltados á sus palacios.  
Sus Señorías fueron presentados al tiempo que su Magestad la Reyna  
estaba acompañada de sus Señorías las Marquesas de —.  
La conciencia de un buen hombre esta siempre libre ; mas la del malo está  
en un continuo remordimiento.  
Predicaba de las Epístolas de San Pablo.  
Vinieron últimamente de las Islas de Santo Domingo y Santo Tomás.  
¡ Gran proyecto !  
Ese es gran hombre.  
No tengo grande apetito.  
Una gran victoria.

## EXERCISE ON THE SITUATION OF ADJECTIVES.

### Lec. 12.

La vista de un bello paisaje es un manantial inagotable de sensaciones  
deliciosas.  
Hay siete días en una semana, y cincuenta y dos semanas en un año.  
El regimiento se componia de doce compañías, de cincuenta hombres cada  
una.  
Apresaron todos los navíos, y hecharon á pique todas las lanchas cañoneras.  
Hizo muchos amigos, pero contrajo muchas deudas.  
Muchos son los contratiempos en la vida humana.  
Pocos hombres son felices.  
Sus virtudes son pocas.  
Cierta amigo mio me dió ciertas instrucciones acerca de cierta persona.  
Es cosa cierta.  
El fiero leon devoró á la mansa oveja.  
Sobre aquel escalon de duro mármol, reposó sus fatigados miembros.  
La fria nieve marchitó las delicadas flores.  
¡ Mi querido padre, donde estan mi queridas hermanas ?  
El sabio Salomon : El benemérito Tito : El ambicioso Alejandro.  
¡ Que bellísima idea !  
Varios puntos de la América Septentrional, descubren indicios evidentes  
de épocas remotas, y manifiestan la ecsistencia de una poblacion grande  
y poderosa, cuya historia sin duda se perdió para siempre : Inmensas  
elevaciones no frecuentadas por los Indios modernos, cubiertas de huesos  
humanos ; armas desconocidas ; restos de ciudades circundadas ; y  
numerosas inscripciones en idiomas desconocidos : todo anuncia la indis-  
putable ecsistencia de un pueblo diferente de aquellos que los navegantes  
Europeos encontraron en aquellos paises.

## EXERCISE ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

### Lec. 13.

Algunos consideran á Virgilio un poeta tan grande como Homero.  
Aquellas ideas no son ménos sublimes que estas.  
Su progreso era tan lento como cierto.  
Mis libros son tan buenos como los suyos.  
La naturaleza es mas admirable que el arte.  
La República de Atenas era mas ilustre que la de Lacedemonia.  
La segunda guerra Púnica duró seis años ménos que la primera.  
Esto es mas alto que aquello.  
El estilo de Bossuet es ménos harmonioso que el de Fenelon.

## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Él no es tan bondadoso como su hermano.

Seres fue mas ambicioso que prudente.

El aspecto general de la Isla de Jamaica, presenta un prospecto tan magnífico de las bellezas de la naturaleza, perfeccionadas por la industria del hombre, que muy raramente se ve en Europa; y ofrece al extranjero, un deliciosísimo campo á la contemplacion y reflexion. Los habitantes tambien de esta isla, poseen mucha franqueza, sociabilidad y benevolencia; y en muy pocas partes se practica mas generalmente la hospitalidad.

La ciudad de Lóndres es la mas grande, mas poblada y mas rica de Europa. Nueva York y Boston son muy bellas ciudades, pero Filadelfia es la mas bella de las tres; contiene tambien uno de los mas hermosos mercados del mundo.

La calle principal de Nueva York, presenta una vista muy hermosa: el puerto es muy estenso y ofrece una escena de grandísima industria y opulencia.

Es una obra facilísima de traducir.

La gratitud es la cualidad mas noble del alma.

La ingratitud merece el castigo mas severo.

Leen tanto como (or cuanto) escriben, mas no hablan tanto cuanto piensan.

Tenemos tanto dinero como vmd.

Toca tan bien como canta.

Tiene mas talento que hermosura.

Tiene tanto dinero y tantos amigos como vmd.

Tiene mas adoradores que su hermana.

Piensa mas profundamente que sus contemporáneos.

Cuanto mas lee tanto mas adelanta.

Su hermana tiene ménos orgullo que ella.

Cuanto ménos estudie, tanto ménos ganará vmd.

No es mas difícil hacer bien que lo que vmd. piensa.

No aprecio el estilo de Pope, ménos de lo que debía.

Vale mas de un millon.

Me detuve en Francia é Italia mas de nueve meses.

Hablan el Español ménos corriente que vmd.

## EXERCISE ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

### Lec. 15.

Yo tengo un libro.

Tú vendrás mañana.

El y ella estarán aquí hoy.

Nosotros hemos escrito.

Nosotros hemos dicho la verdad.

Vosotros sois dichosos.

Vosotros ireis.

Ellos respondieron.

Ellas vinieron.

Vino dijo él, pero fué muy tarde.

No sabian ellos que decir.

¿Estas tú allí.

¿Quien es él?

¿Que son ellos?

Ve tú.

Quedad vosotros aquí.

Volvió dentro de una hora.

Fué mas desgraciado que delincuente.

Ellos vinieron; nosotros no vinimos.

Habiamos partido ántes que ellos llegasen.

## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Viene á pagarme la deuda.  
Danos un poco de vino.  
Ecsaminaos bien.  
Vamonos á casa.  
Estaban persuadiendome á que fuese.  
Quisiera conocerle.  
Traela aquí.  
Consuelate y escuchame.  
Estan justificandole.  
Estaba pegandola.  
Le he hablado.  
El vicio nos engaña.  
La prosperidad nos grangea amigos, mas la adversidad los pone á la prueba.  
Acompañéla hasta su casa.  
Contéle toda su historia.  
Trage una carta y se la dí.  
Aquí estan los dibujos : muestrselos.  
Se lo hé dicho.  
¿ Se lo negarás ?  
La ví á ella ; pero no pude verle á él.  
Te lo doy á tí con preferencia.  
Nos sirvieron á nosotros un plato de sopa ; pero les enviaron á ellos carne.  
Voy á mandarselo á él, para que se lo remita á ella.  
Es á ellos á quienes hablé.  
Es mejor darlo á él que á ella.  
Lo enviarian á nosotros ántes que volverlo á ellos.  
¿ Hablan de mí ó de él ?  
¿ Que dice de ello ?  
Nada dice de sí.  
¿ Fué hecho por él ó por ella ?  
Ha ido con ellos.  
Lo hizo para mí.  
Puedo ir sin él.  
Hablaron contra mí.  
No quiso quedarse conmigo ni contigo.  
Lo llevó consigo.

## EXERCISE ON POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

### Lec. 16.

Mi padre y mi madre estan en casa.  
Mis libros estan bien encuadernados.  
Sus casas estan bien fabricadas, y sus jardines estan adornadas de bellas flores.  
Su criado llevó sus caballos á la caballeriza.  
Su genio y su talento son estimados.  
Nuestra constancia y nuestros esfuerzos vencerán todos los obstáculos.  
Tu candor y tu virtud son bien conocidos.  
Soldados ! vuestra bizarra conducta, ha llenado mis esperanzas y satisfecho mi deseo.  
Aquella idea es suya propia.  
Mis amigos no me obsequiaron con el mismo zelo que los suyos.  
La mayor parte de los géneros estan averiados, pero los vuestros y los míos, estan en buena condicion.  
Vuestra condicion no puede cotejarse con la nuestra.  
Su confianza merece la mia.  
¿ Cuyos son estos guantes ?—Mios.  
¿ Es este su coche ?—No, es el mio.  
Un amigo mio, ha hablado con un pariente suyo, acerca de algun negocio vuestro.

## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Enviámos un criado nuestro á una tia suya.  
Ha vendido uno de sus caballos.  
¿Que tienes hijo mio?  
Aquí está amigo mio.  
Lo nuestro y lo vuestro son superiores á lo suyo.  
Lo suyo irá primero.  
Es de la casa de ella, de la que hablo, y no de la de él.  
Su carta de ella está mejor escrita que la de él.  
Me quité el sombrero.  
Mas vale que un hombre pierda la vida que el honor.  
Está poniendose la casaca.  
Se cortó el dedo.  
Perdió la vida en un desafio.

## EXERCISE ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

### Lec. 17.

¿ Conoce vmd. á este hombre y á esta muchacha ?  
¿ Ha leído vmd. estos versos ?  
Estas plumas no escriben bien.  
Este jardin está lleno de flores.  
Estas manzanas son mejores que aquellas.  
El es pariente de aquel caballero á quien encontré vmd. aquí hace dias.  
¿ Conoce vmd. á aquellas señoras ?  
Aquel fué un siglo brillante para los Atenienses.  
Llegó aquel mismo dia.  
¿ Que es aquello ?  
Prefiere la virtud al vicio, aquella te será feliz y este miserable.  
Esto es lo que puede hacer ; esto lo que debe hacer.  
Los que cultivan las ciencias deben ser protegidos.  
Felices los que son virtuosos.  
Prefiero el que vmd. tiene á los que yo compré.  
Los que hablan mal de ella no la conocen.  
El que es sabio habla cuando es necesario, mas aquel que solo lo presume,  
habla incesantemente.

## EXERCISE ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

### Lec. 18.

Es él quien nos ha enviado aquí.  
El caballero de quien he recibido tanta bondad.  
Los hombres que encontramos y á quienes preguntamos.  
¿ Donde está el hombre de quien podria yo sacar algun provecho ?  
La señora con quien bailó vmd.  
Las señoras á quienes envió vmd. los dibujos.  
El hombre que lo escribió.  
La casa que vmd. ve allí.  
Estas son las obras que debia vmd. leer, con preferencia á aquellas que  
vmd. ha elegido.  
El general que dirigia la batalla, y que murió en ella.  
Un hombre que pasa la vida en la ociosidad, muere miserable.  
Dé lo vmd. á quien guste.  
Virgilio cuyas obras admiramos.  
Es un mal cuya causa es desconocida.  
El libro cuyo dueño soy yo.  
Milton cuyo genio sublime es tan universalmente conocido.  
Lope de Vega, cuyo espíritu ardiente no conocia límite.  
La ociosidad es un vicio que debemos evitar.



## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Los hombres que vimos esta mañana.  
La ley de que yo hablaba.  
La idea á que se referia vmd.

### EXERCISE ON INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

#### Lec. 19.

- ¿ Quienes son esas señoras ?
- ¿ Quien es aquel caballero ?
- ¿ A' quien lo ha dado vmd. ?
- ¿ Cual de aquellas dos carrozas le gusta á vmd. mas ?
- ¿ Cuales son sus obras de vmd. ?
- ¿ Que dice vmd. á eso ?
- ¿ Que llevaré conmigo ?
- ¿ Que es él ?
- ¿ Que compraremos ?
- ¿ Que haremos ?
- ¿ Cuyo es este sello ?
- ¿ Cuya es aquella casa ?
- ¿ Que hora es ?
- ¿ Para que lo hizo vmd. ?—Para salvarla.
- ¿ En que fué dibujado ?—En papel.
- ¿ Para quien fué ?—Para mí.
- ¿ Contra quien pelearon ?—Contra los Turcos.
- ¿ Cuya fué la decision ?—Del Juez.

### EXERCISE ON INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

#### Lec. 20.

- ¿ Ha venido alguien, *or* alguno ?
- Que vaya alguno.
- Estoy esperando á alguno.
- Son algunos de sus amigos.
- ¿ Puede alguno ignorarlo ?
- Uno no está cierto de vivir hasta mañana.
- Ha comprado vmd. algo, *or* alguna cosa para mí ?
- ¿ Le ha enviado vmd. algo ?
- Me ha dado algo para vmd.
- ¿ Trae el correo algo de nuevo ?
- Comunican sus ideas uno al otro.
- Sus intereses estan enlazados uno con otro.
- Ambos lo digeron.
- Les di á entrámbos lo que merecian.
- Revisámos cada párrafo separadamente.
- Cada planta tiene su virtud.
- Todo el mundo.
- Todos le aplaudieron.
- Sabe hacer de todo.
- Cada cuerpo celestial tiene su designio.
- Todo lo que dijo.
- Deme vmd. otra pluma.
- La desgracia aiena nos debia servir de escarmiento.
- Las minas del Perú producen mucho oro y mucha plata.
- Tiene muchos amigos.
- Muchos perderian ántes la vida que el honor.
- Habia varias personas de distincion.
- Algunas veces tenemos amigos en prosperidad, y ningunos en adversidad.
- No hay ninguno de ellos allí.

## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Ningunas promesas pudieron tentarle.  
Ninguno (*or*) nadie lo sabe.  
No conozco á nadie (*or*) á ninguno en aquella ciudad.  
Nada se dirá de ello.  
Nada debía impedirnos el decir la verdad.  
Ni uno ni otro ha hecho su deber.  
Ni uno ni otro merece elogio.  
Quienquiera que sea.  
De quienquiera que vmd. hable.  
Cualquiera cosa que diga.  
Deme vmd. cualquiera que guste.  
Cualquiera colocacion ; cualquier rango.  
Tales órdenes jamas pudieran ser dadas por tal general.  
Tal fué su conducta.  
¿ Sabe vmd. lo que dijo fulano ?  
¿ Porque quiere vmd. que fulano y zutano lo sepan ?  
¿ Cuantos contratiempos la aguardaban !  
¿ Cuanto dinero necesita vmd. ?

## EXERCISE ON THE AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS NOMINATIVE.

*Lec. 26, Par. 1 to 4.*

Heródoto fué el primer escritor de la historia profana.  
Platon era discípulo de Sócrates.  
Vosotros y él consentisteis en ello.  
Nosotros y ellos fuimos nombrados.  
Su modestia y sus virtudes fueron muy alabadas.  
Jamás fué tan maltratada su dignidad y su bondad.  
Fué Constantino el que mandó que se destruyesen todos los templos de los Gentiles.  
Fueron los Árabes los que introdujeron en Europa las figuras de aritmética.  
Somos nosotros y ellos los que lo decimos.  
Son aquellas dos casas las que estan por vender.

## EXERCISE ON ADVERBS.

*Lec. 27.*

Debia vmd. leer primero libros de instruccion y luego puede vmd. pasar á los de entretenimiento.  
Estas cartas son muy instructivas, y de consiguiente las leeré con cuidado.  
Tiene muy poco talento.  
Estoy muy satisfecho.  
Las acciones de bondad rara vez pierden su mérito.  
Estaba ya en casa.  
Comemos regularmente á las tres.  
Me ha faltado frecuentemente.  
El vino ayer, mas ella hoy.  
Escribame vmd. presto.  
Cesar escribió clara, concisa y elegantemente.  
Ciceron hablaba sabia y elocuentemente.  
¿ Adonde va vmd. ?  
¿ Donde está su hermano ?—Aquí está.—Que venga acá.  
Voy allá con él.  
Jamás *or* nunca le he conocido.  
Nunca jamas hice tal cosa.

## A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

La amaré para siempre jamas.  
Ya he llegado.  
Iré, ya que no hay remedio.

## EXERCISE ON PREPOSITIONS.

### Lec. 28.

El sombrero fué llevado á casa del sombrerero, en una caja, por mi criado.  
Este gorro es para mí, y aquel es para vmd.  
No escribe mal para principiante.  
Permaneceré aquí hasta el verano.  
Caminaba hacia Madrid.  
Pasé por Segovia.  
Aguarda la respuesta sobre aquel asunto.  
El muchacho que vmd. vió entre los dos hombres, pasó por delante de mí con su madre.  
Es uno de los diputados que hablo contra el asunto.  
Viene de la capital.  
Está sin empleo desde que vmd. le vió la última vez.  
Tras este tiempo vendrá otro mejor.  
Pelearémos hasta vencer ó morir.  
Lleva una casaca á la Francesa.  
Nuestro deber es ante todas cosas.  
El va muy contra mis ideas.  
Empezaré desde mañana á venir muy temprano, y me quedaré hasta el anocheecer.  
¿ Para que pregunta vmd. ?  
¿ Por quien pregunta vmd. ?  
Llegámos al fin de nuestra jornada sobre la tarde.  
Voy á pasear.  
Con estudiar se alcanza el saber.  
Esto es muy bueno para comer.  
Hay mucho que decir en eso.  
Fué segun creo, únicamente por darle gusto.  
Tras ser ignorante es muy vano.  
Voy de aquí á Lóndres y desde allí á Escocia.  
Lo dejaremos para mañana.  
Por mas que estudie, jamas sabrá nada.  
El hermano le escede en mucho.  
Lo he dado al hombre de quien hablámos ayer.  
Esto es á lo que yo me referia.  
¿ Sabe á quien dirigirse ?  
Han estado en Amsterdam, en Bruselas, y en Copenhague.  
Han ido á Granada, á Murcia, y á Navarra.  
Viene de Varsovia y de Viena.  
Ella se dedica mucho á la música, y al dibujo.

## EXERCISE ON CONJUNCTIONS.

### Lec. 29.

El oro y la plata son metales preciosos.  
Ni él ni ella puede ir.  
Es virtuosa é industriosa.  
Los libros ú obras de que vmd. habla.  
¿ Porque no vino vmd. ?—Porque llovía.  
Supuesto que no hay remedio, supongo que es preciso que me vaya.  
Lo hice porque no pude remediarlo.

#### A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Como quiera que sea eso, jamas viene sino cuando quiere ; mas eso poco importa.

Puede vmd. tomar 6 este 6 aquel.

Jamas mira las cosas sino al revez.

No solo es mejor, sino mas barato.

Vmd. deberá ir, no obstante (or apesar de) cuanto ha dicho.

Iré con tal que vmd. venga conmigo.

Pues que somos hombres obrémos como tales.

Es bastante ancho, pero muy corto.

La moralidad consiste en el egercicio de la virtud : así si queremos ser morales, debemos ser virtuosos.

Nada menos que la inocencia podrá darnos una conciencia pura.

La prosperidad es un estado lleno de peligros : así, debiamos contentarnos con el estado mediocre.

THE END.

CHARLES WOOD AND SON, PRINTERS,  
Popplin's Court, Fleet Street.











... ..

L



SEP 12 1971



